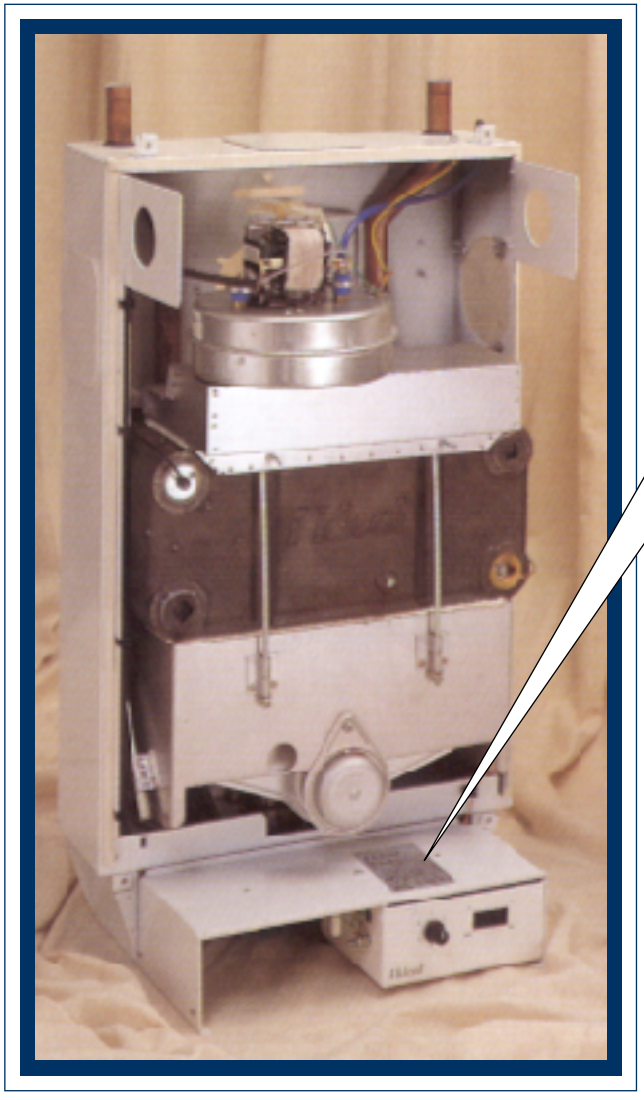
NOTE



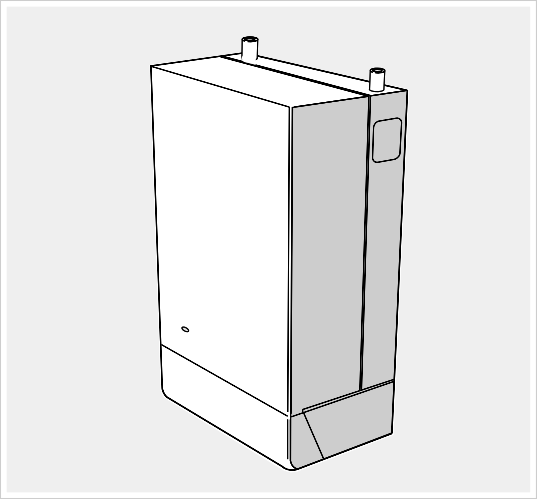


Please check the 2 letter prefix of the serial number located on the data plate inside the boiler, then proceed to select the relevant Installation & Servicing book from the list below.

Prefix Code before "TD"	Prefix Code after "TD"
Classic FF230-280 & FF2 100	Classic FF230-280 & FF2 100
Classic FF 250,260,270 Propane	Classic FF 250,260,270 Propane
Classic FF230-260 Slimline	Classic FF230-260 Slimline

PREFIX CODES ARE IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER

THE IDEAL INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



classic

the wall hung boiler

**Wall hung,
fanned flued,
gas fired boiler**

Classic LXFF 230-280
Classic FF 230-2 100

Ideal BOILERS

Installers guide to domestic central heating boilers

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260	FF 270	FF 280	FF 2 100
Gas supply connection		(in. BSP)	Rc 1/2 (1/2) 1/2" (BSP Female)						
Flow connection			22mm copper				28mm copper (FEMALE)		
Return connection			22mm copper				28mm copper (FEMALE)		
Maximum static water head		m (ft.)	30.5 (100)						
Minimum static water head		m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)						
Electrical supply			230 V 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W						
Fuse rating			External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265						
Water content		litre (gal.)	2.7 (0.6)		3.65 (0.8)		4.65 (1.0)		4.65(1.0)
Dry Weight	Standard Model	kg (lb)	40.9 (90.3)		46.6 (102.8)		52.6 (116.0)		52.6(116)
	Deluxe (LX) Model	kg (lb)	43.9 (96.8)		49.6 (109.4)		55.6 (122.6)		N/A
Maximum installation weight		kg (lb) 31.4 (69.3)	37.4 (82.5)		43.1 (95)		43.1(95)		
Boiler size	Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)						
	Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)						
	Depth	mm (in.)	Deluxe model (LX) 315 (12 3/8)						N/A
			Standard model 300 (11.8)						
Flue duct diameter		mm (in.)	100 (4.0)						
Flue duct length (max)		m (ft)	3 (9.8)						0.6 (2)

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260	FF 270	FF 280	FF 2 100
Boiler input	MINIMUM	kW	5.6	11.3	15.0	18.5	22.5	26.3	31.6
(Gross)		Btu/h x 1000	19.1	38.5	51.2	63.3	76.9	89.7	107.8
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.15	0.29	0.38	0.49	0.58)	0.67	0.80
		ft^3/h	19.4	37.1	48.7	62.9	73.1	86.3	101
	MID	kW	8.3	13.0	16.7	20.3	24.0	27.8	34.2
		Btu/h x 1000	28.5	44.3	56.85	69.2	82.0	94.9	116.7
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.22	0.34	0.43	0.53	0.62	0.71	0.87
		ft^3/h	28.1	42.7	54.5	67.6	78.8	91.3	110.0
	MAXIMUM	kW	11.0	14.7	18.3	22.0	25.6	29.3	36.6
		Btu/h x 1000	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	125.0
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.28	0.38	0.47	0.57	0.66	0.76	0.95
		ft^3/h	36.1	48.2	60.2	72.3	84.3	96.3	121
Boiler output	MINIMUM	kW	4.4	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6	20.5	24.9
		Btu/h x 1000	15	30	40	50	60	70	85
	MID	kW	6.6	10.3	13.2	16.1	19.0	22.0	27.1
		Btu/h x 1000	22.5	35	45	55	65	75	92.5
	MAXIMUM	kW	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6	20.5	23.4	29.3
		Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60	70	80	100
Burner Setting pressure (HOT)	MINIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	3.5 (1.4)	8.5 (3.4)	9.5 (3.8)	12.0 (4.8)	12.5 (5.0)	12.1 (4.8)	10.4 (4.2)
	MID	mbar (in.w.g.)	7.5 (3.0)	11.5 (4.6)	11.5 (4.6)	14.1 (5.6)	14.9 (6.0)	13.9 (5.6)	12.3 (4.9)
	MAXIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	13.2 (5.3)	14.5 (5.6)	13.5 (5.4)	16.5 (6.6)	16.5 (6.6)	16.0 (6.4)	14.5 (5.8)
Seasonal Efficiency (SEDBUK) *			[76.2]%	[75.8]%	[76.2]%	[76.7]%	[77.1]%	[76.0]%	[76.4]%

*The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings. The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BGplc 0087.

Note. *Gas consumption is calculated using a calorific value of 38.7 MJ/m^3 (1038 Btu/ft^3) gross or 34.9 MJ/m^3 (935 Btu/ft^3) nett*

To obtain the gas consumption at a different calorific value:-

a. ***FOR L/S*** *- divide the gross heat input (kW) by the gross C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)*

b. ***FOR FT^3/H*** *- divide the gross heat input (Btu/h) by the gross C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)*

Classic LX FF & FF

B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 AP 107 94

Destination Countries: GB and IE

Natural Gas only Appliance type: C_{12} & C_{32}

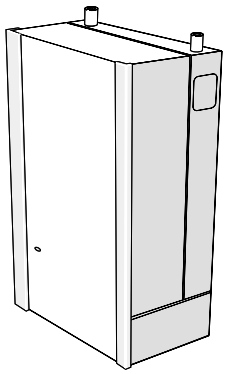
Data Badge: on top of the controls support

Deluxe models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic LXFF 230	41 387 24
Classic LXFF 240	41 387 25
Classic LXFF 250	41 387 26
Classic LXFF 260	41 387 27
Classic LXFF 270	41 387 28
Classic LXFF 280	41 387 29

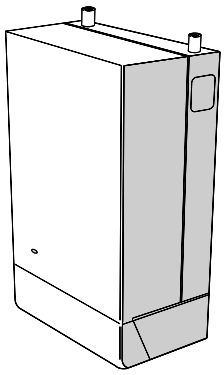
Standard models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 230	41 387 01
Classic FF 240	41 387 02
Classic FF 250	41 387 03
Classic FF 260	41 387 04
Classic FF 270	41 387 05
Classic FF 280	41 387 06
Classic FF 2 100	41 349 71

(Classic FF 2 100 is a type C_{12} appliance only)

Deluxe Model (LX)



Standard Model



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} & C_{32} =

A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal or vertical terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is down stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{2H} = An appliance designed for use on 2nd Family gas, Group H only.

CONTENTS

Air Supply 8

Boiler Clearances 6

Boiler Exploded View 10

Burner Exploded View 35

Control Box Exploded View 35

Electrical Connections 21

Electrical Regulations 8

Extension Ducts - Fitting 19

External Control 21

Fault Finding 33

Flue Installation 7
- **Rear installation** 13
- **Side installation** 16

Gas Safety 5

Gas Supply 7

Initial Lighting 24

Installation 10

Mandatory Requirements 5

Pump 9

Servicing 26

Short List of Parts 34

Spares Replacement 28

System Diagrams 22

Terminal Guards 7

Water and Systems 8

WaterTreatment 8

INTRODUCTION

The Classic FF230-2 100 (standard) and the **Classic LX FF 230-280** (deluxe casing) is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

FF 230-2 100 (Standard Model)
The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

FF LX 230-280 (Deluxe Model LX)
The boiler casing is fitted with a glass fascia. The glass fascia can be lifted up to gain access to the boiler thermostat.

All details for the deluxe casing model are the same as the standard model unless otherwise stated.

Note. *These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation.* If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Downward Piping Kit.

Programmer Kit.

Vertex Flue Kit* - for vertical flue connection

Roof Flue Kit*

90° Flue Elbow Kit*

Sealed System Unit - this fits on top of the appliance. Suitable for standard boiler only.

Extension ducts* - up to 3m (118").

Turret Outlet Kit.*

**not available for FF2 100*

GAS SAFETY (INSTALLATION AND USE) Regulations 1994, amendments 1996 or rules in force.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer (identified by ❀) in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority. Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.6891 Low pressure installation pipes.

BS.6798 Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5449 Forced circulation hot water systems.

BS.5546 Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd Family Gases).

BS.7593 Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

BS.5440.1 Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5440.2 Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

Health & Safety Document No. 635

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the British Standards Institution for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances - unless covered by these Installation and Servicing instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the BSI Certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

Timber Framed Buildings

If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IGE/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

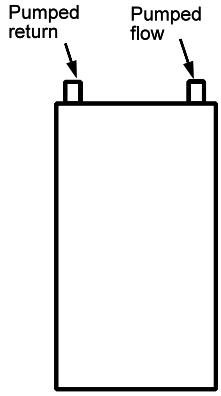
The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland, the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower. *continued on page 7*

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

benchmark™

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS

This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.



FF 270, FF 280 & FF2 100 ONLY

must be fitted with the 22mm x 28mm copper sockets, provided in the Hardware Pack, (or equivalent 22mm x 28mm compression fittings) and the pumped flow and return pipes run in 28mm pipe.

2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing.

Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

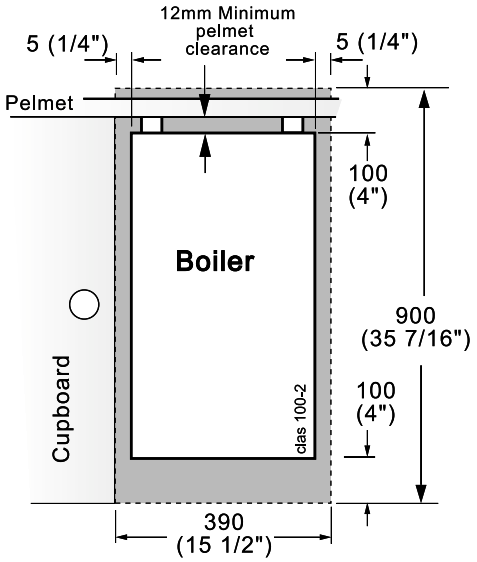
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.

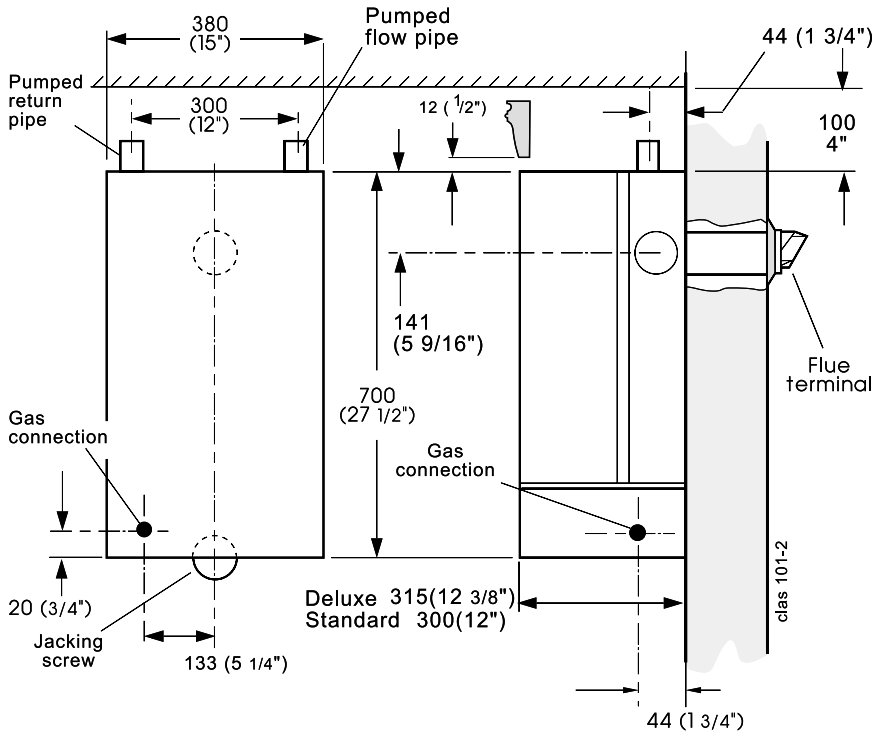
c. If using the Complete Sealed System Unit then refer to the instructions packed with the unit for the necessary clearances.



Front clearance: 450mm (17 3/4") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built in to cupboard is 75 mm (3").

Front view **Side view**



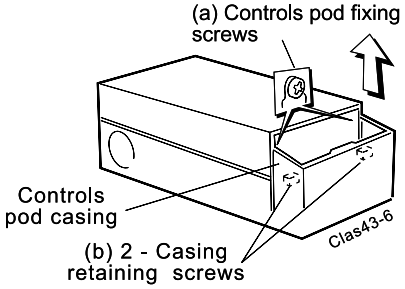
Pelmet restrictions.

If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.



Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler MUST be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/ compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler. Refer to 'Air Supply' on page 8.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service refer to the Wall mounting diagram, Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

The local gas supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas. An existing service pipe must NOT be used without prior consultation with the local gas supplier.

A gas meter can only be connected by the local gas supplier or by a local regional contractor.

An existing meter should be checked, preferably by the gas supplier, to ensure that the meter is adequate to deal with the rate of gas supply required. A MINIMUM pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating.

Installation pipes MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 6891. Pipework from the meter to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size. FF2 100 models should be piped in 22mm minimum. The final 1metre may be run in 15mm if it is visible.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance:-

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard. The minimum spacing in Table 3, Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 75mm in order to allow a terminal guard to be fitted.

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
3. Below eaves	25 mm (1")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	25 mm (1")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
6. From internal or external corners	25 mm (1")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers - ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

7. Where it is essential that the terminal wall plate is fitted, i.e. wall thicknesses over 600mm (23 1/2") or with an inaccurately cut hole, the minimum spacing in Table 3 Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 60mm (2 1/2") in order to allow the terminal wall plate to be fitted.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses. Refer to Frame 8.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/ compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space, cm (in^2)		Air direct from outside, cm (in^2)	
FF230	102	(16)	51	(8)
FF240	135	(21)	68	(11)
FF250	170	(26)	83	(13)
FF260	198	(31)	102	(16)
FF270	231	(36)	116	(18)
FF280	264	(41)	132	(21)
FF2 100	340	(52)	170	(26)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS.6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

Boilers not fitted to a sealed system must be vented.

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug, which is provided, to drain the BOILER ONLY, in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistance of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size	FF	230	240	250	260	270	280	2 100
Boiler	kW	8.8	11.7	14.6	17.6	20.5	23.4	29.3
Output	Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60	70	80	100
Water Flow	l/min	11.4	15.2	19.0	22.8	26.5	30.3	38.0
Rate	gal/h	150	200	250	300	350	400	500
Pressure	mbar	22.0	20.4	31.5	41.7	54.8	77.0	106
Loss	in wg	8.9	8.3	12.6	16.7	22.0	30.9	42.5

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-
Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd, Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel 0870 5601 5000 or
Betz Dearborn Ltd, Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

IMPORTANT. Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators, or two port valves without end switches, then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower. See Frame 36 for details.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

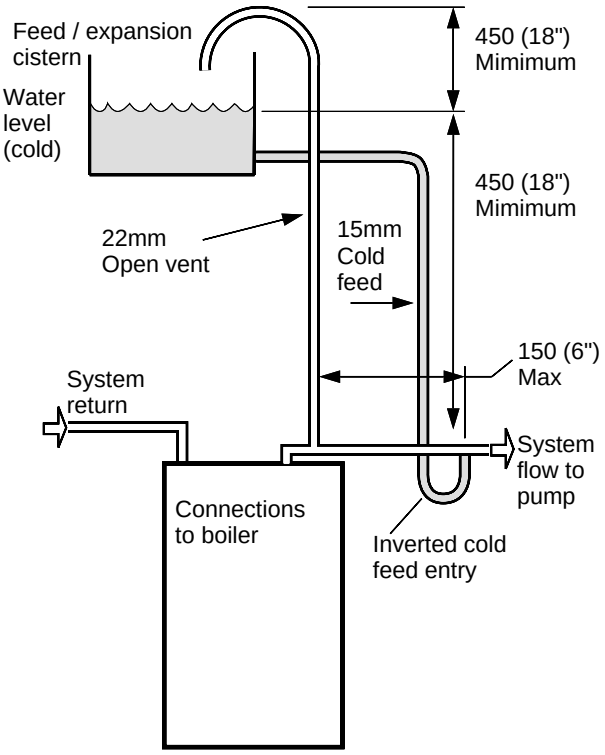
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") - of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grunfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note. *A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (refer to BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.*



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

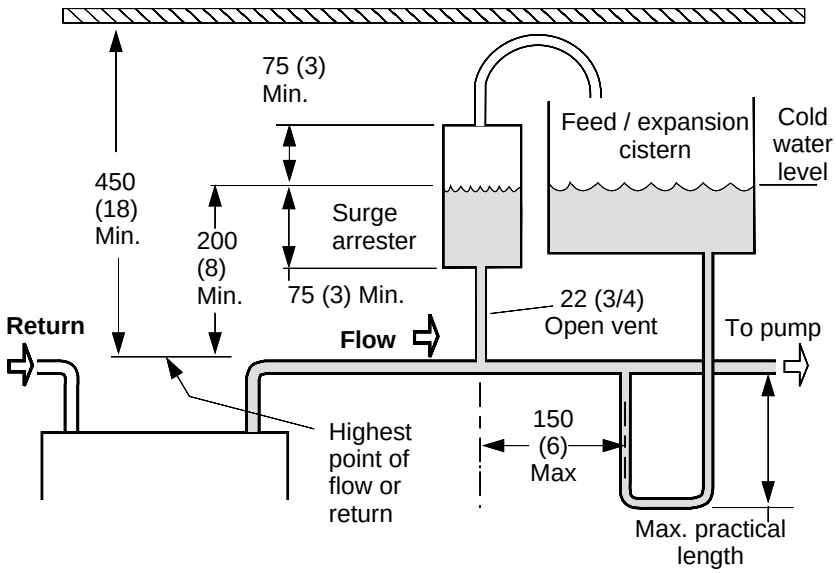
The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.
2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.
3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with*

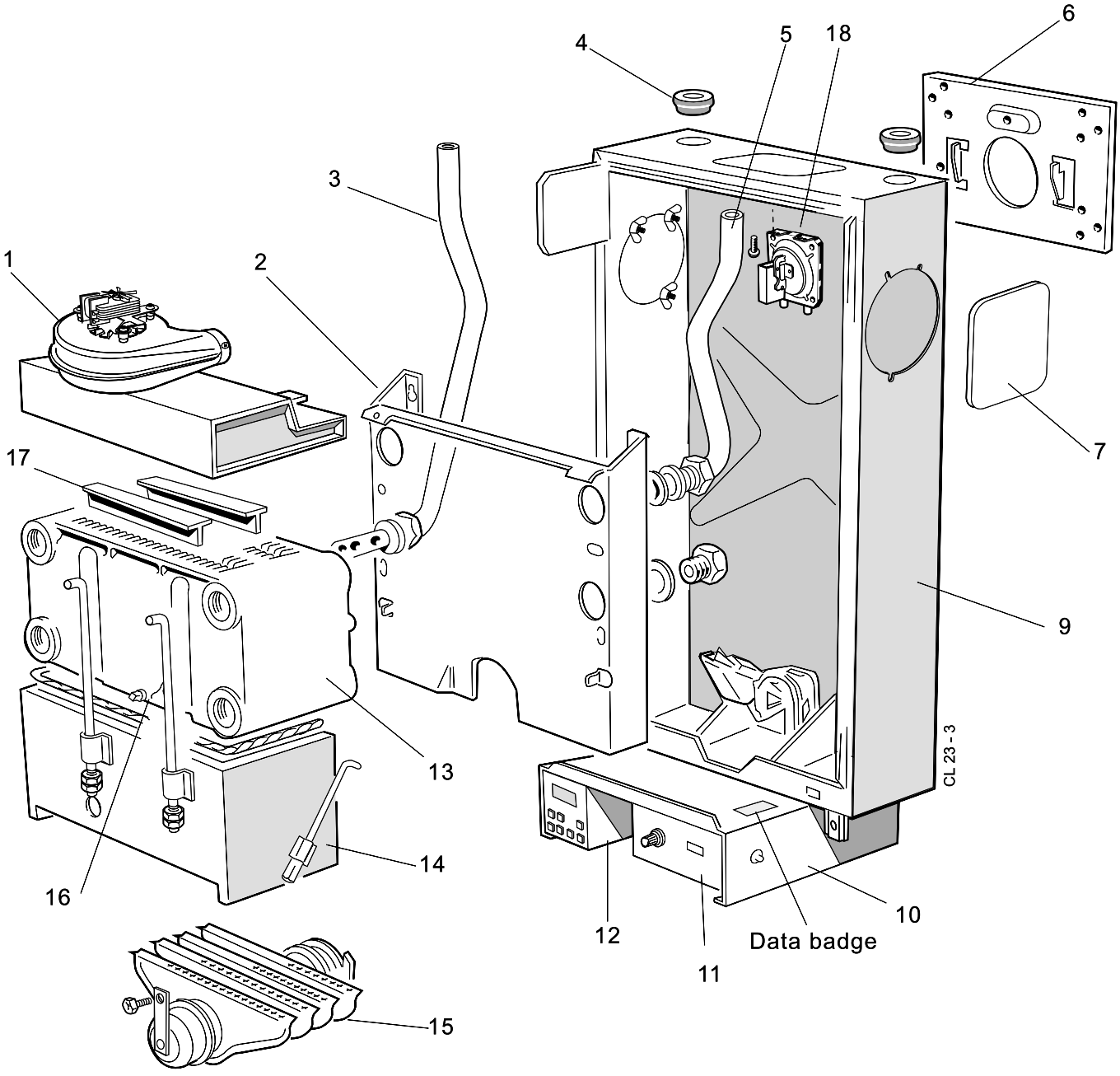
Minimum Requirements



All dimensions in mm (in.). **N.B.** Imperial dimensions are approximate

5 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 230 shown



LEGEND

1. Fan /collector hood assembly.

2. Inter-panel.

3. Pumped return pipe.

4. Rubber sealing grommets.

5. Pumped flow pipe.

6. Wall mounting plate.

7. Sealing plates, 3 off

9. Back panel.

10. Controls support.

11. Control box .

12. Programmer (optional)

13. Heat exchanger.

14. Combustion chamber.

15. Main burner.

16. Boiler drain point.

17. Flue baffles.

18. Pressure switch

6 UNPACKING

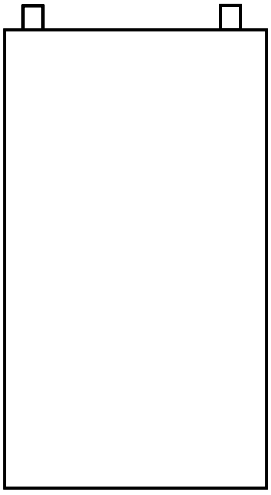
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extras, if ordered (Downward Piping Kit, Programmer Kit, complete Sealed System Unit, Extension Duct Kit D, Vertex Flue Kit G, Roof Flue Kit H and 90° Flue Elbow Kit F) are available in separate boxes.

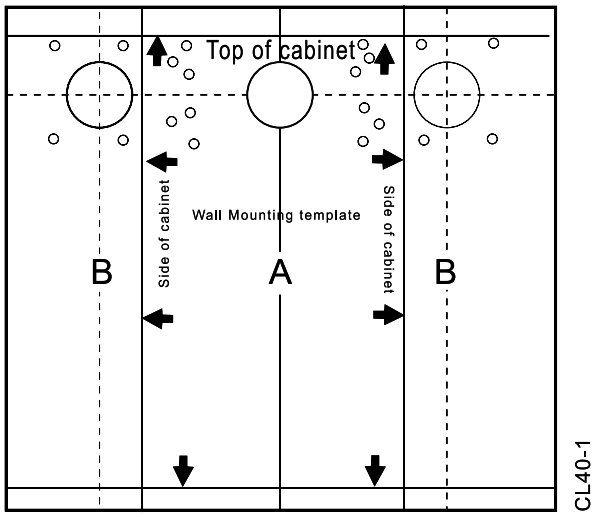
Unpack and check the contents.

Pack A Contents

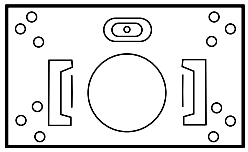
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube - 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring - 1 off



Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



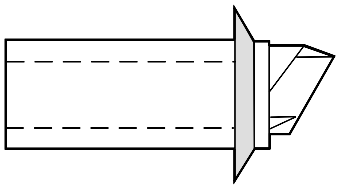
Wall mounting plate

Hardware Pack Contents

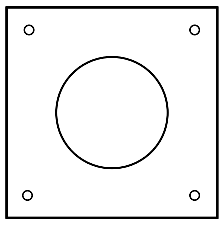
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug, 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- 22mm x 28mm copper reducing socket (FF 270, FF 280 and FF 2 100 ONLY), 2 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 Hx. Hd. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 2 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy., 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



Flue terminal

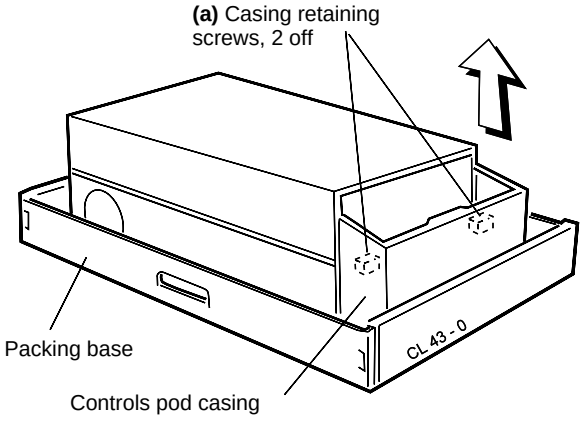


Terminal wall plate

7 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

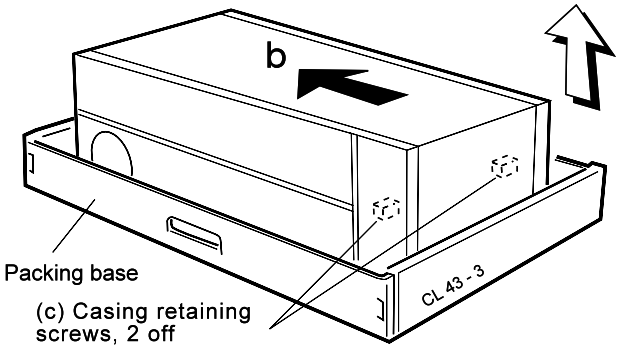
STANDARD MODEL

1. Unpack the boiler.
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).



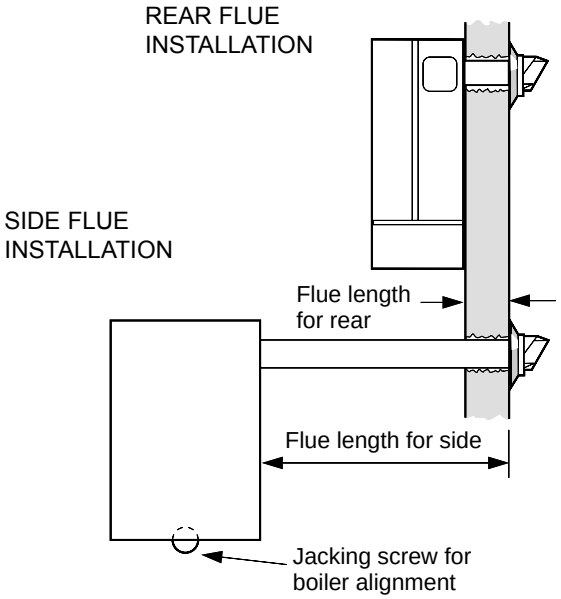
DELUXE MODEL (LX)

1. Unpack the boiler.
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Slide the glass fascia upward (arrow b)
   - **b.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (c), retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **c.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).



8 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST IMPORTANT that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.



FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D*: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

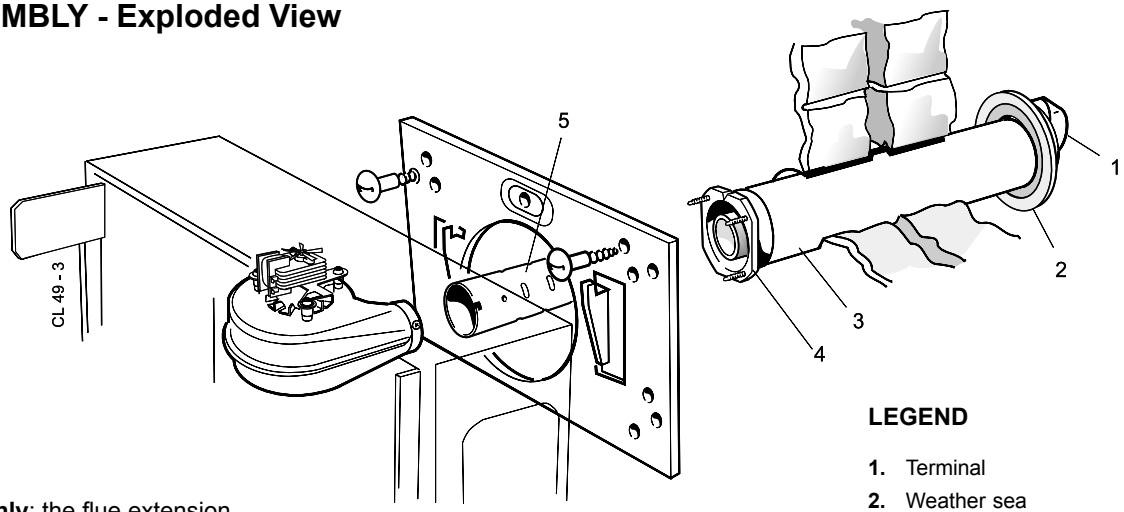
1. A maximum of 2 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	152 227
600 to 1550*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	152227+152132
1550 to 2500*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	152 227+ 152132, 2 off
2500 to 3000*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	152 227+ 152132, 3 off

* Not for FF 2 100 model

9 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.
2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



IMPORTANT.
On FF 2 100 models only: the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

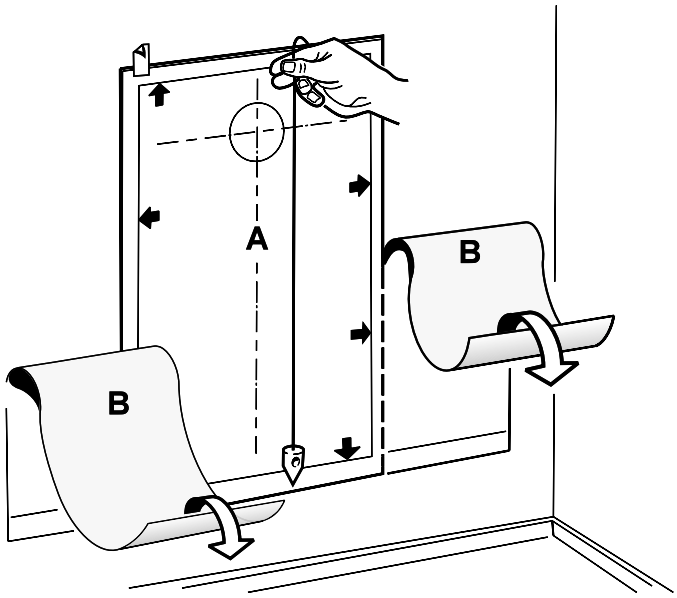
LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing ring
5. Flue extension tube

10 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation. Care must be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.*

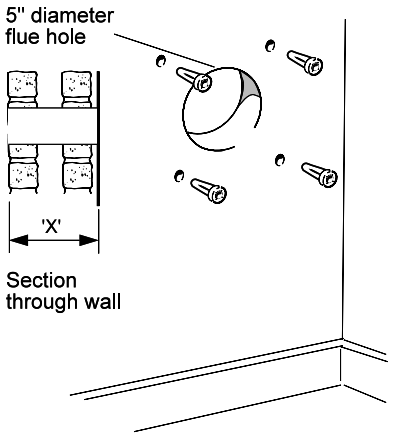
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape the templates into the selected position.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **b.** The position of the flue duct hole.
   - **c.** Downward pipe routing bracket screw positions.
5. Remove the templates from the wall.



11 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the two wall faces.
2. Drill 4 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill. If the stand-off brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.
3. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

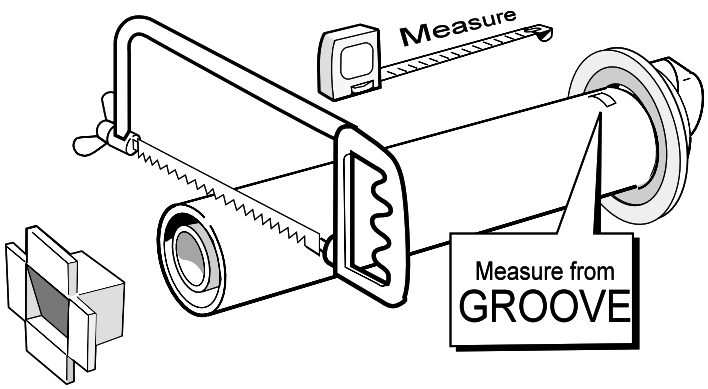
Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided.*
The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.

REAR FLUE OUTLET

12 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

Note. *If the stand-off brackets are used it is essential that 30mm is added to the measured wall thickness when marking the flue (to allow for the thickness of the brackets).*

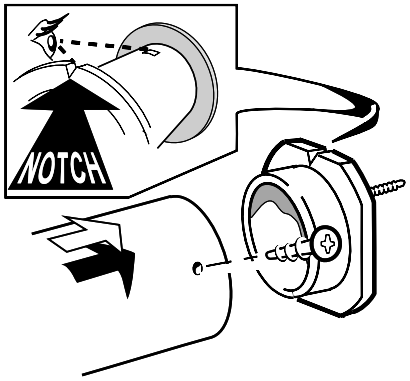
1. Measure and note the wall thickness X.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length X, using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.



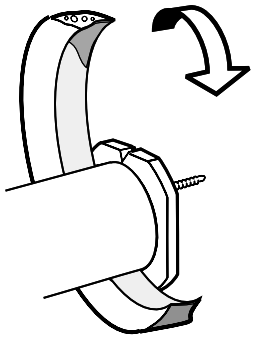
13 FITTING THE BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.

   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

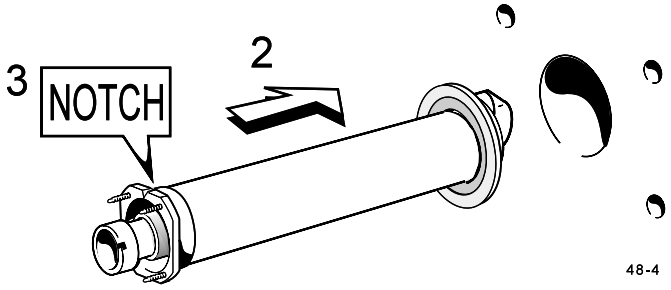


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self-tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self-adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



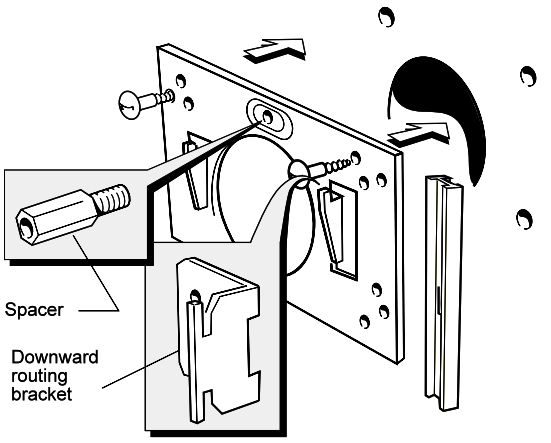
14 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



15 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If downward routing of pipes is required then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



16 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Note. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack. For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

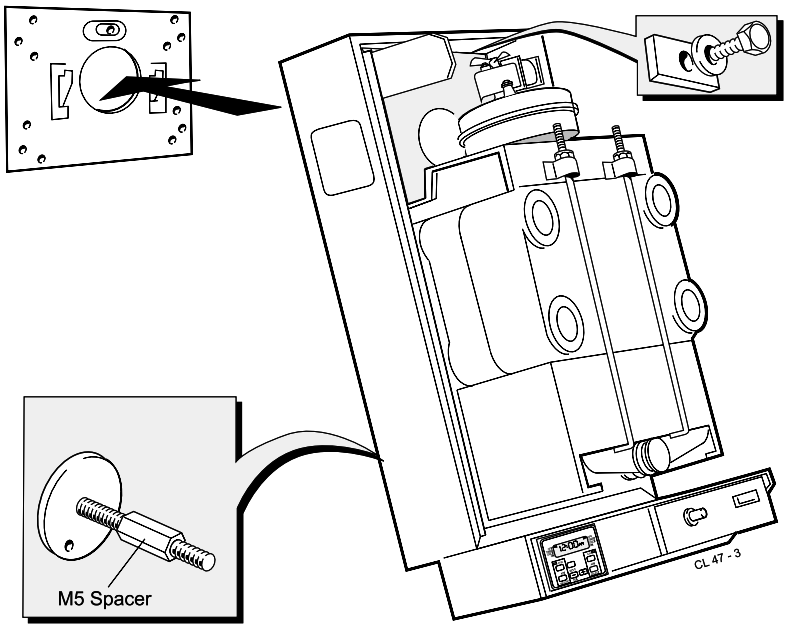
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the M8 screw, check the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.



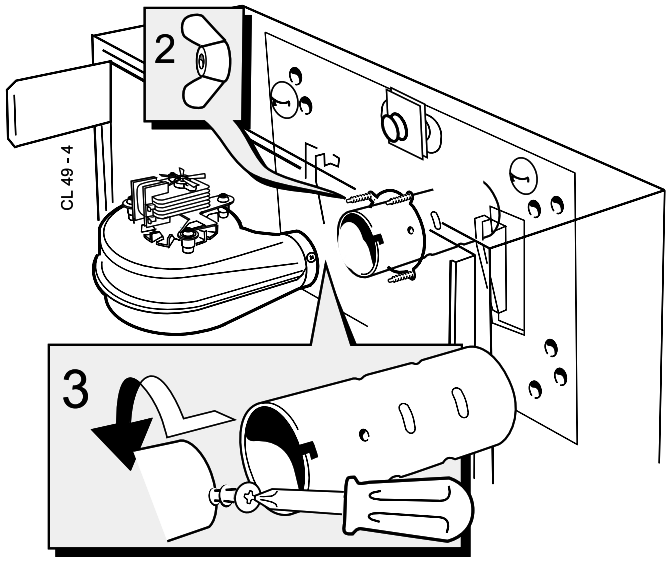
17 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the wall mounting plate and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan. Locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

IMPORTANT
On FF 2 100 models only: the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

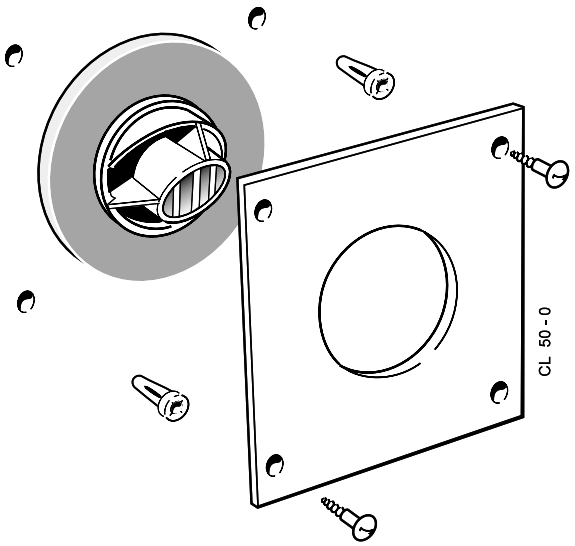


18 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 4.*

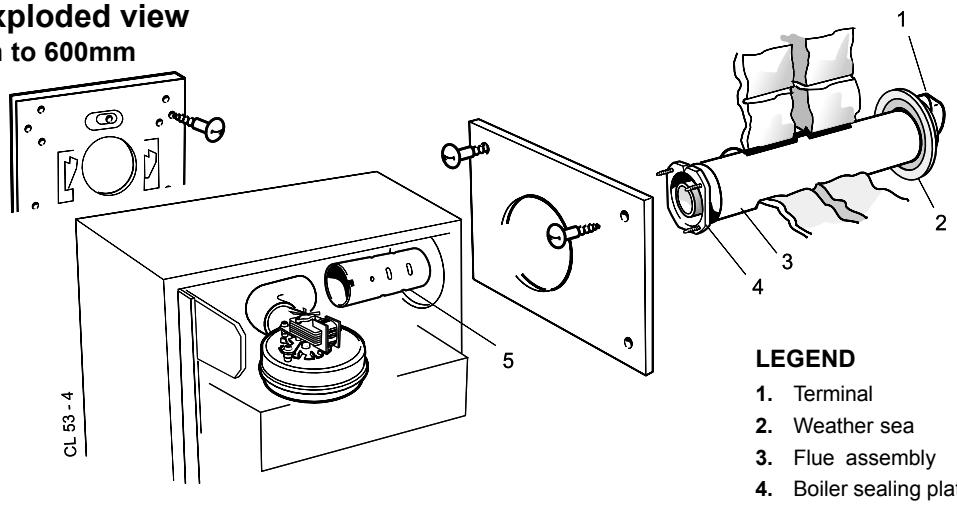


19 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.

2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.



LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing plate
5. Flue extension tube

IMPORTANT.
On FF 2 100 models only; the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

20 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation.*
If the flow and return pipes are to be routed down behind the boiler the downward routing pipe brackets, supplied with the Downward Piping Kit, must be used. These brackets are secured to the wall mounting plate and it is essential to use only those holes as shown on the wall mounting template.
Care MUST be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.

1. Separate the templates.

2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.

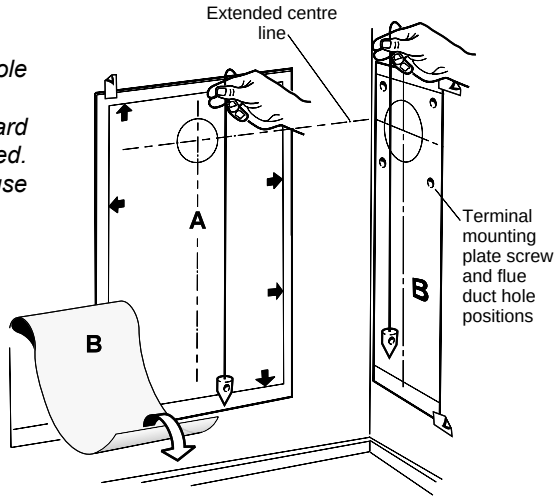
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.

4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:

a. The 4 wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). If the downward routing pipe brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.

b. The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.

c. The position of the flue duct hole (ensure that the correct centre is marked depending on whether the downward routing pipe brackets are used or not).



Note. *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*

d. The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.

5. Remove both templates from the wall.

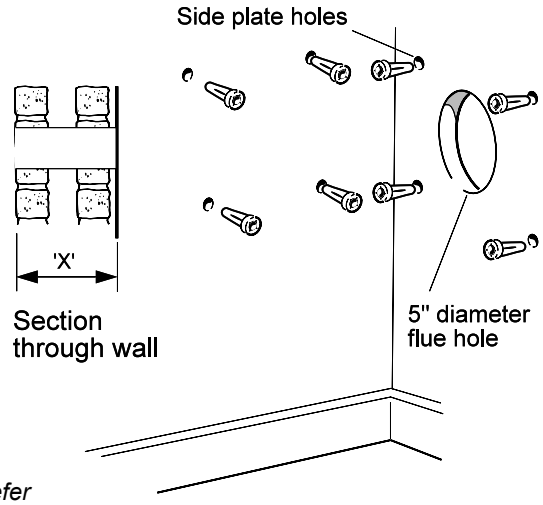
21 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.

2. Drill 4 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.

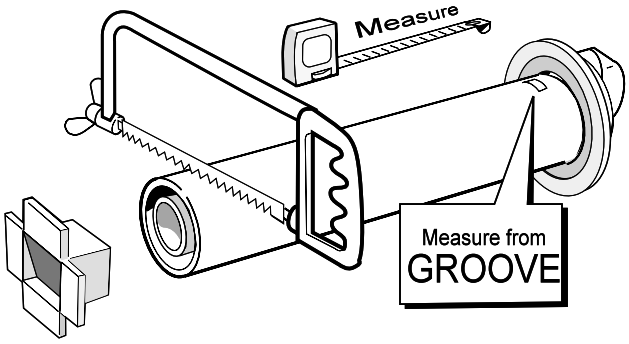
3. Drill 4 holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate.



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

22 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

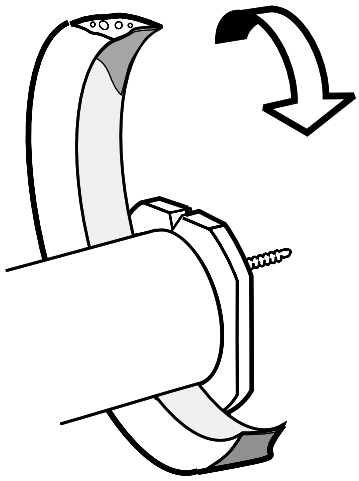
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall). Refer to Frame 9.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard duct ring for support and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard duct ring and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm, refer to Frames 32 & 33 - Flue extension ducts.

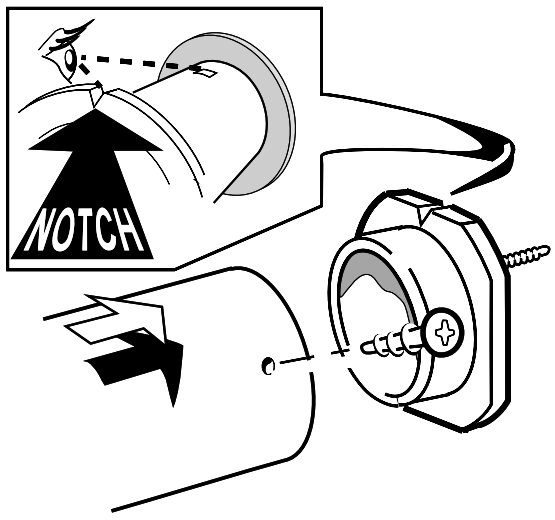
23 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self-adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



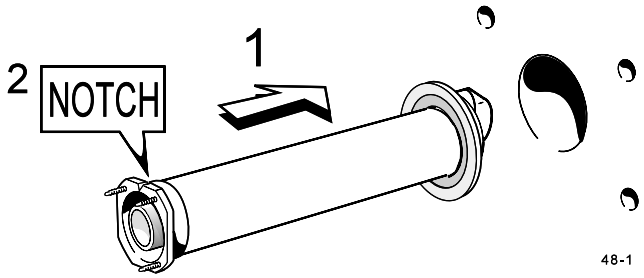
24 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



25 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

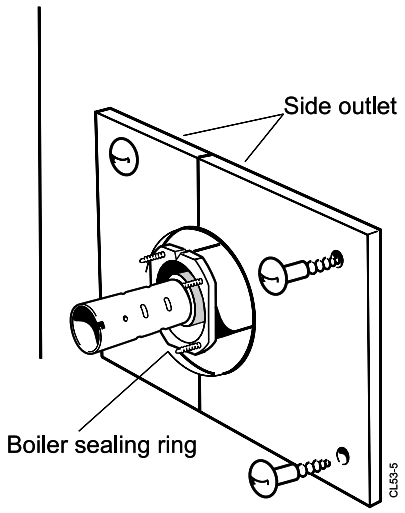


Flue assembly

26 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

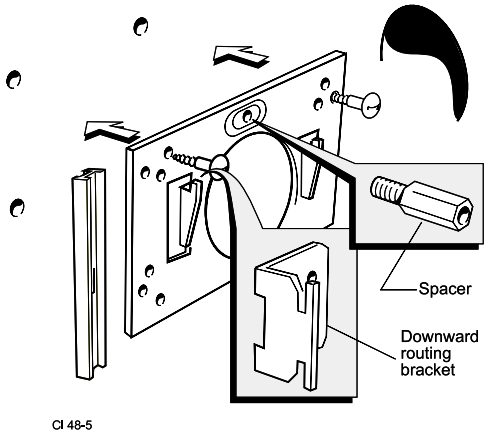
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



27 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If downward routing of pipes is required then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



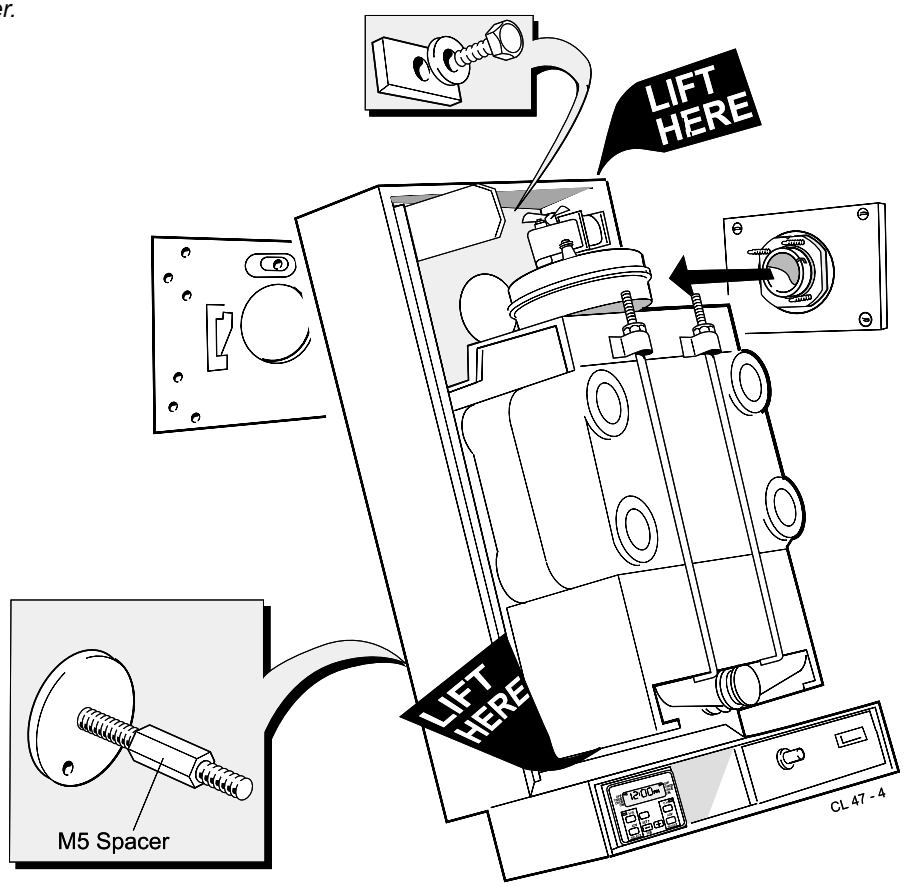
28 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Notes 1. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack.*
2. *For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner/ controls for lifting.
3. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

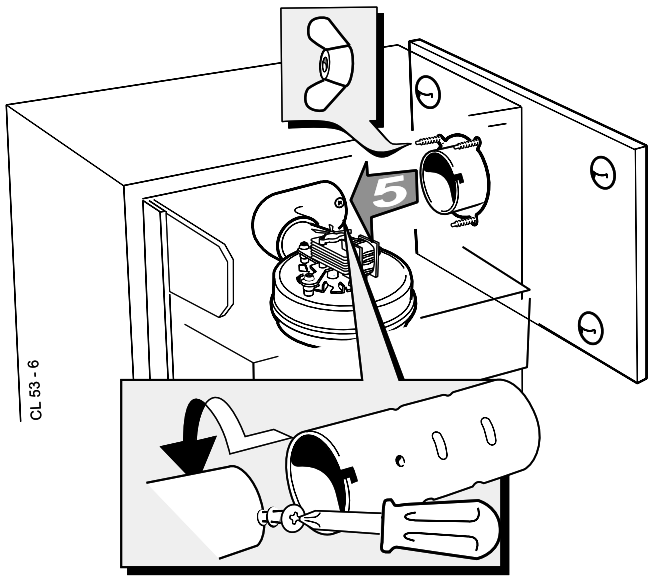
Note. *Before fully tightening the M8 screw check the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



29 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

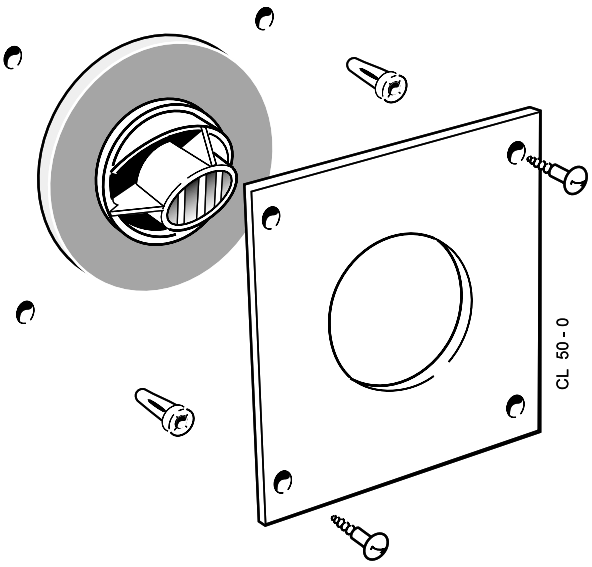


30 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

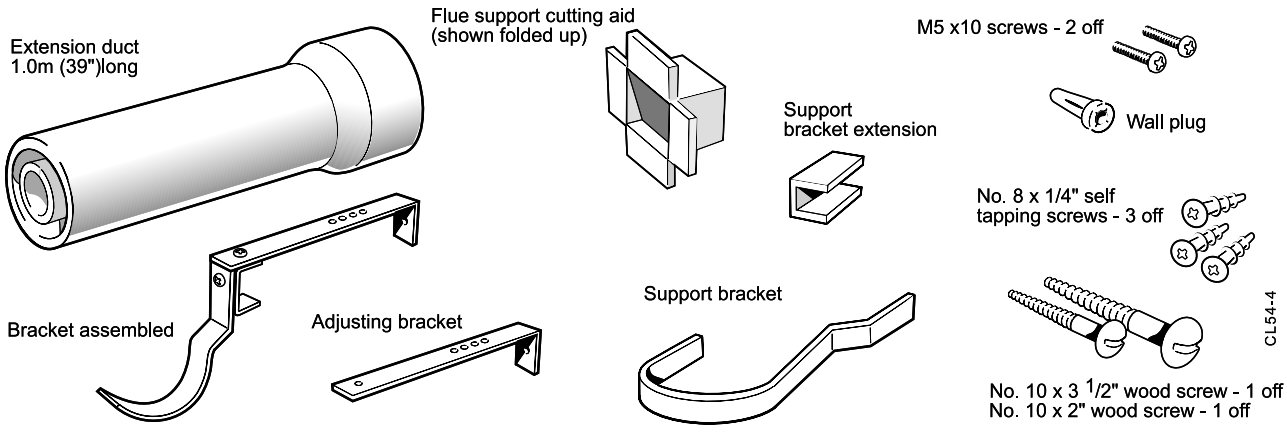
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the contents list on Page 4.*



31 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm (Not for FF 2 100 model)

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents.



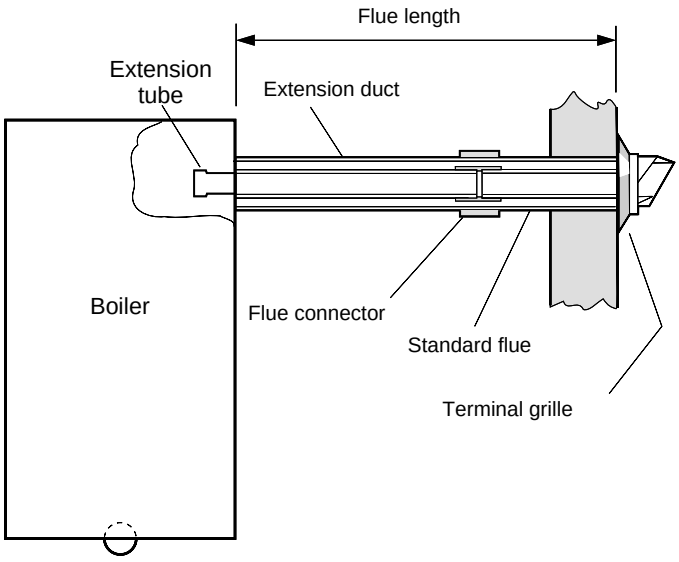
32 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

Note. *Side flue shown.*

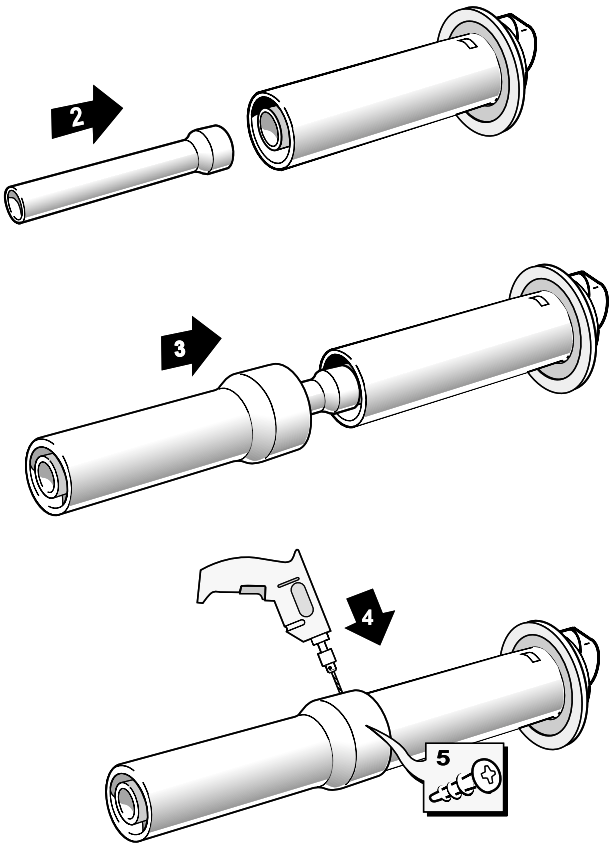
1. A *maximum* of 2 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater length than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 8
600 to 1550*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	see Frame 8
1550 to 2500*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	see Frame 8
2500 to 3000*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	see Frame 8



* Not for FF 2 100 model

33 FITTING THE KIT



REP932 - 2

1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill 3 - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screws provided to fix the air duct in position.
6. Repeat steps 1-5 if a second flue extension is required.

34 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 7.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

35 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

36 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

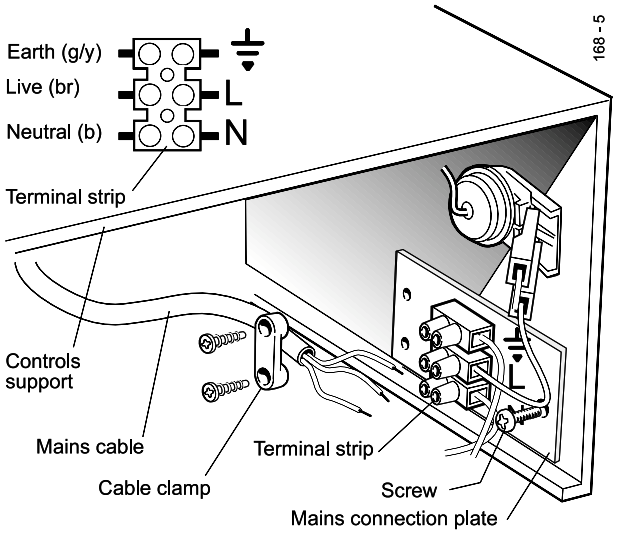
WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

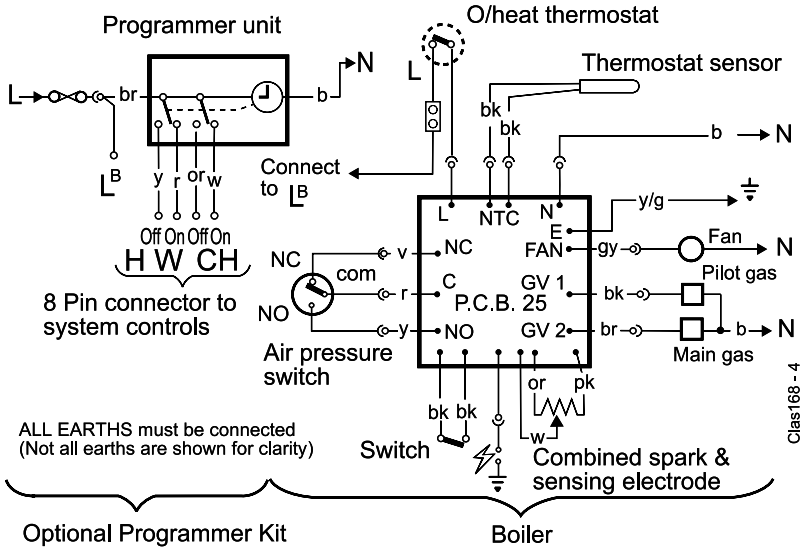
All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulated & sheathed cable, not less than 0.75mm² (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The means of isolation must be accessible to the user after installation.

LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green



Flow wiring diagram



Note. *If the optional Programmer Kit is to be fitted refer to the instructions provided with the kit and Frame 37.*

1. Remove the control box securing screw (M4 pozi). Pull the box forward to disengage. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Route the mains cable through the grommet in the plate of the control box.
3. Remove the screw and release the mains connection plate. Unscrew the cable clamp screws and remove the clamp.
4. Connect the mains cable wires to the terminal strip.
5. Assemble in reverse order.
6. Replace the control box and fasten to the controls support.

37 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 39-41 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 39-41.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

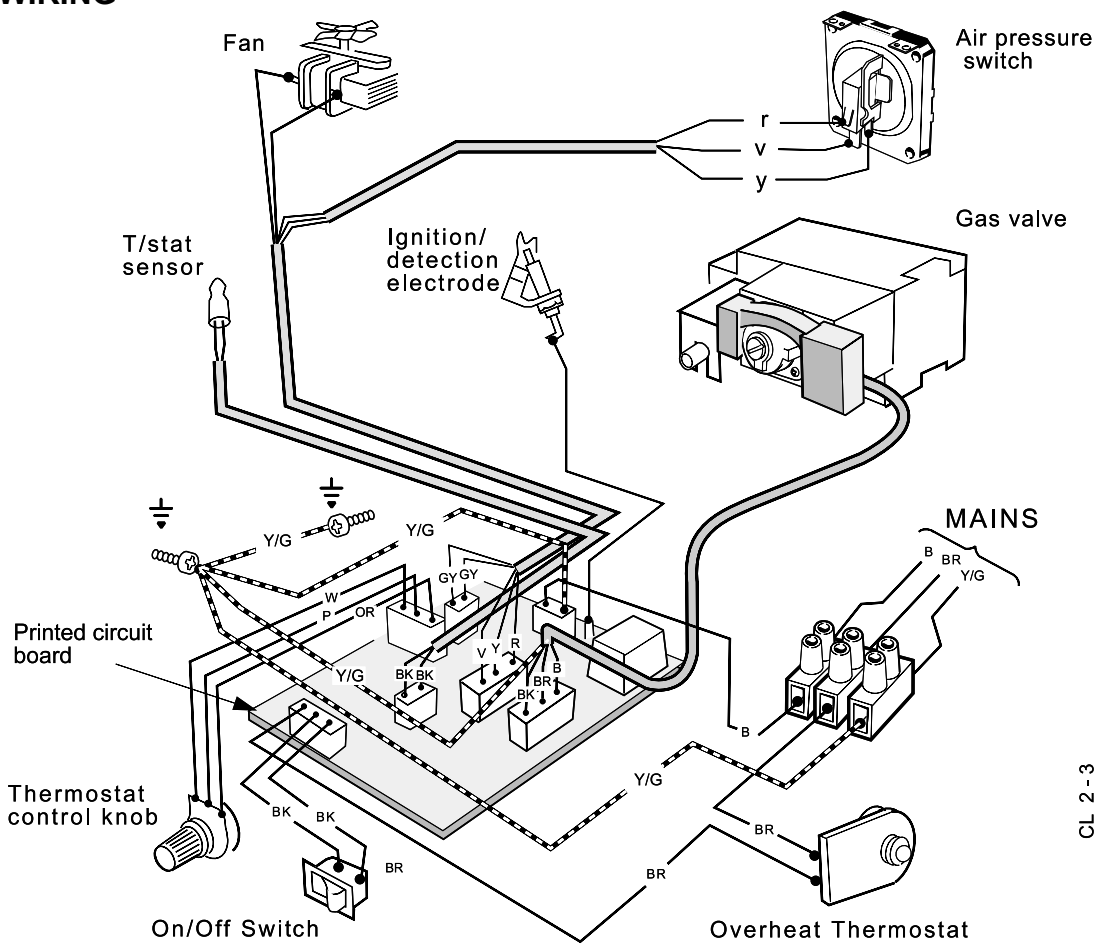
1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 41.
3. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
4. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

38 PICTORIAL WIRING



LEGEND

b	blue
bk	black
br	brown
r	red
y	yellow
w	white
or	orange
v	violet
p	pink
gy	grey
y/g	yellow/green

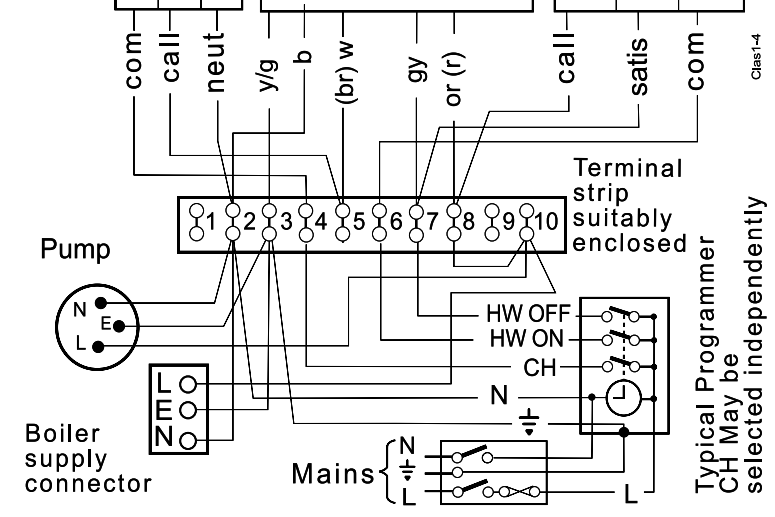
39 MID POSITION VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation but the wiring differs slightly - see the manufacturer's literature.*

Room Thermostat Terminals			Mid Position valve details	Cylinder Thermostat Terminals		
			HONEYWELL Y PLAN V4073H 1039			
TLX 2259 or2284			PEGLER 'Unishare' DT 1701 etc.			
			LANDIS & GYR 'LGM' SK3 - LT2701			
			A. C. L. 679. H. 340.30.UO	1 bk	2 y	3 r
RTE RTM/RTC			DRAYTON Flowshare 2			
			SOPAC Centra Share ZV20 - EB MID			
			DANFOSS DMV - 3M	n. c.	n. o.	com.
			SWITCHMASTER			



LEGEND

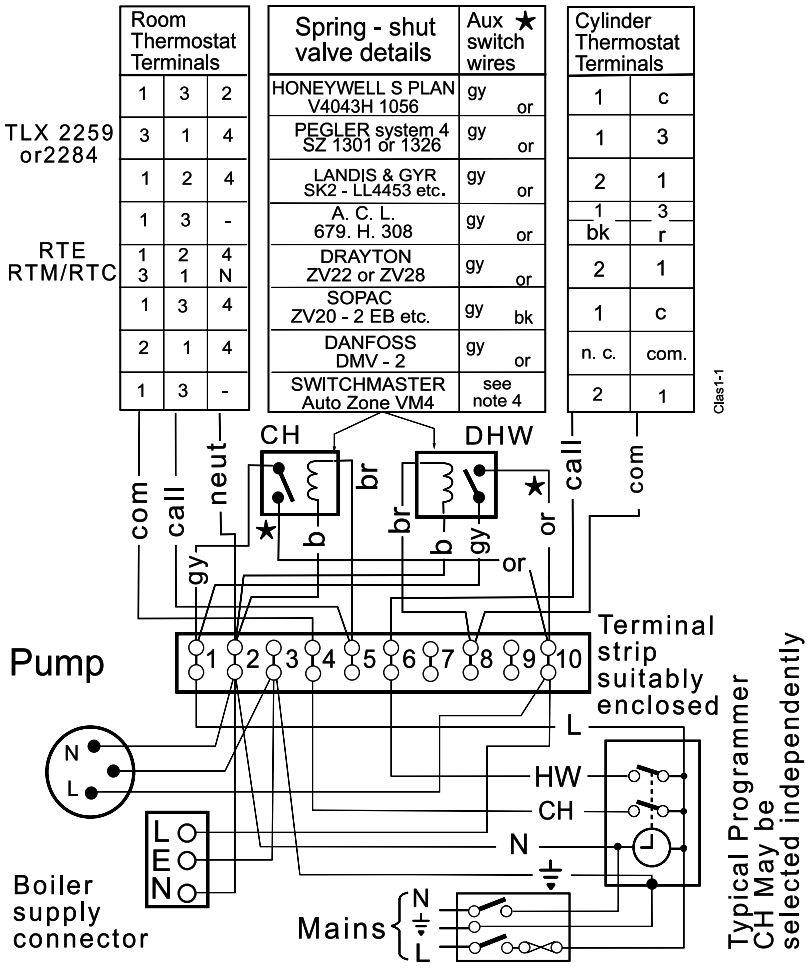
b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**gy**	grey

40 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

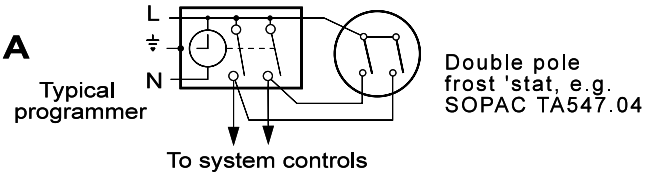
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey and orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

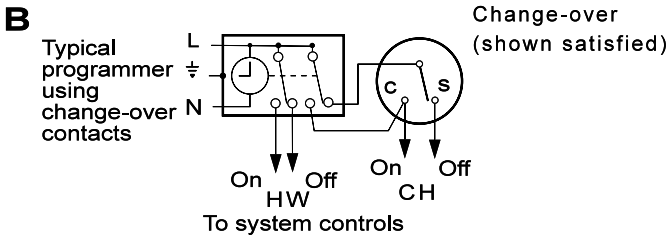


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**gy**	grey
br	brown	**y/g**	yellow/green
r	red	**or**	orange
y	yellow	**v**	violet
		pk	pink

41 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

42 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

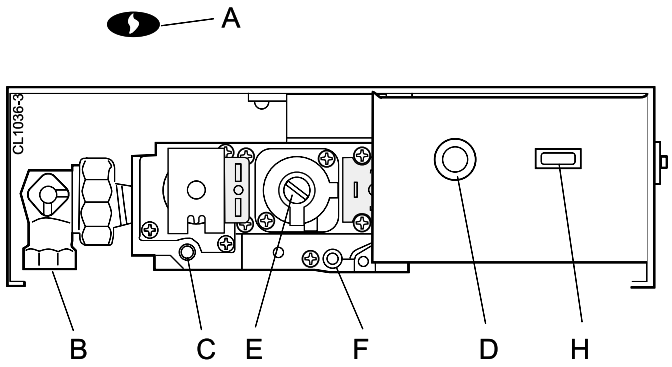
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

43 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

A Sightglass.
B Gas service cock.
C Inlet pressure test point.
D Thermostat knob
E Main burner pressure adjuster.
F Burner pressure test point.
H Boiler mains on/off switch.

TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains on/off switch is OFF.
3. If the boiler output is to be set to minimum or mid, affix the appropriate indicator label supplied in the hardware pack to the data badge, located on the controls support.
4. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**

   Deluxe Model (LX) - Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down until it is flush with the assembly. Lift the glass fascia and pull the sliding catch out to retain the glass in the upper position. Secure with the 2 captive screws. To improve access to the gas valve, remove the controls casing bottom panel by removing its 2 retaining screws. Refer to Frame 44.

   Standard Model - The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls pod casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws. To improve access to the gas valve, remove the controls pod casing. Release the controls pod front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots. Refer to Frame 44.

   Note. Standard boiler only. *If the Sealed System Unit is fitted remove the unit casing in order to inspect the top casing seal.*

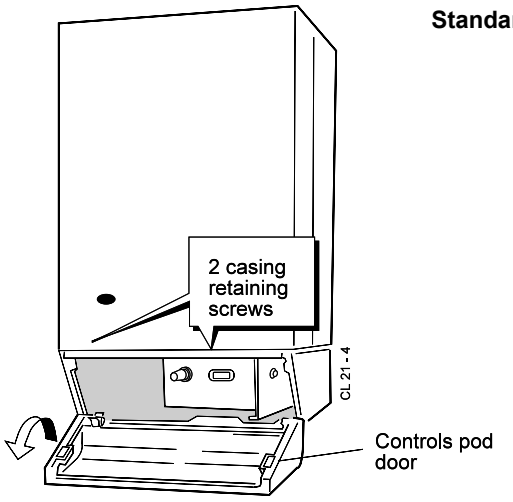
   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint. Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.
5. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
6. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
7. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position 6 and the boiler Mains on/off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross-light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
8. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
9. Operate the boiler for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
10. The boiler is pre-set at the factory to its highest nominal rating but can be range rated to suit the system design requirements. Refer to Table 2 (page 3). Remove the silver threaded protection cap on the top of the regulator. Adjust the main burner pressure adjuster (E) until the required main burner pressure is achieved.
11. Set the boiler mains on/off switch to OFF.
12. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test point.
13. Turn ON and check for gas soundness at the pressure test point.
14. **Deluxe Model (LX)**
    Refit the controls casing bottom panel and screws.

    Standard Model
    Refit the controls pod and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.
15. **Deluxe Model (LX)**
    Lower the glass fascia to its closed position.

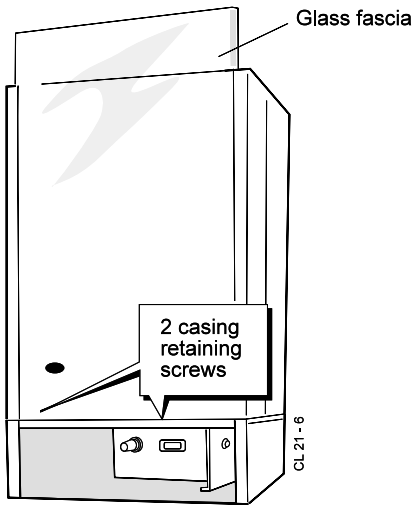
    Standard Model.
    Close the pod door.

44 INITIAL LIGHTING - continued

Standard Model



Deluxe Model (LX)



45 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.
2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved.
   Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.
3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.
4. **Water Circulating System**
   - **a.** With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.
   - **b.** With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down, in order to complete the flushing process.
   - **c.** Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.
   - **d.** Balance the system.
5. Finally, set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations.

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING. The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

46 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1994, amendments 1996 or rules in force.
2. **Deluxe model (LX)** - Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls casing bottom panel.

   Standard Model - Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.
3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.
4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.
   Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.
5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.
6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and a registered CORGI installer consulted.
7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.
8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.
9. **After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the benchmark appliance log book and leave this with the customer.**
10.. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a CORGI registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

47 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary. The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually. It is the law that any service work must be carried out by a CORGI registered installer.

a. Light the boiler and, using the flue sampling point (provided on the top RH side of the back panel) carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults.

b. Clean the main burner.

c. Clean the heat exchanger.

d. Clean the main and pilot injectors.

e. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

f. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

g. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 48 to 52 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING. Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed. Refer to Frame 48.*

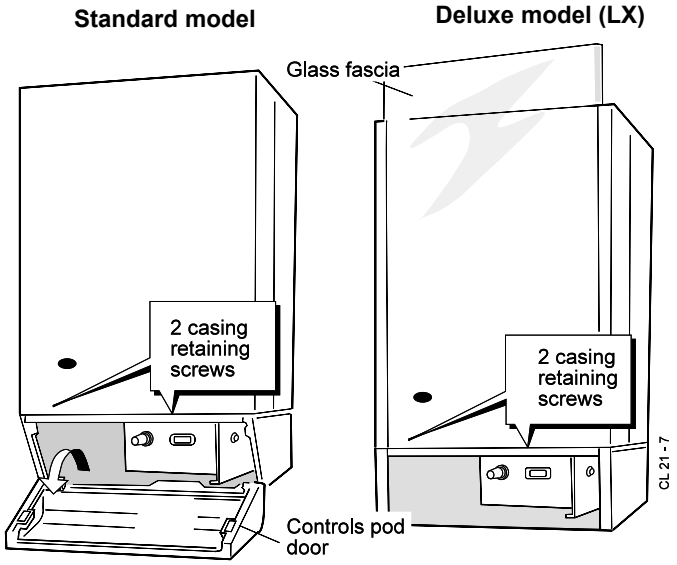
48 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

1. If the **Classic Sealed System Unit** is fitted (Standard boiler only), lift off the casing.

2. **Deluxe model (LX)** -Lift the glass fascia and pull the sliding catch out to retain the glass in the upper position. Release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the back panel. Retain the casing in a safe place.

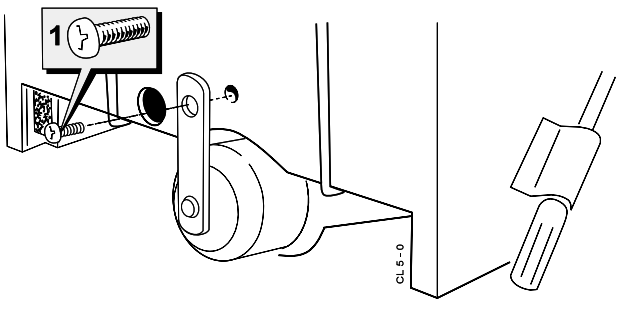
Standard model - Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the pack panel. Retain the casing in a safe place.Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 (page 6) should should be followed.

3. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



49 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

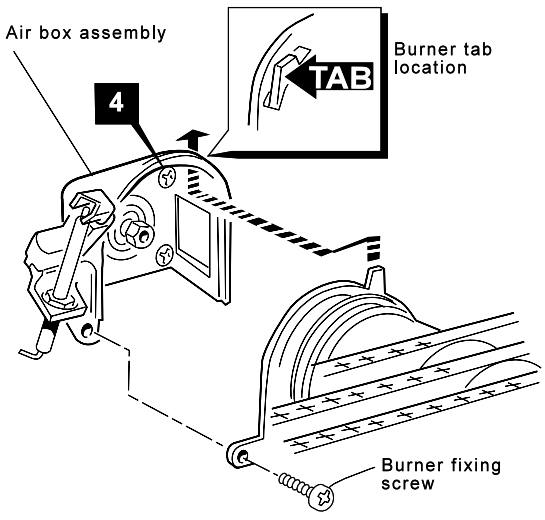
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove the burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.



2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the 4 screws retaining the air box/pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly.



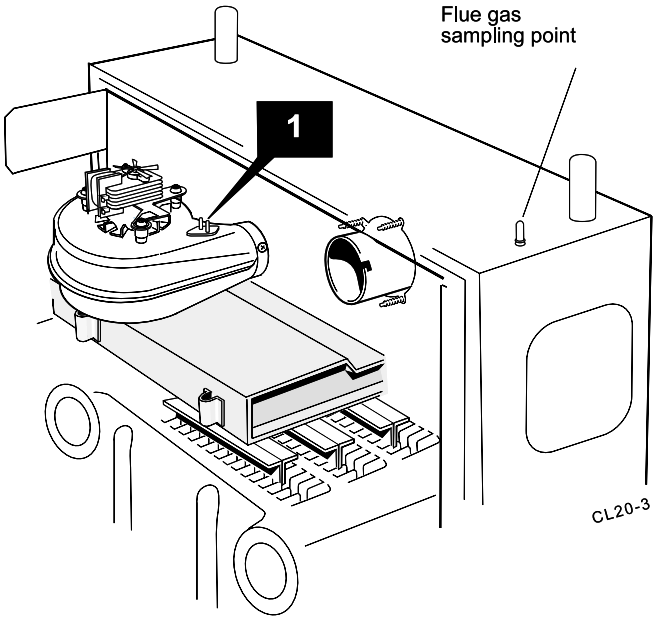
50 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue
Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side or top flue
Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.
7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.
8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

51 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head (ensuring the flame ports are unobstructed) and remove any debris that may have collected.
   Note. *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*
2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.
3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.
4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

a. The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 58 for removal details.
b. The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.
c. The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.
d. The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.
e. The spark gap is correct (Frame 58). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

52 RE-ASSEMBLY

Re-assemble the boiler in the following order.

1. Refit the flue baffles.
2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally on to the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.
3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.
4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.
5. Refit the control box.
6. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 34 & 36.
7. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 55.
8. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock and pressure test point.
9. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 43, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.

10. Deluxe model (LX)
Push the sliding catch in and lower the glass fascia to the closed position.

Standard model
Close the controls pod door.

53 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If, after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 58) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting', Frame 43.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input. Any required adjustments should be made by using the pressure adjustment screw.

Refer to 'initial Lighting', Frame 43.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

54 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.

2. Turn OFF the gas supply.

3. Remove the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 48.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding, the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

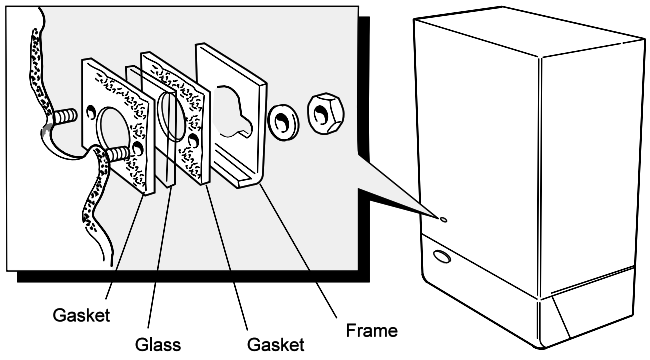
Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate ignition operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

55 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Unfasten the 2 nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.
3. When fixing the new assembly ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.
4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.
6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 52.

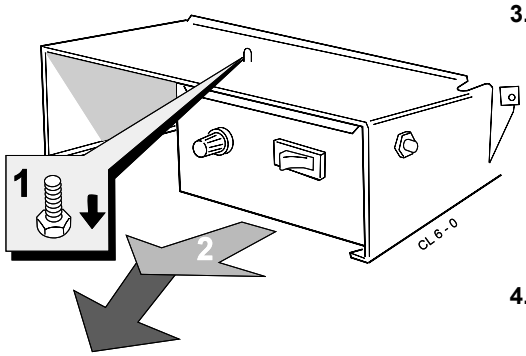


Note. *Standard model illustrated. For the deluxe model (LX) slide the glass fascia out before removing the sightglass assembly. Refit the glass fascia after refitting the new sightglass assembly.*

56 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

Refer to Frames 37, 54 & 70.

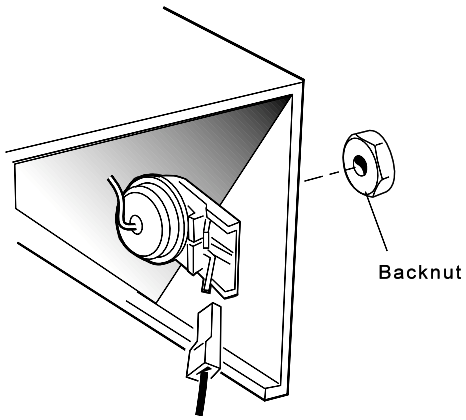
1. Remove the control box fixing screw.



2. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. To remove the overheat thermostat pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Remove the thermostat from the heat exchanger pocket.

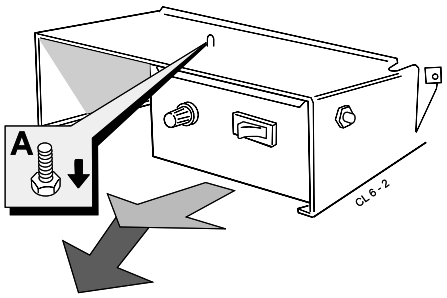
4. Re-assemble in reverse order.



57 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD and ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT

Refer also to Frame 54.

Remove the control box fixing screw (A). Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.



Thermostat control

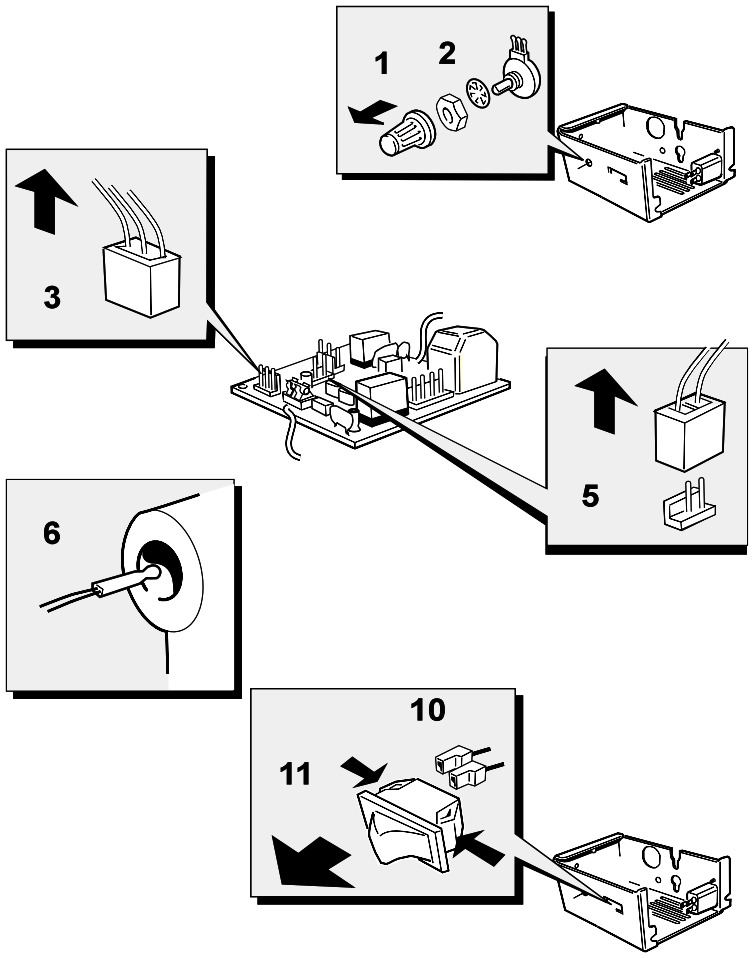
1. Pull the knob off the shaft.
2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.
3. Pull off the Molex connector from the printed circuit board.
4. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

Thermistor sensor lead

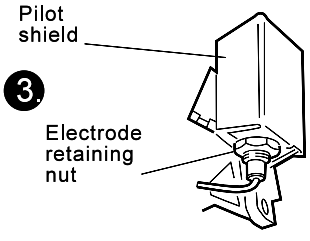
5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.
6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.
7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.
8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.
9. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

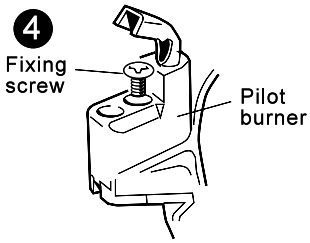
On/off switch

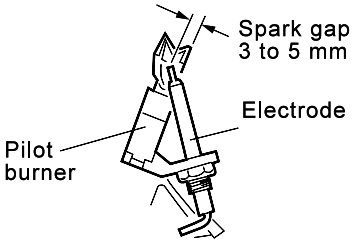
10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.
12. Re-assemble in reverse order.

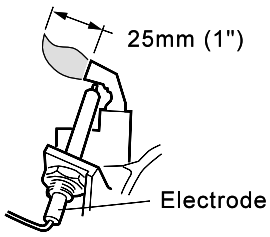


58 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT





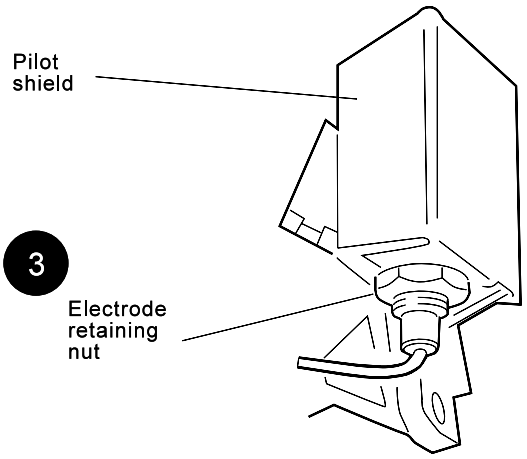




1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.
4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.
5. Replace the pilot burner (injector if necessary) and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.
6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.
7. Replace the box assembly.
8. Replace the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

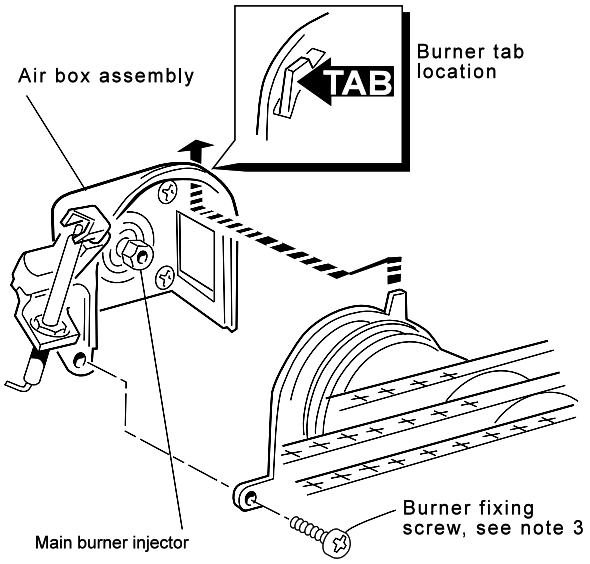
59 IGNITION ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.
4. Remove the pilot shield.
5. Remove the ignition electrode and integral lead.
6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.
7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 58.
8. Refit the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. Check the pilot ignition.



60 MAIN BURNER AND MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.
3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downward to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.
4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that an approved jointing compound is used sparingly.
5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot.
6. Refit the M5 retaining screw.
7. Refit the boiler casing.
8. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.



61 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

Note. *Also refer to Frame 69 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
4. Remove the gas control valve electrical connection.
5. Disconnect and remove the gas union from the gas control valve.
6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the 2 screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.
7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.
8. Remove the 4 screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new gas control valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on back indicates the direction of flow).

   Note. *Remove the gas cock stub and refit into the new gas control valve. Use an approved jointing compound on the pipe stub.*
9. Re-assemble in reverse order.
10. Replace the boiler casing.
11. Check the gas valve operation.

62 FAN REPLACEMENT

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.

2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue. Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side or top flue. Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

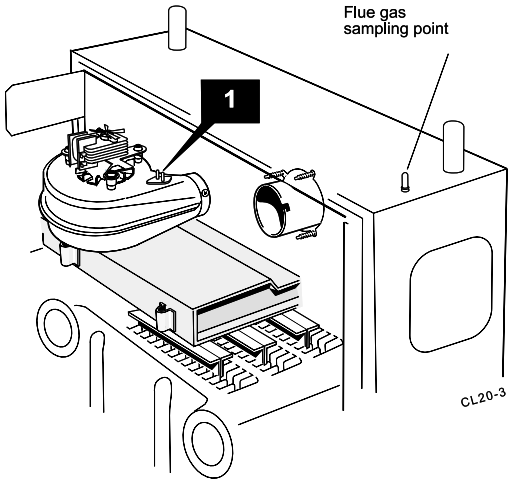
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.

5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.

6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood / fan assembly.

7. Remove the three M4 screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.

8. Re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads, and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.



9. Refit the boiler casing.

10. Check the boiler operation.

63 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Remove the APS fixing screw.

3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.

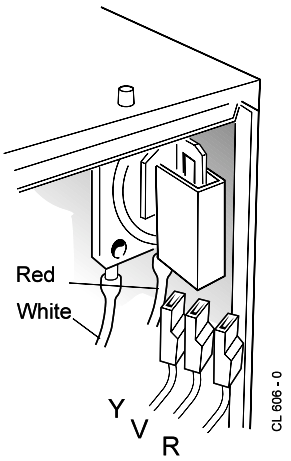
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.

5. Connect the new APS in reverse order.

6. Refit the APS with the fixing screw.

7. Refit the boiler casing.

8. Check the boiler operation.



64 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frames 69 & 70 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. Remove the HT lead from the PCB

4. Remove the 6 push-in connectors from the PCB.

5. Remove the neutral wire on the PCB from its connection to the back of the socket inside the control box.

6. Remove the earth wire on the PCB from its connection to the earth stud inside the control box.

7. Remove the 2 connections from the on/off switch and remove the switch.

8. Compress the barbs on the PCB stand-offs to release the PCB from the box

9. Fit the new PCB and re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the correct orientation of the switch.

10. Refit the boiler casing.

11. Check the operation of the boiler.

65 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.

3. Remove the 4 tie rods.

4. Remove the combustion chamber.

5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.

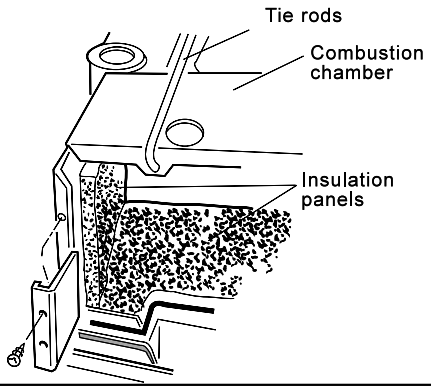
6. Remove the side insulation panels.

7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.

8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.

9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.

10. Re-assemble in reverse order.



66 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frame 5 (Boiler assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

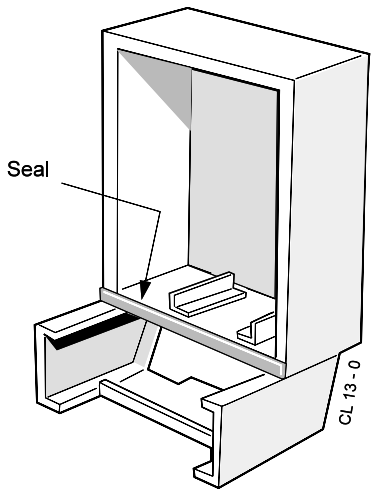
1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner / air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Drain the system.
4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings in order to allow the heat exchanger assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.
5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.
7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.
8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / inter-panel retaining screws.
9. Lift the heat exchanger / inter-panel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downwards to clear the water pipes from the back panel.
10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.
11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.
12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.
13. Re-assemble in reverse order.
14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.
15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

67 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the old seal from the casing surround and thoroughly clean the casing surfaces.
3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.
4. Replace the boiler casing.

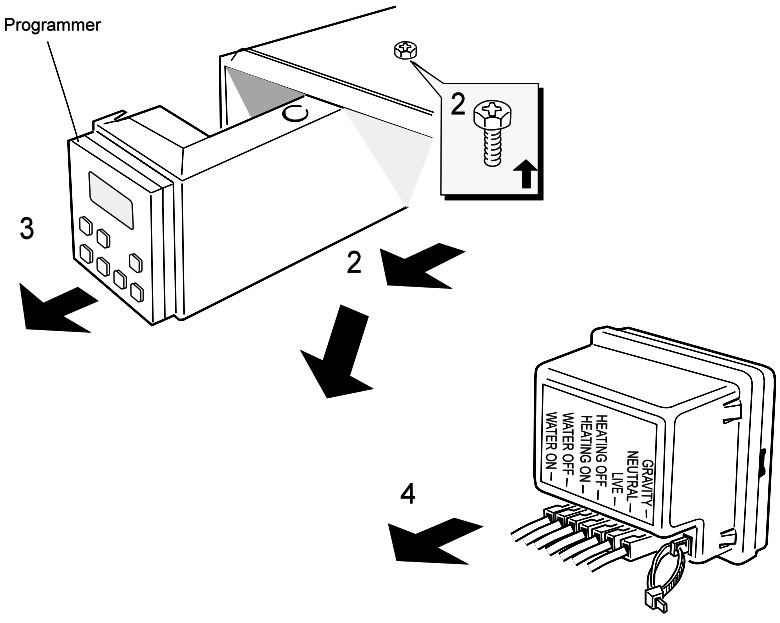
Notes.
The standard model is illustrated. Use the same procedure for casing seal replacement on the deluxe model (LX).

Model FF 2 100 does not have air deflector baffles fitted to jacket bottom.

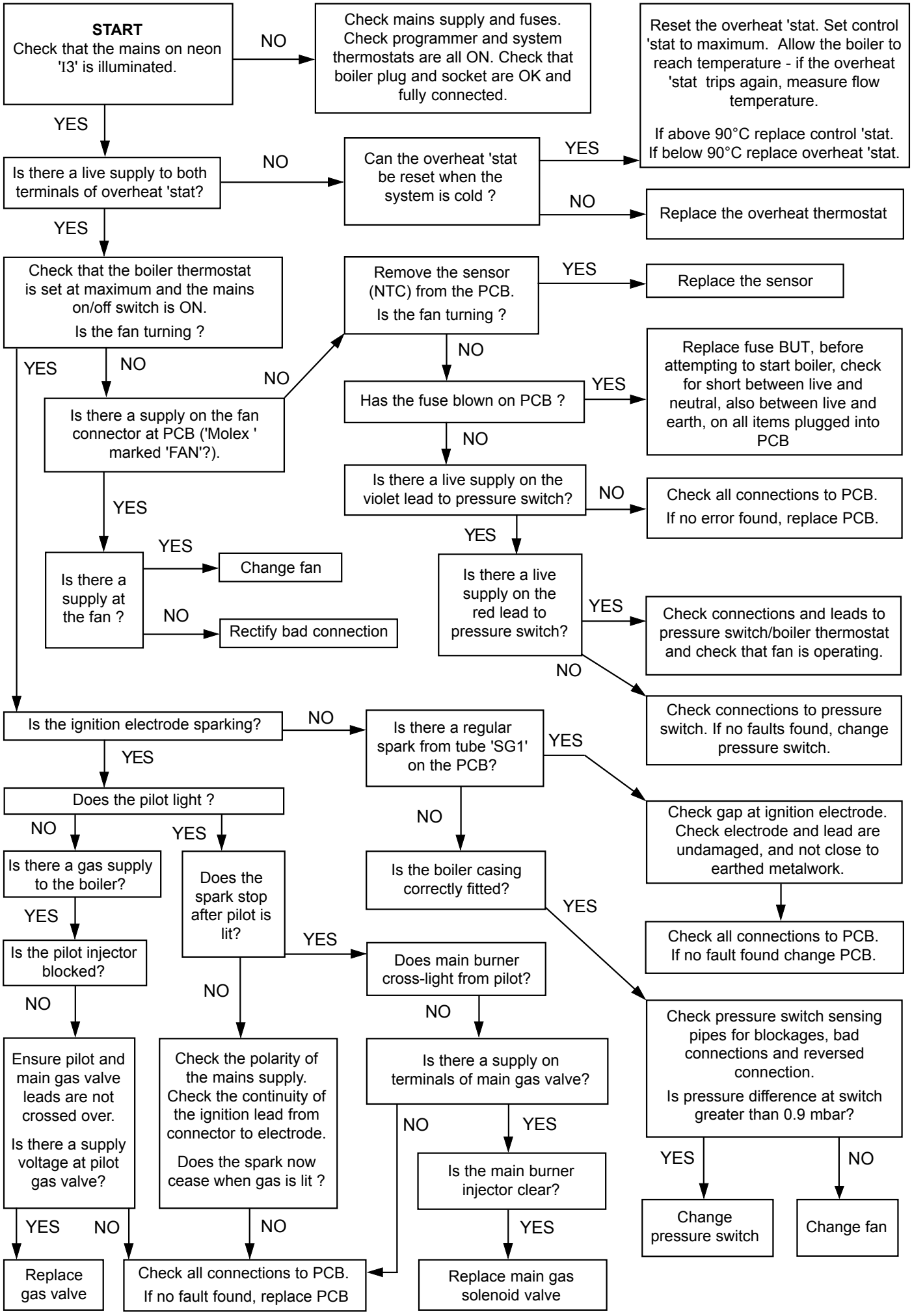


68 PROGRAMMER REPLACEMENT (IF FITTED)

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the programmer box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
3. Pull the programmer forward out of its box.
4. Pull off terminal connections from back of programmer.
5. Fit the new programmer in reverse order.
6. Refit the boiler casing.
7. Set the programmer to the desired programme and check the operation of the boiler.



FAULT FINDING



SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

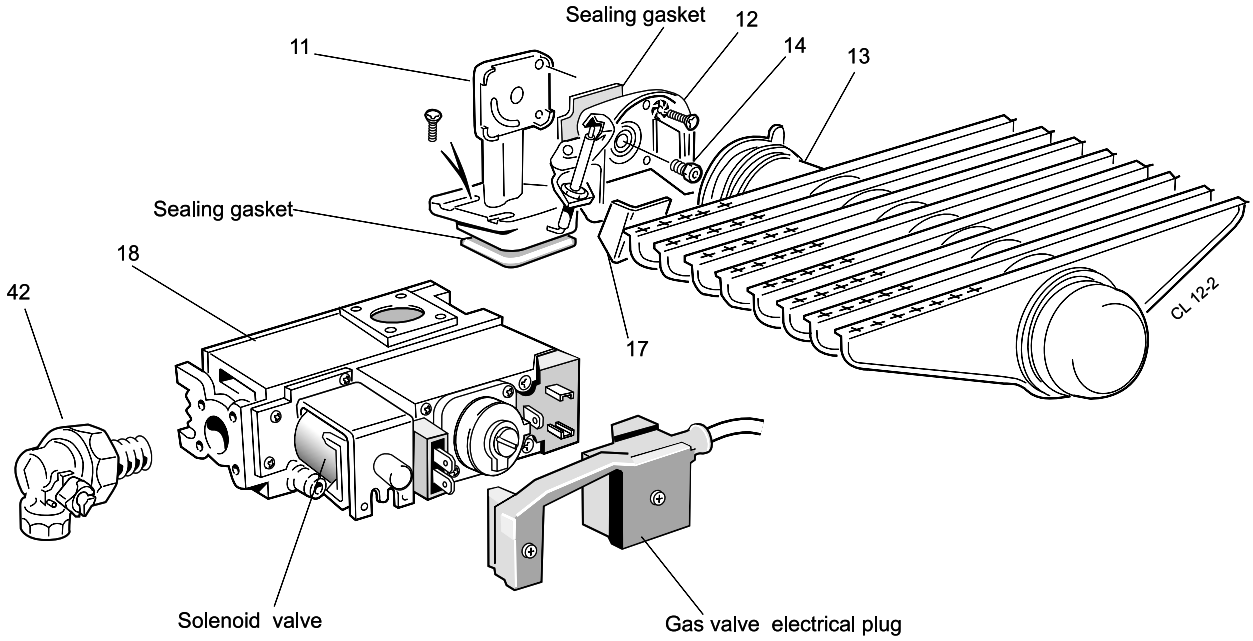
The full lists is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

When ordering spares please quote:

1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
13		Main burner		
	379 917	AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 294; FF 230 & FF 240	1	111707
	379 918	AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 293; FF 250 & FF 260	1	111708
	379 919	AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 292; FF 270, FF 280 & FF 2 100	1	111709
14		Main burner injector		
		Injector 044-323-344 256; FF 230	1	153884
		Injector 044-323-344 290; FF 240	1	153885
		Injector 044-323-344 330; FF 250		153886
	389 587	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 1550; FF 260	1	111989
	389 588	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 1850; FF 270	1	111990
	398 065	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 2300; FF 280	1	004760
		Aeromatic Pt. No. 939021, 4.6mm; FF 2 100	1	152320
14A		Copper washer, Aeromatic 914176(for injector); FF230, FF240, FF250, FF2 100	1	152426
15	397 943	Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075002 ; FF 230-280	1	004982
		Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075001 ; FF 2 100	1	
16	308 358	Pilot burner head Q359A with:		
		Honeywell 4580 1075002 injector FF 230-280	1	079599
		Honeywell 4580 1075001 injector FF 2 100	1	079590
18		Gas valve kit VR 4601AA1036, 230 V	1	075698
19	308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm lg.	1	111881
20	E02-653	Control box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	151252
24	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
25	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board :		
		PACTROL PCB 25 B	1	079716
27	385 861	Pressure switch: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 A 1010	1	111379
28	E02-661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No.WFFB 0221-039 FF 230-280	1	151586
		SIFAN No.WFFB 0226-028 FF 2 100	1	
33	E04-503	Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation & M5 x 16 dogpoint pozi pan hd (Stan'd model only) FF 230-280	1	075391
		FF 2 100	1	075523
36	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instructions (Standard model only)	1	079941
37	E04-504	Casing seal pack complete with screws	1	075392
51	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 P 8508	1	113200
52	308 622	Glass fascia FF (Deluxe model only)	1	112734
53	308 624	Plastic fascia trim FF (Deluxe model only) - BEIGE	2	138249
54	308 623	Plastic fascia trim FF (Deluxe model only) - WHITE	2	138405
55	E04-509	Boiler casing assembly - white stove enamel with sightglass and foil insulation (Deluxe model only)	1	075393
56	-	Controls casing bottom panel	1	138267

69 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

(Numbers up to 51 relate to the B.G. spares list)

11. Burner manifold

12. Air box and pilot assembly.

13. Main burner.

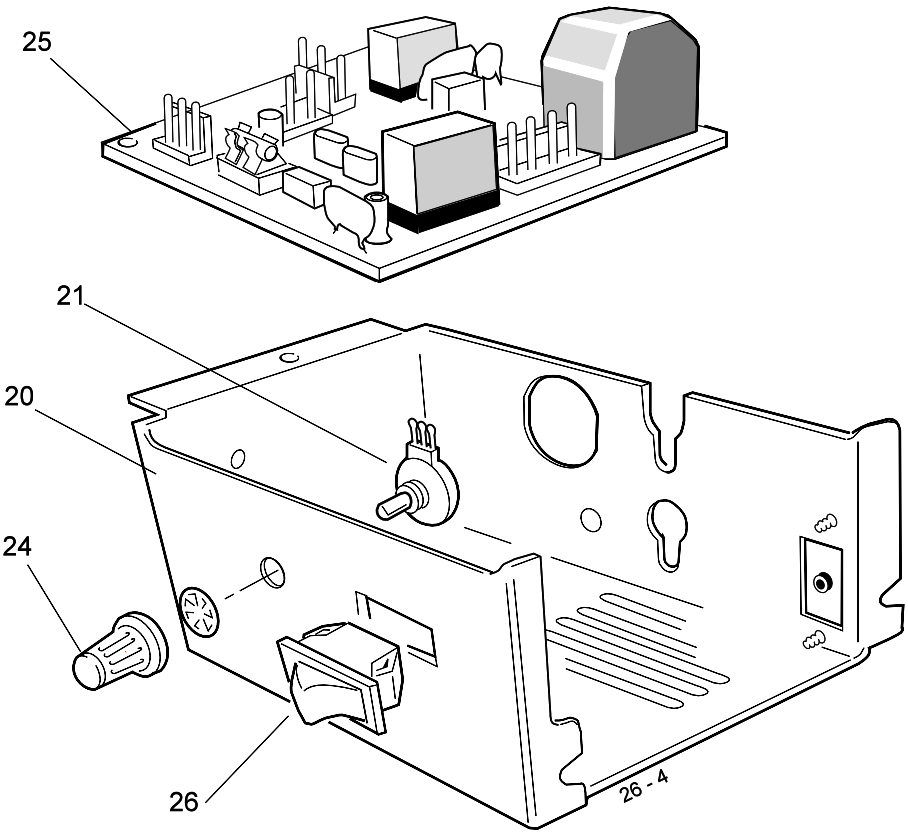
14. Main burner injector.

17. Pilot shield.

18. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

70 CONTROL BOX - Exploded View



LEGEND

(Numbers up to 51 relate to the B.G. spares list)

20. Control box.

21. Thermostat potentiometer.

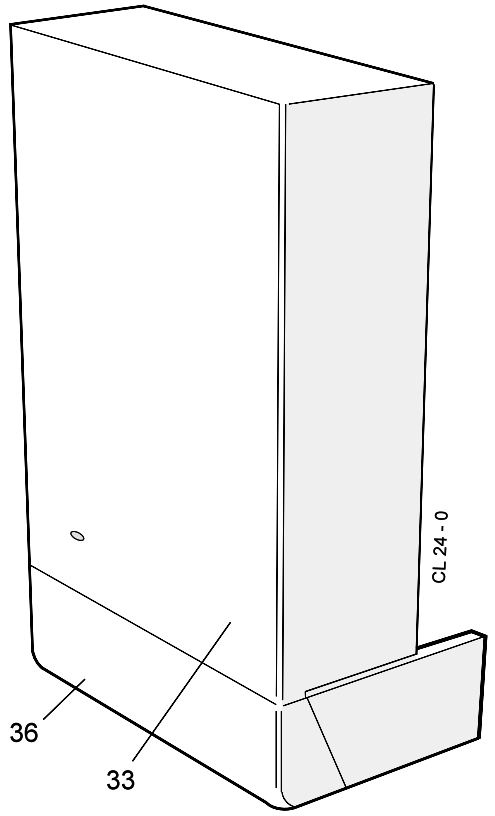
24. Thermostat knob.

25. Printed circuit board.

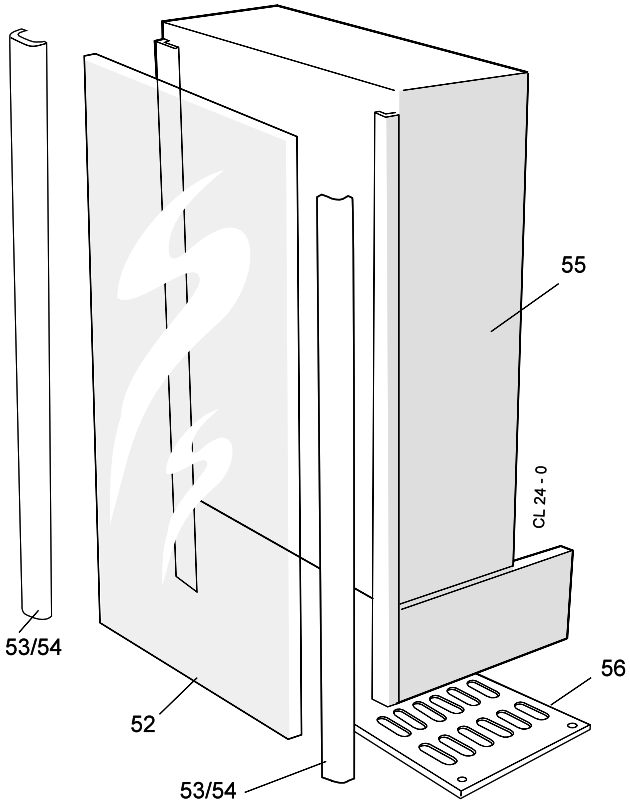
26. Mains on/off switch.

71 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY

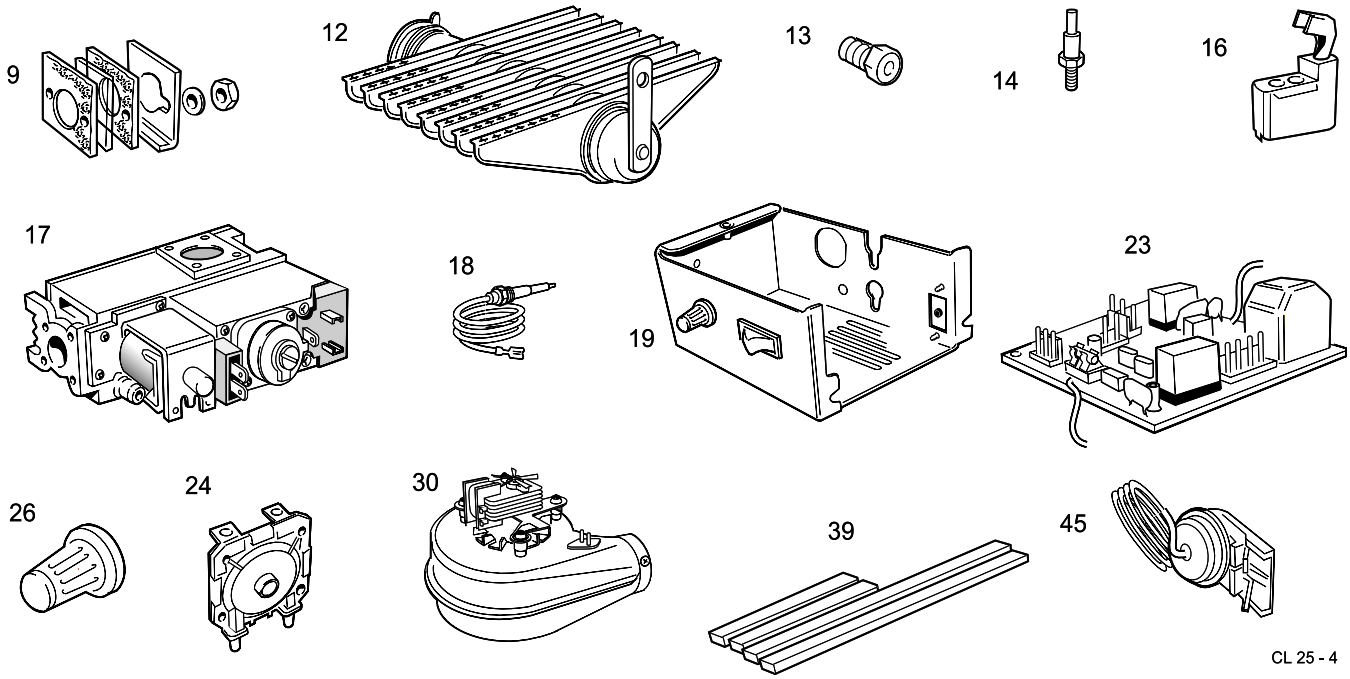
Standard model



Deluxe model (LX)



72 SHORT PARTS LIST



benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01270 413624*

CERTIFIED TO BRITISH STANDARDS BS6332 BS5258

THIS SYMBOL IS YOUR ASSURANCE OF QUALITY

These appliances are designed for use with Natural Gas only. They have been tested and conform with the provisions of BS. 6332 and BS. 5258.

CE

LXFF.87/AQ/220
LXRS.87/AQ/221
FF.87/AP/107
RS.87/AP/108

Natural Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

Caradon Plumbing Limited, P.O. Box 103, National Ave, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137. Registered Office: National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. *A subsidiary of Caradon p.l.c*

Caradon Plumbing Limited pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

November 1999 UIN 111 497 A13

Ideal BOILERS

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

YOUR FEEDBACK

and your chance to win a free boiler

At Ideal we've been leaders in the design and engineering of robust and reliable boilers for over 90 years. We want to continue as leaders by listening to your suggestions for how to improve our boilers and our service. We will be giving away a free boiler for the five best ideas every year (to be selected by our Technical Director). Please complete this form, using extra sheets if required, and post it or fax it to us on 01482 498699.

Boiler details

Model / Size *(e.g. Classic RS 230, Mexico CF 3/60 etc. Details on control panel door)*

Date of Installation

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

How I would improve this boiler:

My general comments for Ideal:

Caradon Plumbing Solutions

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

Further information

If you would like information about Ideal Boilers please complete this sheet and fax it to us on 01482 498699 or post it to Caradon Plumbing Limited, PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN.

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

General information required

- ☐ *Please send me details of Ideal Training Courses.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for a technical representative to contact me.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for me to join an Ideal factory tour.*

Range guides required

- ☐ *The Ideal Guide: a specifier's and installer's introduction to the Ideal domestic boiler range.*
- ☐ *The Ideal Householders Guide: to assist the installer when presenting to his/her customers.*

Technical manuals required

- ☐ *The Ideal C class combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic System wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic LX Deluxe wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Mexico floor standing boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Minimiser heat-saving boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response combi. boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response SE super efficiency combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Systemiser SE super efficiency system boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Concord high output boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Buccaneer oil fired boiler*

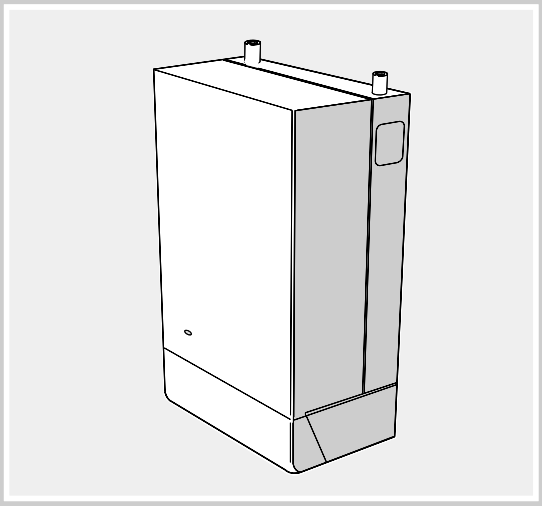
Caradon
Plumbing Solutions

Caradon Plumbing Limited, PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492251 Fax: 01482 448858.

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

U.I.N. 111 497 A0

THE IDEAL INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



classic

the wall hung boiler

**Wall hung,
fanned flued,
gas fired boiler**

Classic LXFF 250P-275P

Classic FF 250P-275P

Ideal BOILERS

Installers guide to domestic central heating boilers

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size				FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Gas supply connection				Rc 1/2 (1/2)		
Flow connection				22mm copper		28mm copper (FEMALE)
Return connection				22mm copper		28mm copper (FEMALE)
Maximum static water head			m (ft.)	30.5 (100)		
Minimum static water head			m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)		
Electrical supply				230 V ~ 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W		
Fuse rating				External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265		
Water content			litre (gal.)	3.65 (0.8)		4.65 (1.0)
Dry Weight	Deluxe model		kg (lb)	49.6 (109.4)		55.6 (122.6)
	Standard model		kg (lb)	46.6 (102.8)		52.6 (116.0)
Maximum installation weight			kg (lb)	37.4 (82.5)		43.1 (95.0)
Boiler size		Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)		
		Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)		
		Depth	mm (in.)	Deluxe model 315 (12 3/8)		
				Standard model 300 (11.8)		
Flue duct diameter			mm (in.)	100 (4.0)		

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size			FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Boiler input	MINIMUM	kW	18.3	20.9	26.7
		(Btu/h)	(62 500)	(71 250)	(91 250)
	Gas consumption	l/s (ft^3/h)	0.20 (25.0)	0.22 (28.5)	0.29 (36.5)
Boiler output		kW	14.7	16.7	21.4
		(Btu/h)	(50 000)	(57 000)	(73 000)
Burner Setting pressure (HOT)		mbar (in.w.g.)	35.3 (14.1)	35.0 (14.0)	35.0 (14.0)
Inlet pressure		mbar (in.w.g.)	37.0 (14.8)		
Seasonal efficiency (SEDBUK)*			[80.0]%	[76.8]%	[75.7]%

*The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings. The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BGplc 0087.

To obtain the gas consumption:

a. For l/s divide heat input (kW) by C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)

b. For ft^3/h divide heat input (Btu/h) by C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

Classic LX FF & FF

B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 AP 107

Destination Countries: GB and IE

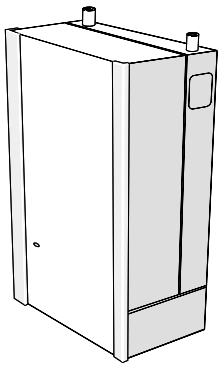
Propane Gas only Appliance type: C_{12} & C_{32}

Data Badge: on top of the controls support

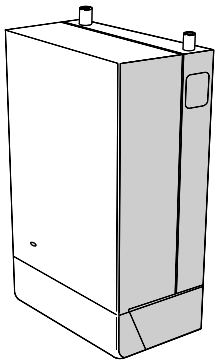
Deluxe models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic LXFF 250 P	41 387 30
Classic LXFF 260 P	41 387 31
Classic LXFF 275 P	41 387 32

Standard models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 250 P	41 387 07
Classic FF 260 P	41 387 08
Classic FF 275 P	41 387 09

Deluxe Model (LX)



Standard Model



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} & C_{32} =

A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal or vertical terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is up stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{3P} = An appliance designed for use on 3rd Family gas, Group P only.

CONTENTS

Air Supply 8

Boiler Clearances 6

Boiler Exploded View 10

Burner Exploded View 34

Control Box Exploded View 34

Electrical Connections 21

Electrical Regulations 8

Extension Ducts - Fitting 20

External Control 21

Fault Finding 33

Flue Installation 7
- **Rear installation** 13
- **Side installation** 16

Gas Safety 5

Gas Supply 7

Health & Safety Document 5

Initial lighting 24

Installation 10

Mandatory Requirements 5

Pump 9

Servicing 26

Short List of Parts 35

Spares Replacement 26

System Diagrams 22

Terminal Guards 7

Water and Systems 9

WaterTreatment 8

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

INTRODUCTION

The Classic LXFF / FF250-275 Propane is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

LXFF 250-275 (Deluxe Model LX) Propane

The boiler casing is fitted with a glass fascia. The glass fascia can be lifted up to gain access to the boiler thermostat.

All details for the deluxe casing model are the same as the standard model unless otherwise stated.

FF 250-275 (Standard Model) Propane

The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

Note. *These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation.*
If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Downward Piping Kit

Programmer Kit.

Vertex Flue Kit. For vertical flue connection

Roof Flue Kit.

90° Flue Elbow
Turret Kit

Sealed System Unit. Fits on top of the appliance. (suitable for standard boilers only).

Extension ducts. Up to 3 m (118").

GAS SAFETY (INSTALLATION AND USE) Regulations 1994, amendments 1996 or rules in force.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer, identified by ❀, in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority.

Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.5482	Domestic butane and propane burning appliances
BS.6891	Low pressure installation pipes.
BS.6798	Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.5449	Forced circulation hot water systems.
BS.5546	Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd and 3rd Family Gases).
BS.5440.1	Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.5440.2	Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.7593	Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

Health & Safety Document No. 635.

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the British Standards Institution for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances - unless covered by these 'Installation and Servicing' instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the BSI Certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

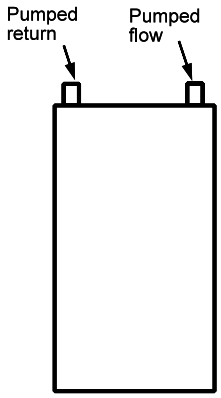
Timber Framed Buildings

If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IG/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland,

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS



This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.

FF 275P boiler ONLY

must be fitted with the 22mm x 28mm copper sockets, provided in the Hardware Pack (or equivalent 22mm x 28mm compression fittings), and the pumped flow and return pipes run in 28mm pipe.

2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing

Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

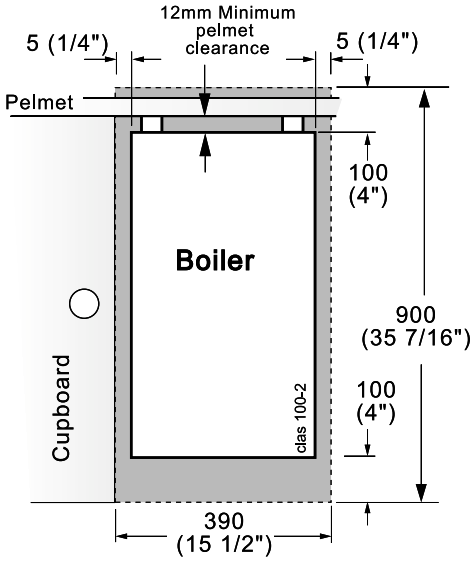
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.

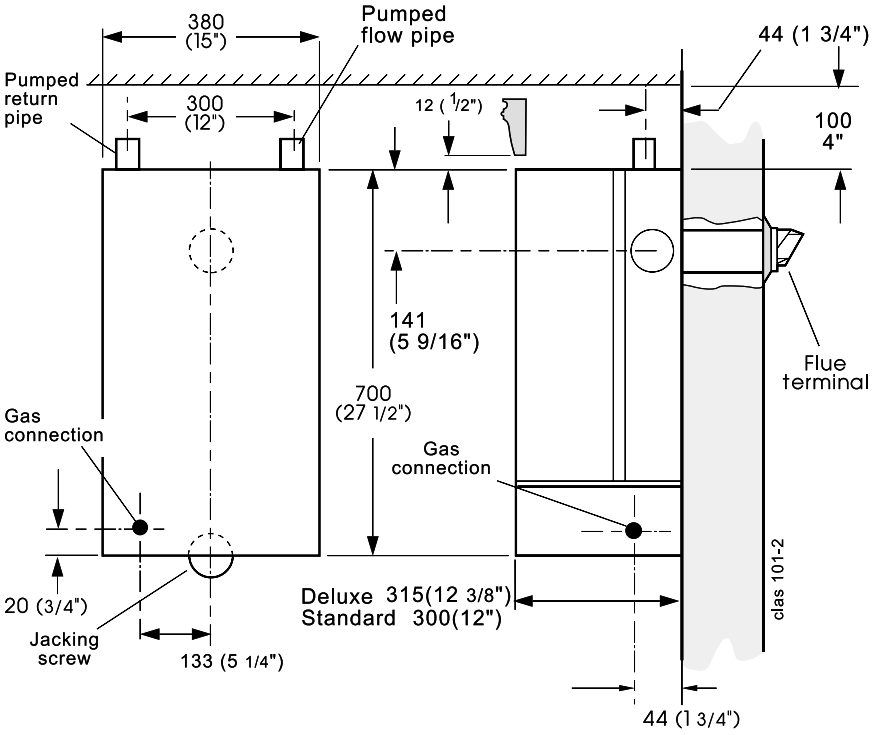
c. If using the Complete Sealed System Unit then refer to the instructions packed with the unit for the necessary clearances.



Front clearance: 450mm (17 3/4") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built in to cupboard is 75 mm (3").

Front view **Side view**



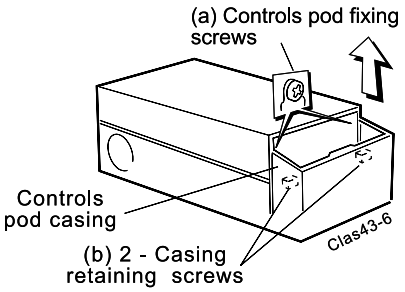
Pelmet restrictions.

If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.



the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower.

Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler should be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/ compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler, see section on 'Air Supply'.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service, see the Wall mounting diagram, Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

A local propane supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas.

Installation pipes, cylinders and pressure regulators MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 5482.1.

Pipework from the supply to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size.

Bulk tank installations must comply with the Home Office code of practice for the storage of liquefied petroleum gas at fixed installations.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance.

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm. (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm. (1")
3. Below eaves	25 mm. (1")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	25 mm. (1")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm. (1")
6. From internal or external corners	25 mm. (1")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm. (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm. (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm. (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard. The minimum spacing in Table 3, Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 75mm in order to allow a terminal guard to be fitted.

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers. Ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

7. Where it is essential that the terminal wall plate is fitted, i.e. wall thicknesses over 600mm (23 1/2") or with an inaccurately cut hole, the minimum spacing in Table 3 Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 60mm (2 1/2") in order to allow the terminal wall plate to be fitted.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses, refer to Frame 8 'Unpacking'.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

   Refer to Table 4 for details of air vent position and sizing.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space cm^2 (in^2)	Air direct outside cm^2 (in^2)
FF 250 P	170 (26)	83 (13)
FF 260 P	198 (31)	102 (16)
FF 275 P	264 (41)	132 (21)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS. 6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

The boiler must be vented (not on sealed system).

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug which is provided to drain the BOILER ONLY in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistances of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size		FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Boiler Output	kW	14.7	16.7	21.4
	Btu/h	50 000	57 000	73 000
Water Flow Rate	l/min	19.0	22.8	30.3
	gal/h	250	300	400
Pressure Loss	mbar	31.5	41.7	77.0
	in w.g.	12.6	16.7	30.9

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-
Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd, Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel 0870 5601 5000 or
Betz Dearborn Ltd, Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

Important: Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators or two port valves without end switches then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower. See Frame 38 for details.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

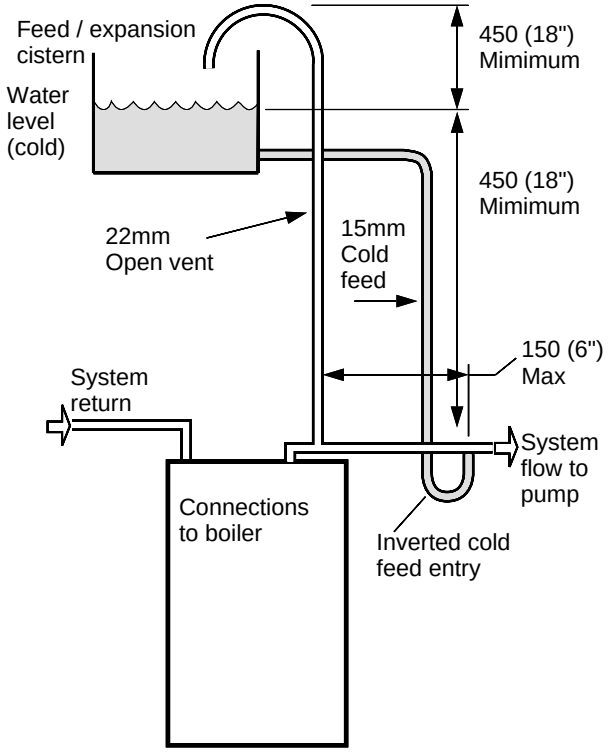
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grunfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note.
A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (Refer BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

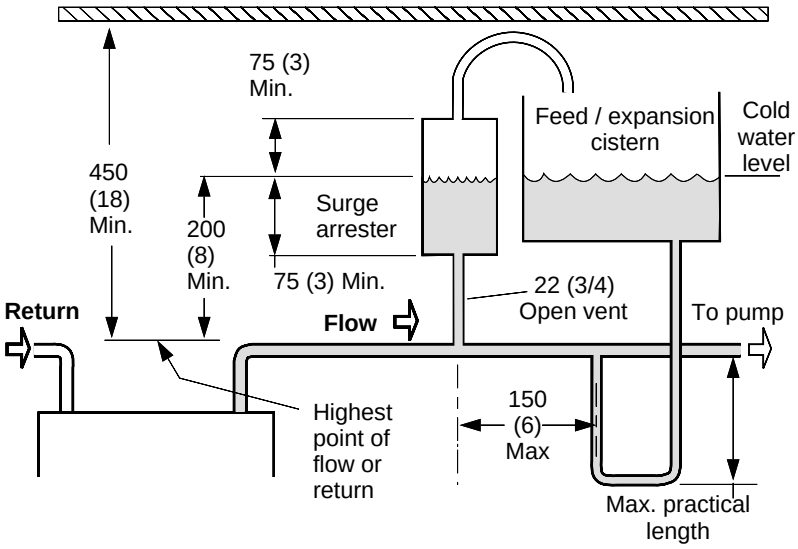
1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.

2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.

3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with*

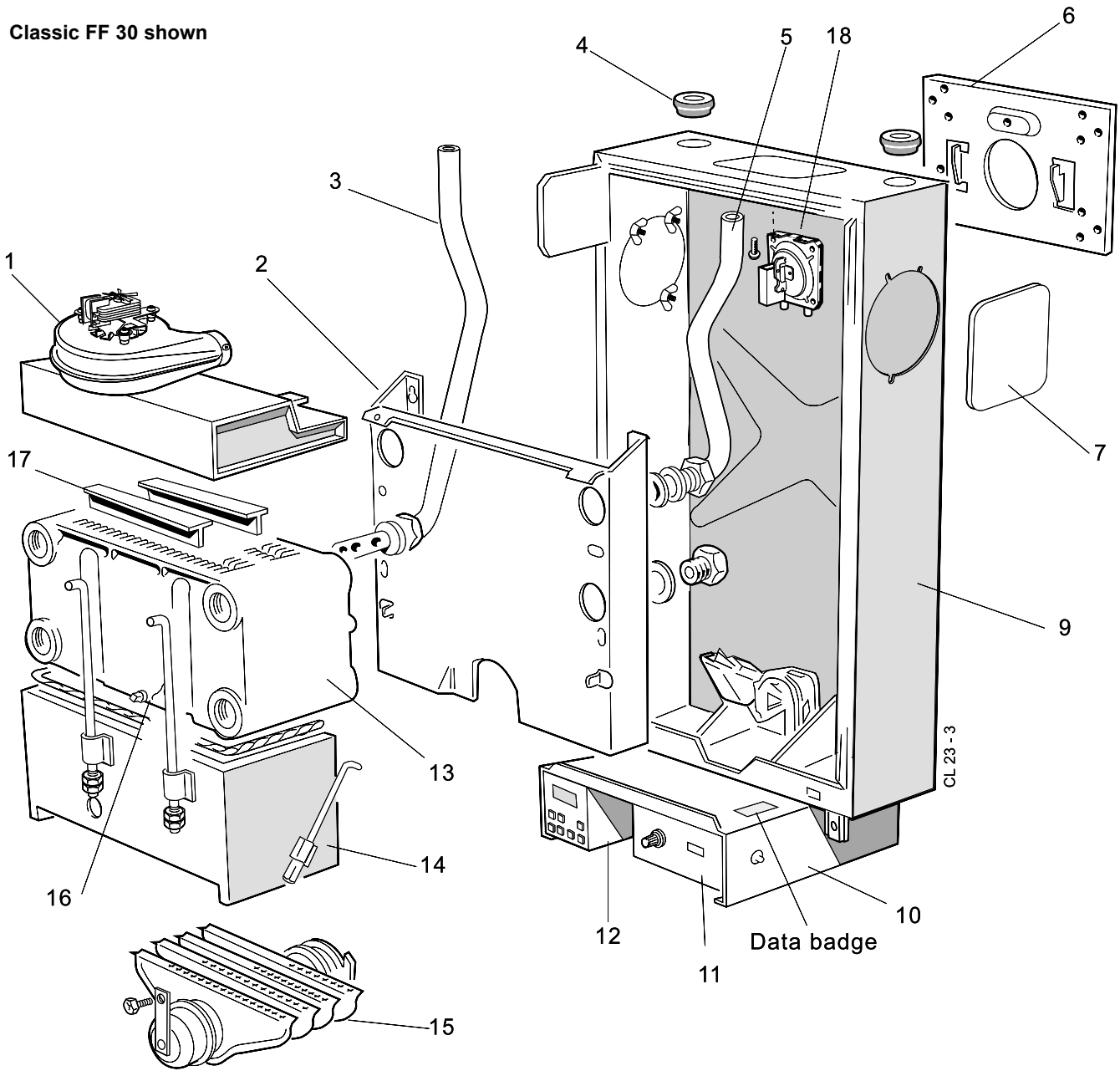
Minimum Requirements



All dimensions in mm (in.). **NB.** Imperial dimensions are approximate.

5 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 30 shown



LEGEND

(These numbers do not refer to the BG. spares list)

1. Fan / collector hood assembly.
2. Inter-panel.
3. Pumped return pipe.
4. Rubber sealing grommets.
5. Pumped flow pipe.
6. Wall mounting plate.
7. Sealing pates, 3 off
9. Back panel.
10. Controls support.
11. Control box .
12. Programmer (optional)
13. Heat exchanger.
14. Combustion chamber.
15. Main burner.
16. Boiler drain point.
17. Flue baffles
18. Pressure switch

6 UNPACKING

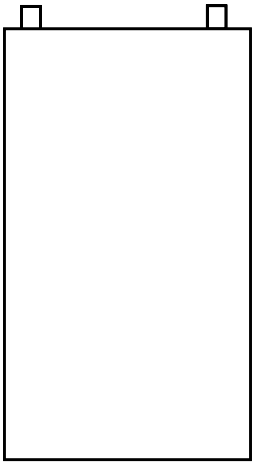
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extras, if ordered (Downward Piping Kit, Programmer Kit, complete Sealed System Unit, Extension Duct Kit D, Vertex Flue Kit G, Roof Flue Kit H and 90° Flue Elbow Kit F) are available in separate boxes.

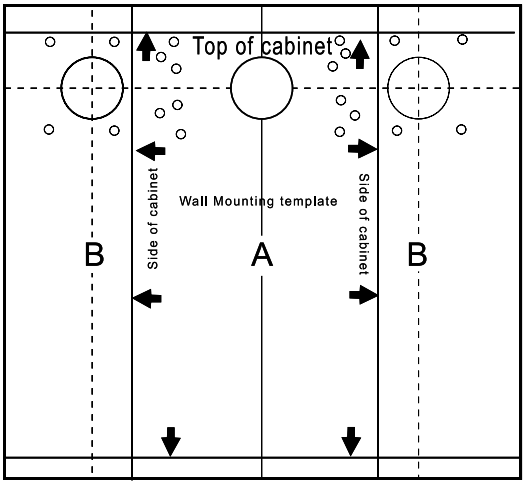
Unpack and check the contents.

Pack A Contents

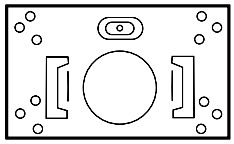
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube, 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring, 1 off



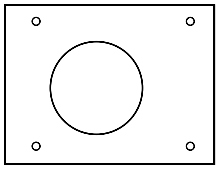
Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



Wall mounting plate



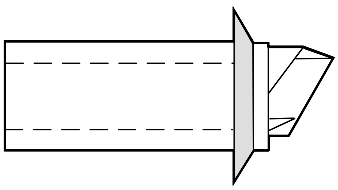
Side outlet terminal mounting plate

Hardware Pack Contents

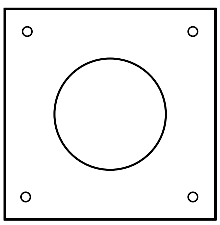
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug , 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- 22mm x 28mm copper reducing socket (FF 275 P ONLY), 2 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 lg. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 1 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy, 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



Flue terminal

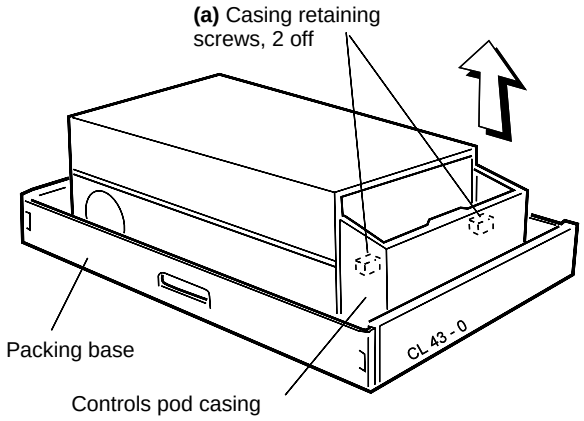


Terminal wall plate

7 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

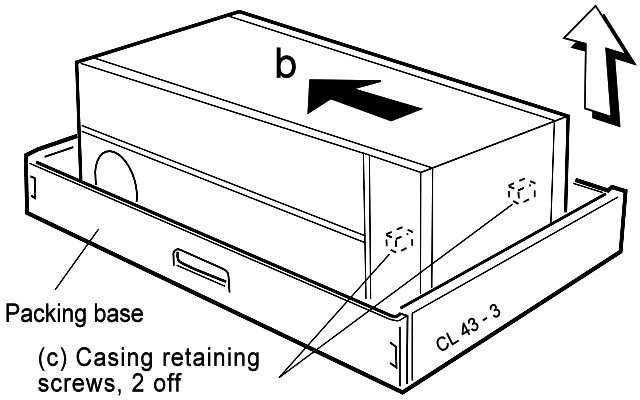
STANDARD MODEL

1. Unpack the boiler
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es)



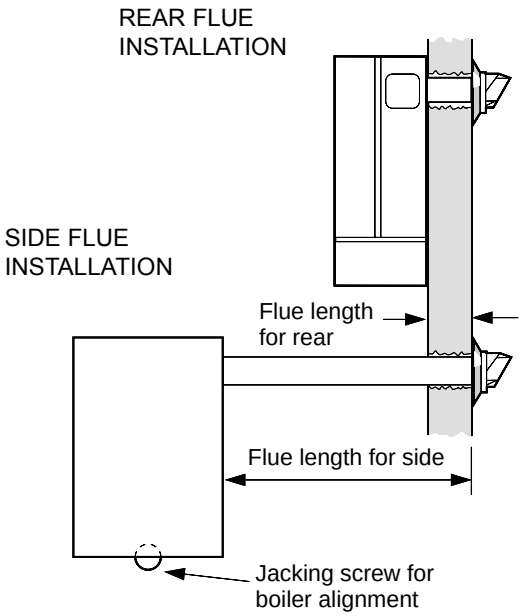
DELUXE MODEL (LX)

1. Unpack the boiler
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Slide the glass fascia upward (arrow b)
   - **b.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (c), retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **c.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).



8 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST important that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.



FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

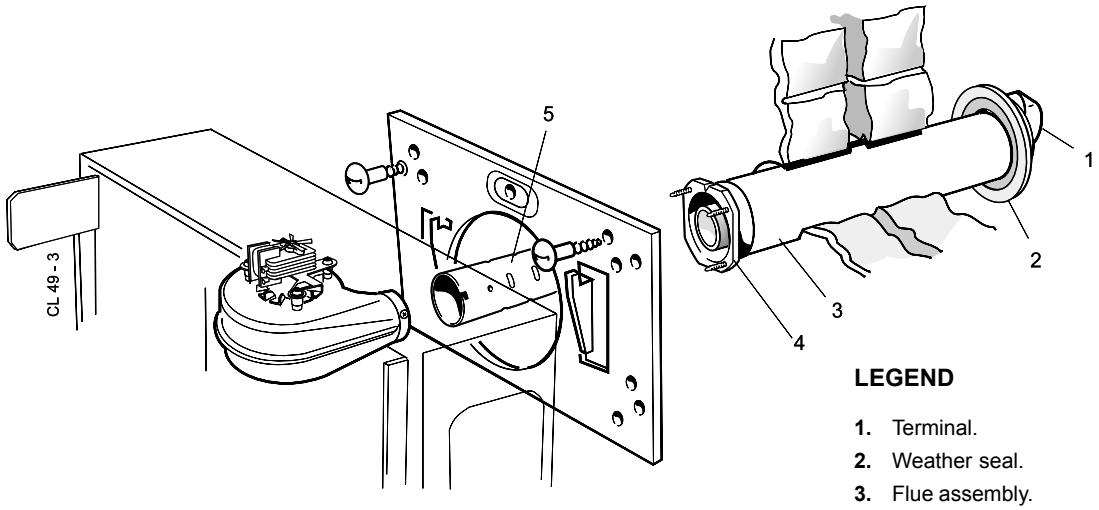
1. A maximum of 3 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand off brackets have been used, it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	152 227
600 to 1550	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	152227+152132
1550 to 2500	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	152 227+ 152132, 2 off
2500 to 3000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	152 227+ 152132, 3 off

9 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.

2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing ring.
5. Flue extension tube.

10 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation. Care must be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.*

1. Separate the templates.

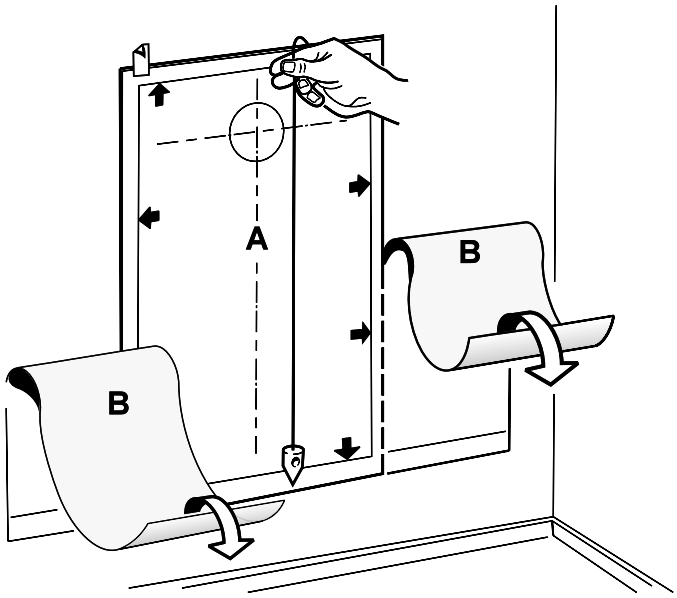
2. Tape the templates into the selected position.

3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.

4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:

- **a.** The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*
- **b.** The position of the flue duct hole.
- **c.** Downward pipe routing bracket screw positions

5. Remove the templates from the wall.



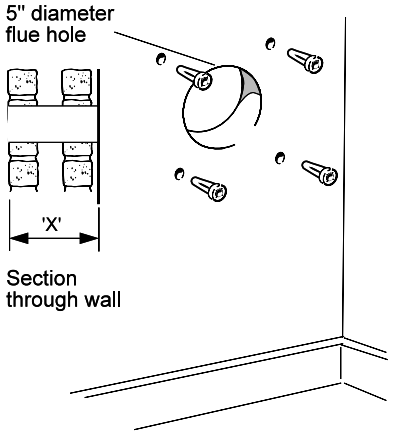
11 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill, then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the two wall faces.

2. Drill 4 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill. If the stand-off brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.

3. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

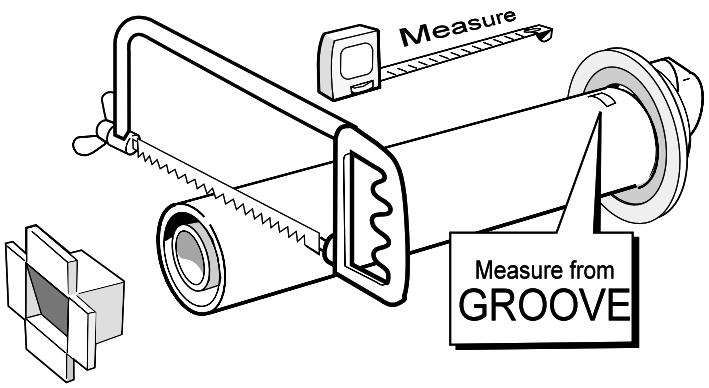
Note. I*f the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided.*
The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.

REAR FLUE OUTLET

12 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

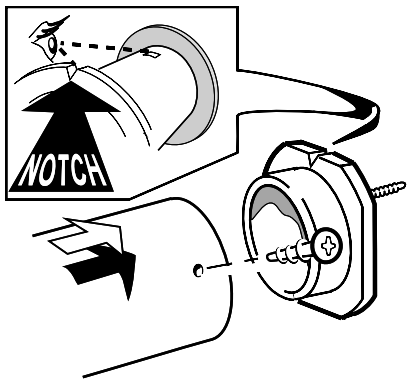
Note. *If the stand-off brackets are used it is essential that 30mm is added to the measured wall thickness when marking the flue, (to allow for the thickness of the brackets).*

1. Measure and note the wall thickness 'X'.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue .
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length 'X', using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.

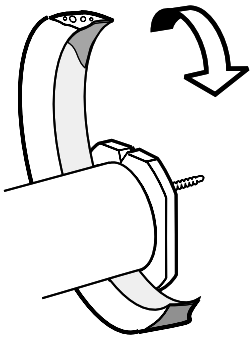


13 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.
   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

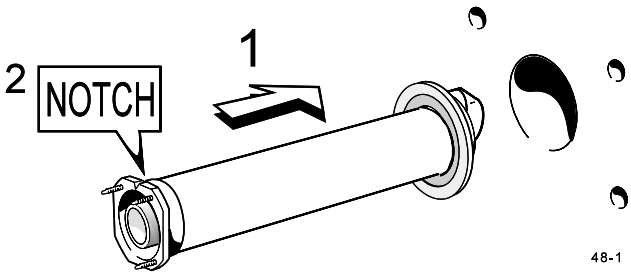


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



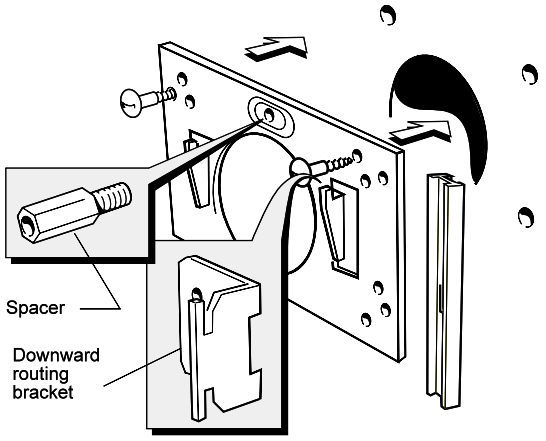
14 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole sufficiently far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



15 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If the down ward routing of pipes is required, then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
3. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



16 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Note. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack. For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

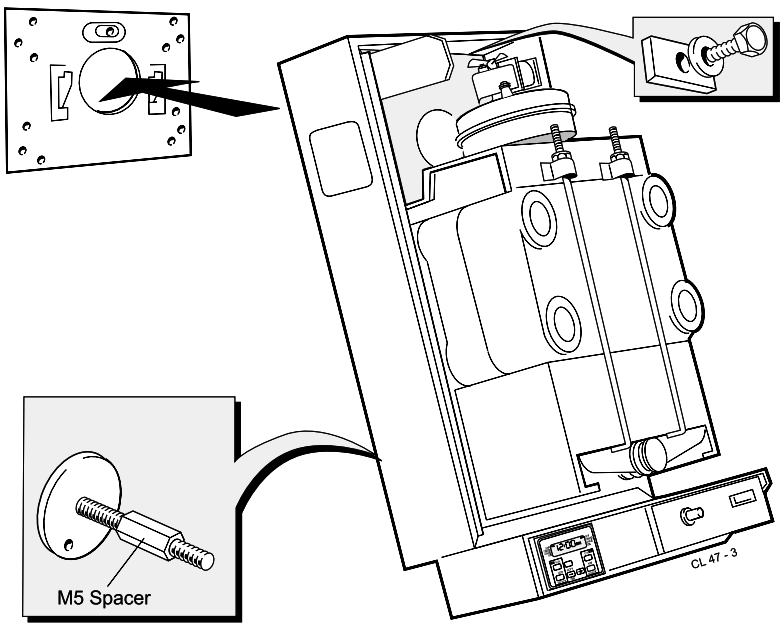
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit the M8 screw washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the M8 screw check, the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.

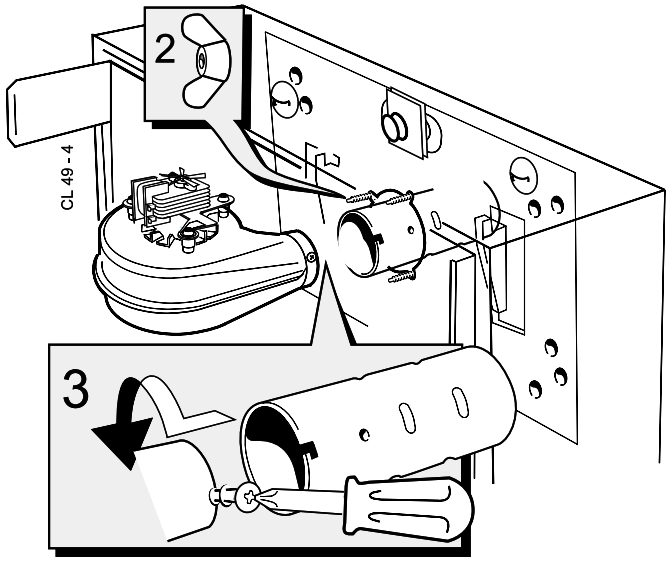


17 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the wall mounting plate and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler, using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto fan, locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

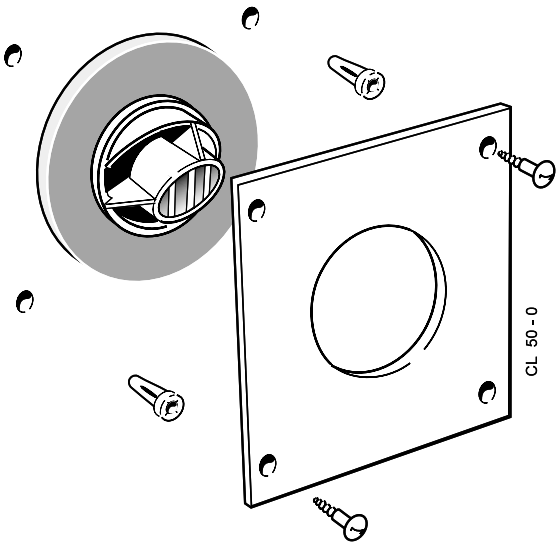


18 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 4.*

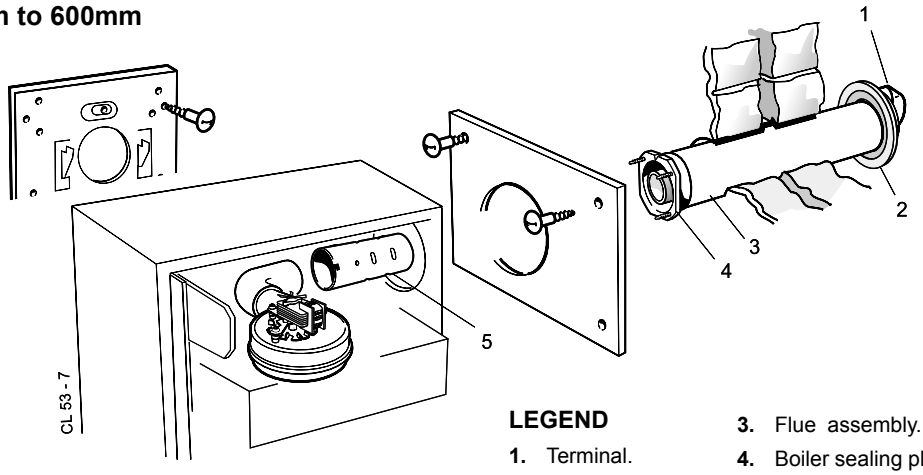


REAR FLUE OUTLET

19 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.
2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.

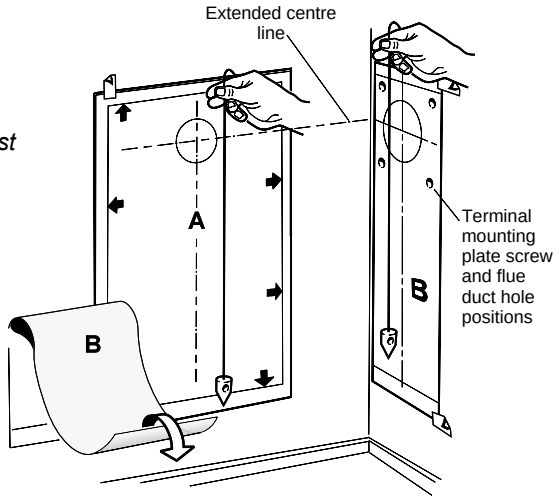


LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing plate.
5. Flue extension tube.

20 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation.*
If the flow and return pipes are to be routed down behind the boiler, the downward routing pipe brackets (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) must be used. These brackets are secured to the wall mounting plate and it is essential to use only those holes as shown on the wall mounting template. Care MUST be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.



1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The four wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). If the downward routing pipe brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.
   - **b.** The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.
   - **c.** The position of the flue duct hole (ensure that the correct centre is marked depending on whether the downward routing pipe brackets are used or not)

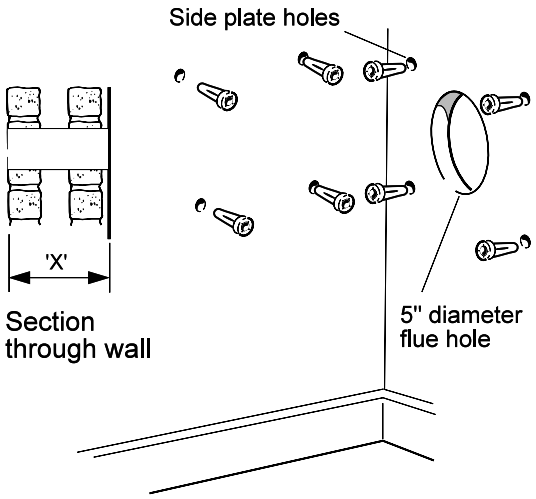
Note. *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*

   - **d.** The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.
5. Remove both templates from the wall.

21 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

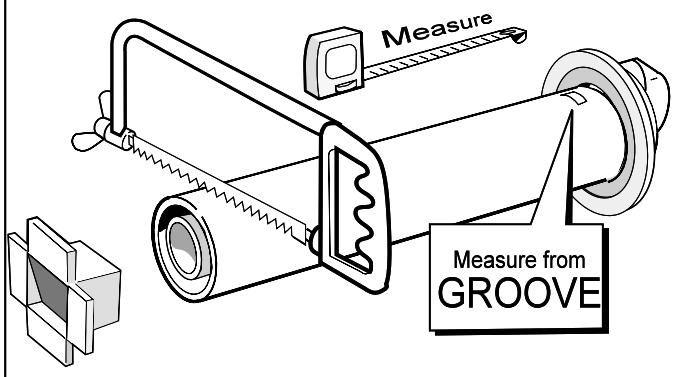
1. Cut the flue hole preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill, then making good the wall faces is not essential - as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 4 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.
3. Drill 4 holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate .



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

22 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

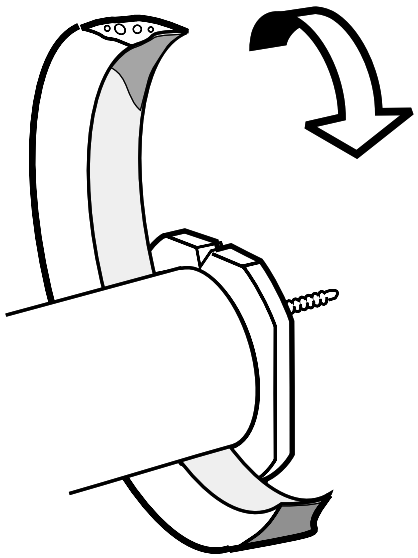
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall) - Refer to Frame 9.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard support , and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard support and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm, refer to Frames 32 & 33 - Flue extension ducts.

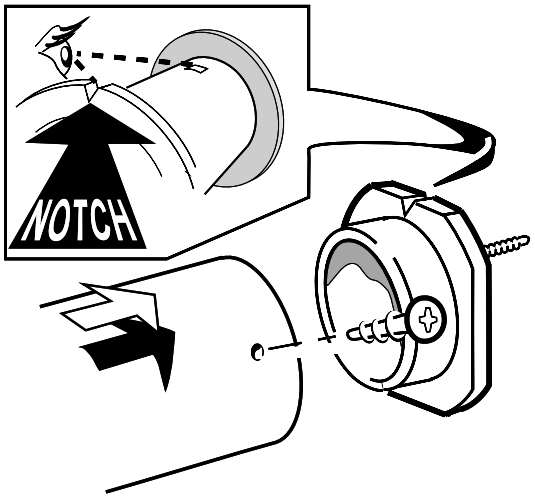
23 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



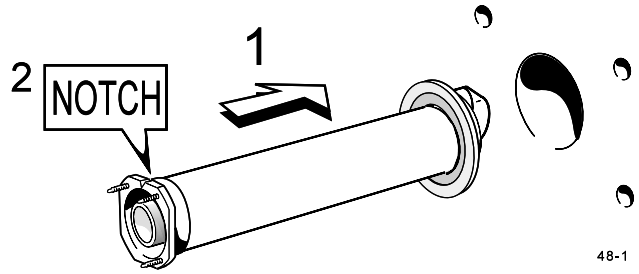
24 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



25 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole sufficiently far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

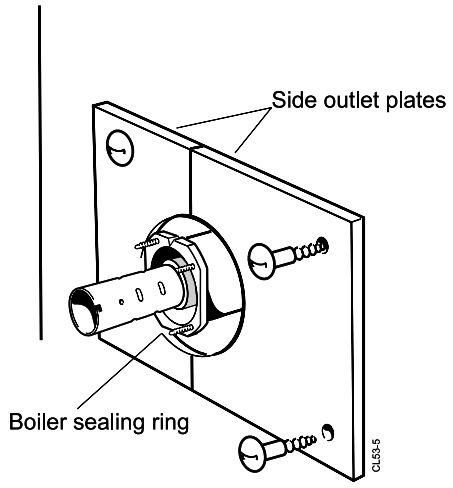


Flue assembly

26 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

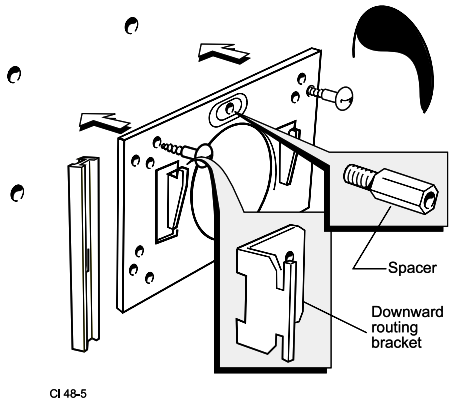
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



27 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If the downward routing of pipes is required, then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.



3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.

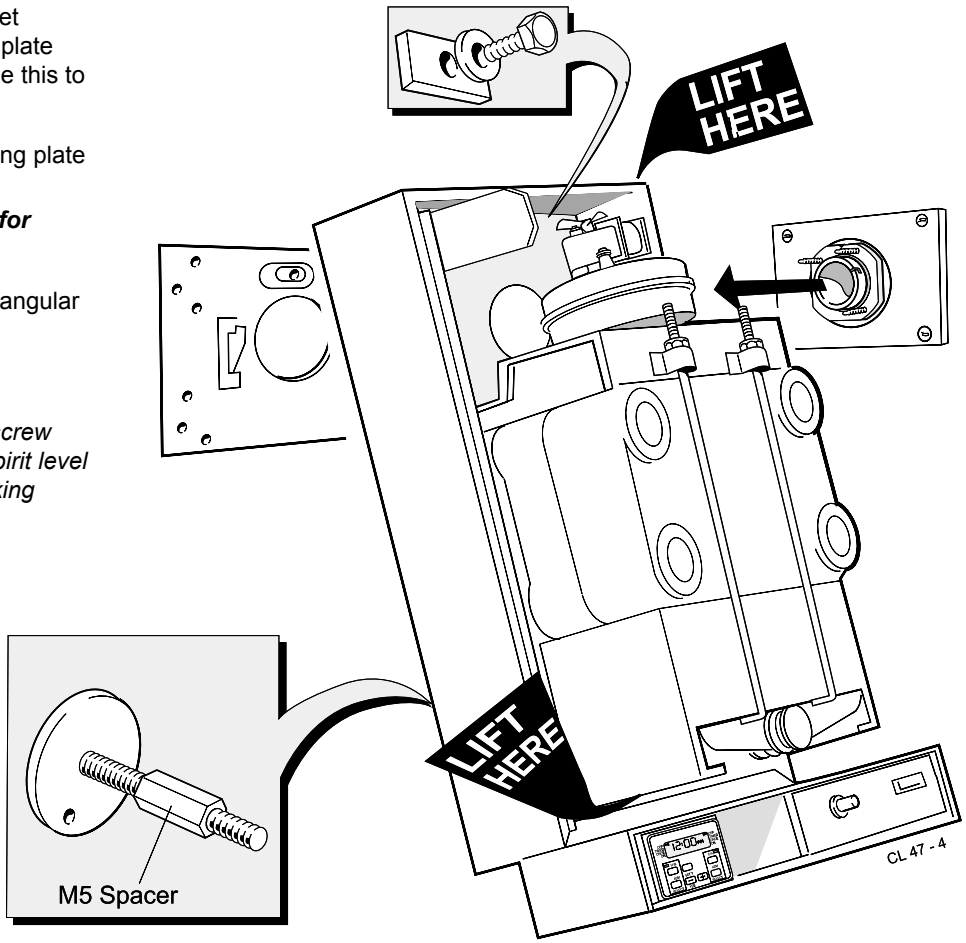
28 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Notes 1. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack.*
2. *For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner/controls for lifting.
3. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

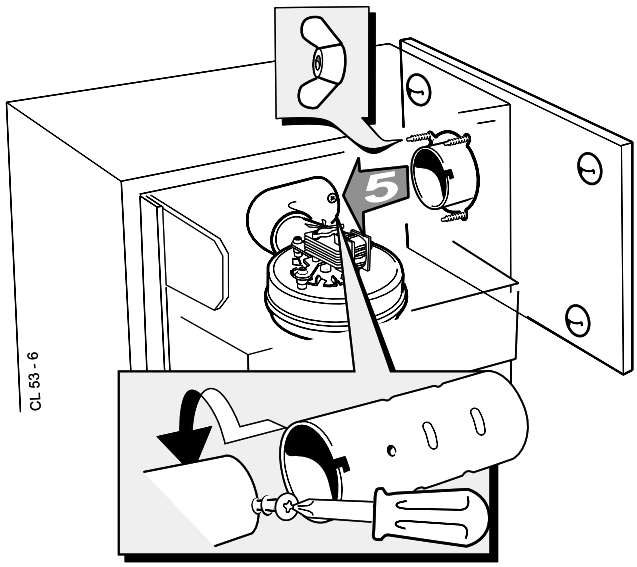
Note. *Before fully tightening the M8 screw check, the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



29 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

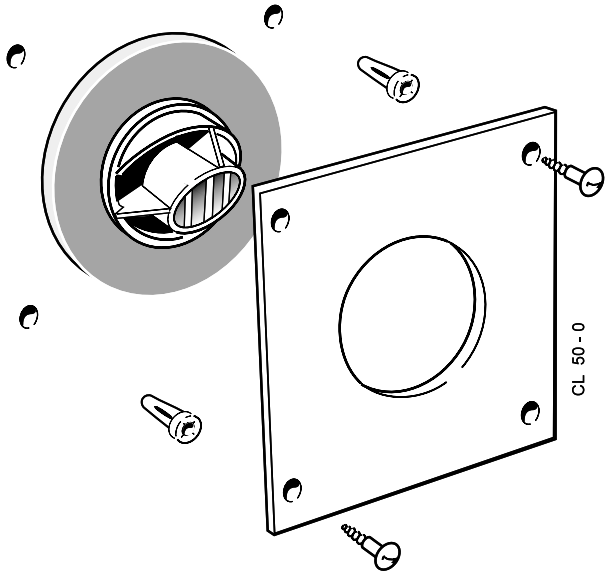


30 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

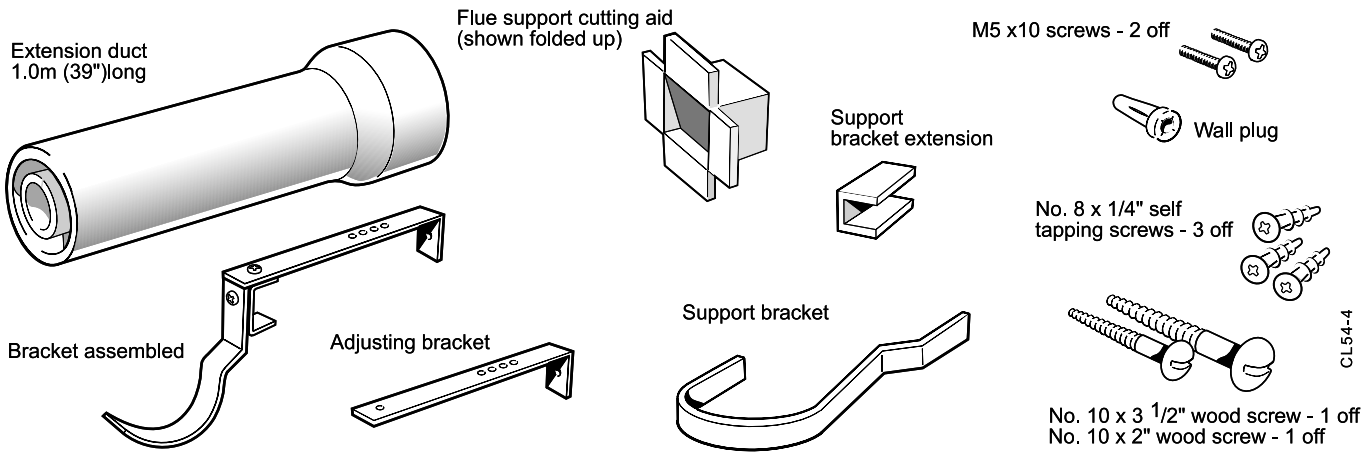
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 4.*



31 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents



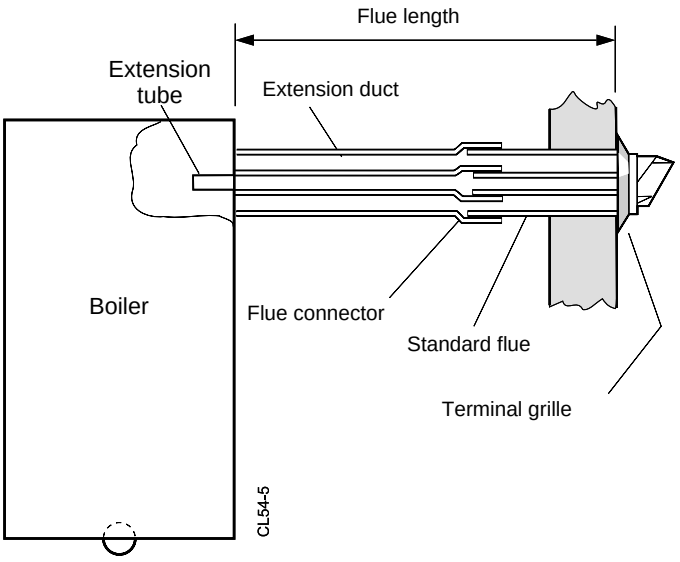
32 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

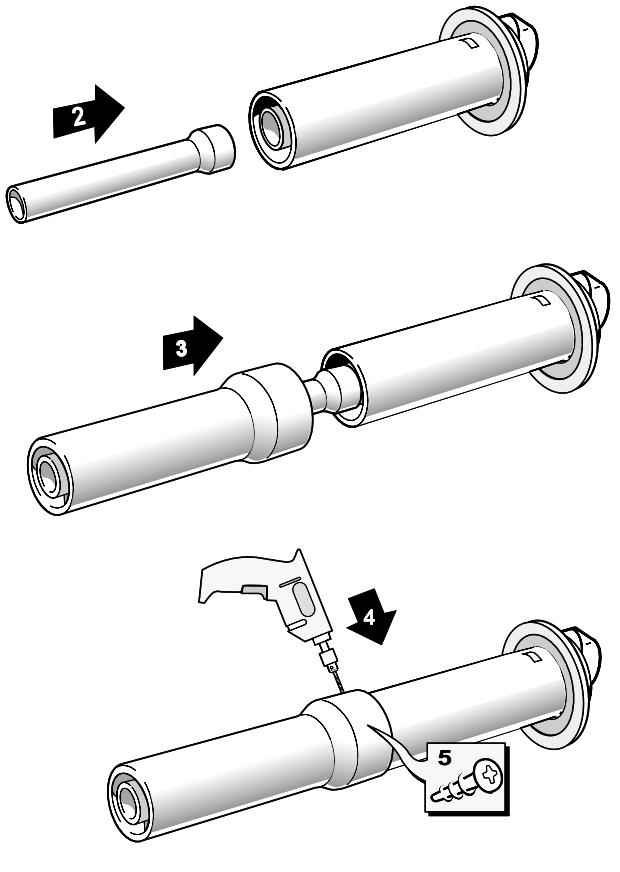
Note. *Side flue shown.*

1. A *maximum* of 3 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater length than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 8
600 to 1550	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	see Frame 8
1550 to 2500	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	see Frame 8
2500 to 3000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	see Frame 8



33 FITTING THE KIT



1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill 3 - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screws provided to fix the air duct in position.
6. Repeat steps 1-5 if a second flue extension is required.

34 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 7.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 37 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

35 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

36 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

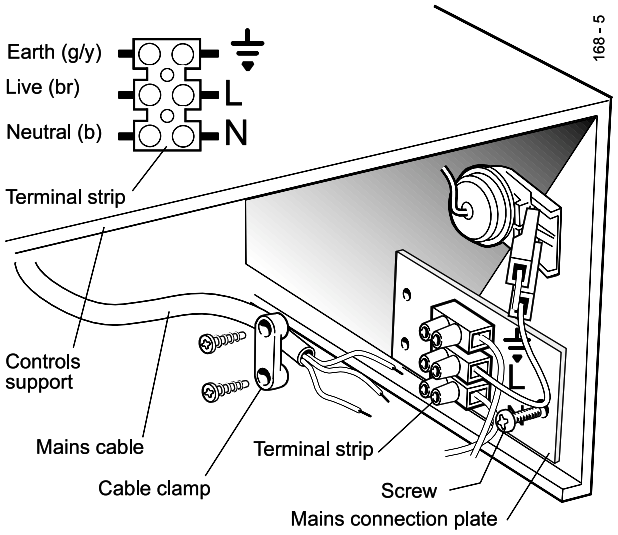
WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

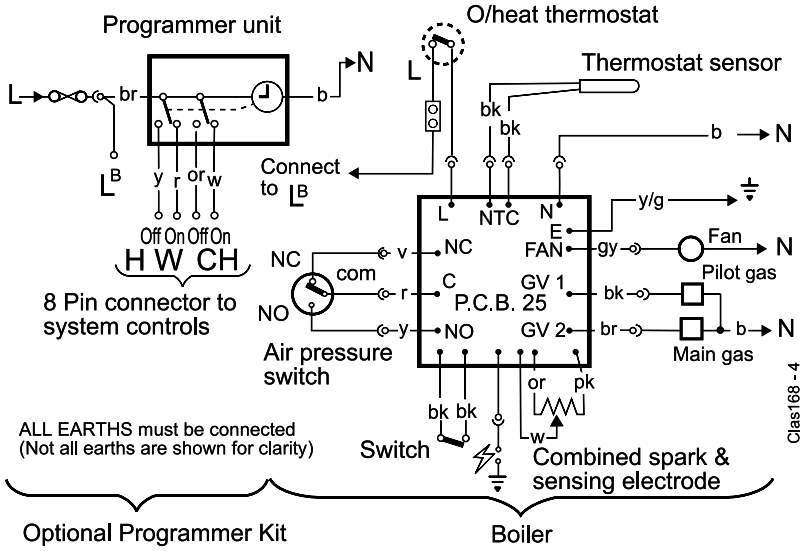
All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulating cable, not less than 0.75mm^2 (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible.

LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green



Flow wiring diagram



Note. *If the optional Programmer Kit is to be fitted refer to the instructions provided with the kit and Frame 37.*

1. Remove the control box securing screw (M4 pozi). Pull the box forward to disengage. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Route the mains cable through the grommet in the plate of the control box.
3. Remove the screw and release the mains connection plate. Unscrew the cable clamp screws and remove the clamp.
4. Connect the mains cable wires to the terminal strip.
5. Assemble in reverse order.
6. Replace the control box and fasten to the controls support.

37 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 39-41 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 39-41.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 41.
3. Controls that switch the circulation pump only on and off, e.g. a room thermostat, must be wired, in series, with the pump in the live pump lead.
4. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
5. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

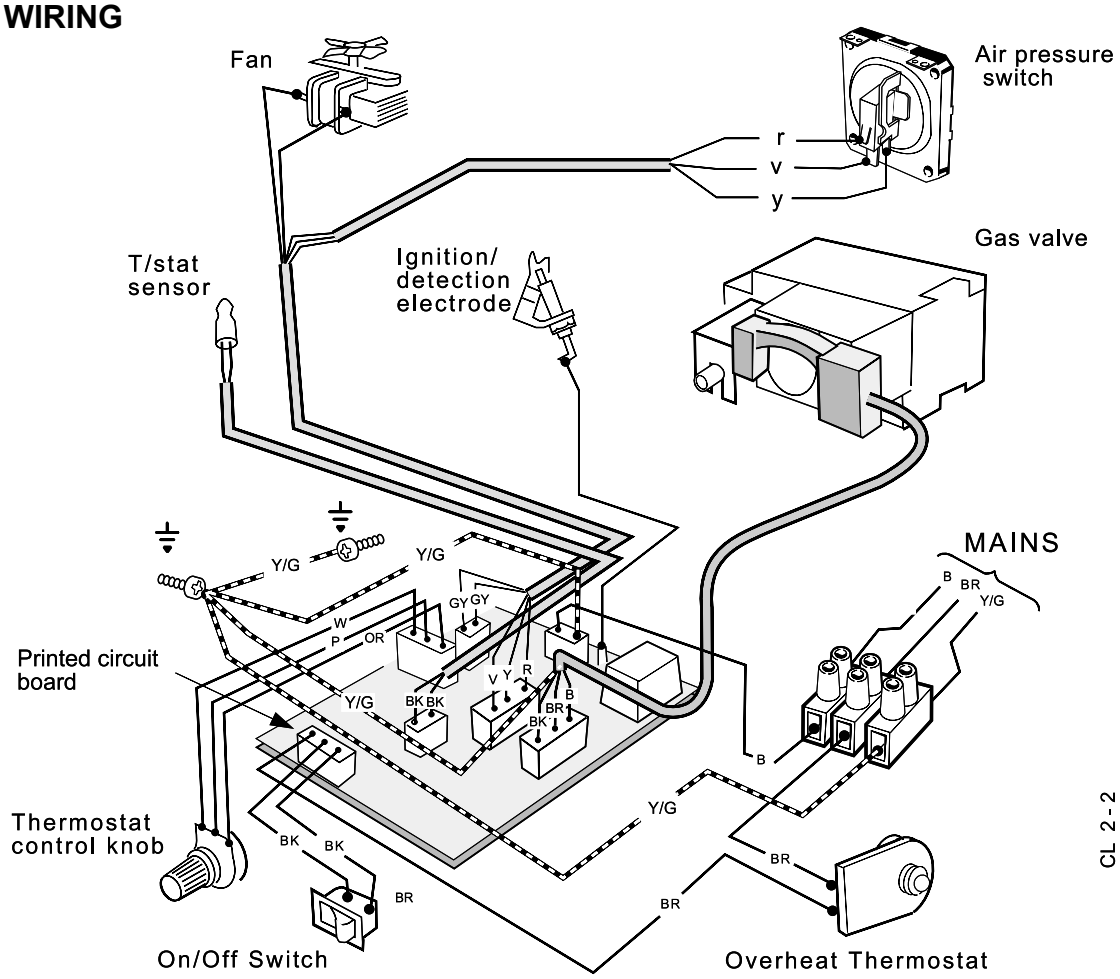
Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

38 PICTORIAL WIRING

LEGEND

gy grey
b blue
bk black
br brown
r red
y yellow
w white
y/g yellow/green
or orange
v violet
p pink



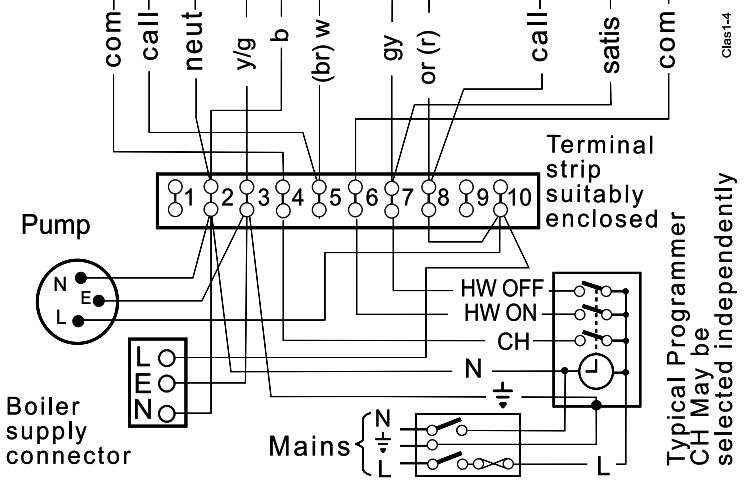
39 MID POSITION VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation, but the wiring differs slightly; see manufacturer's literature.*

	Room Thermostat Terminals			Mid Position valve details	Cylinder Thermostat Terminals		
	1	3	2	HONEYWELL Y PLAN V4073H 1039	1	2	c
TLX 2259 or2284	3	1	4	PEGLER 'Unishare' DT 1701 etc.	1	2	3
	1	2	4	LANDIS & GYR 'LGM' SK3 - LT2701	2	3	1
	1	3	-	A. C. L. 679. H. 340.30.UO	1 bk	2 y	3 r
RTE RTM/RTC	1 3	2 1	4 N	DRAYTON Flowshare 2	2	3	1
	1	3	4	SOPAC Centra Share ZV20 - EB MID	1	2	c
	2	1	4	DANFOSS DMV - 3M	n. c.	n. o.	com.
				SWITCHMASTER			



LEGEND

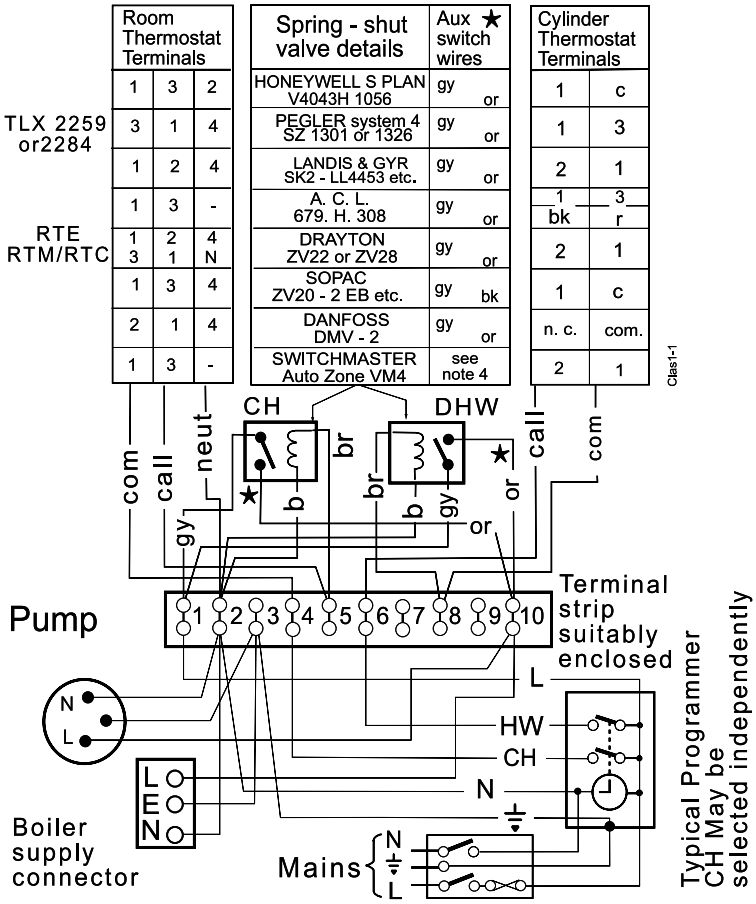
b blue
bk black
br brown
r red
w white
y/g yellow/green
or orange
gy grey

40 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

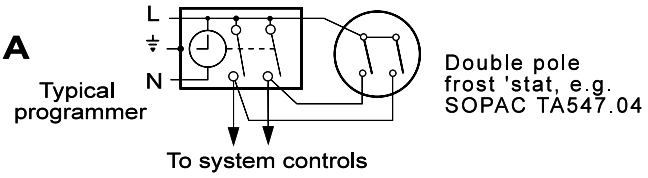
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey & orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

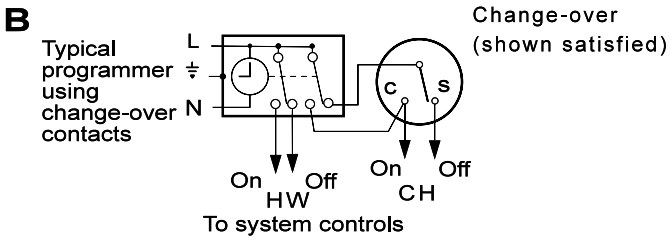


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**v**	violet
y	yellow	**pk**	pink
		gy	grey

41 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost 'thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost 'thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost 'thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

42 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

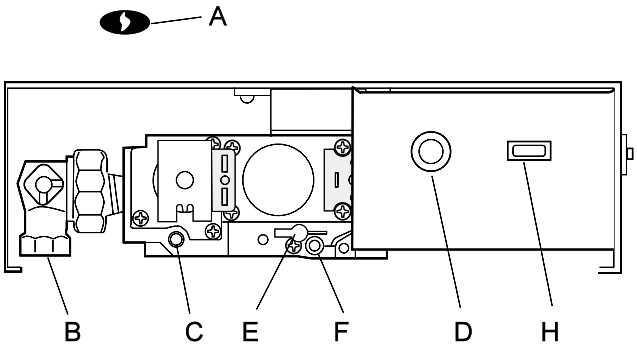
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

43 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

A Sightglass
B Gas service cock
C Inlet pressure test point
D Thermostat knob
E Main burner pressure adjuster
F Burner pressure test point
H Boiler mains on/off switch

TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains on/off switch is OFF.
3. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**

   Deluxe Model (LX) - Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down until it is flush with the assembly. Lift the glass fascia and pull the sliding catch out to retain the glass in the upper position. Secure with the 2 captive screws. To improve access to the gas valve, remove the controls casing bottom panel by removing its 2 retaining screws. Refer to Frame 44.

   Standard Model - The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls pod casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws. To improve access to the gas valve, remove the controls pod casing. Release the controls pod front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots. Refer to Frame 44.

   Note. Standard boiler only. *If the Sealed System Unit is fitted remove the unit casing in order to inspect the top casing seal.*

   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint.
   Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.

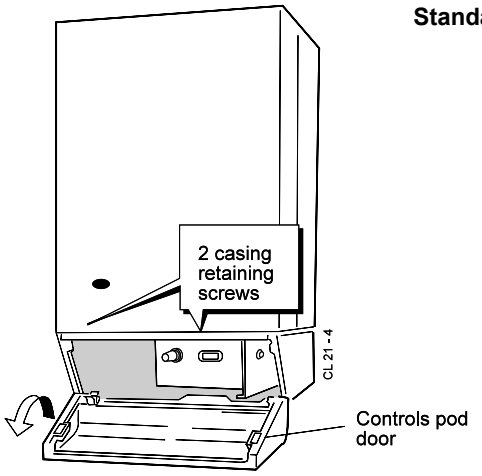
4. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
5. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
6. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position '6' and the boiler Mains on/off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
7. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
8. Operate the boiler for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
9. The boiler is pre-set at the factory to its nominal rating. Check the burner pressure against the values quoted in Table 2 (page 3). The inlet pressure measured at the gas control valve must be 37mb.
10. Set the boiler mains on/off switch it OFF.
11. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test point.
12. Turn ON and check for gas soundness at the pressure test point.
13. **Deluxe Model (LX)**
    Refit the controls casing bottom panel and screws.

    Standard Model
    Refit the controls pod and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.
14. **Deluxe Model (LX)**
    Lower the glass fascia to its closed position.

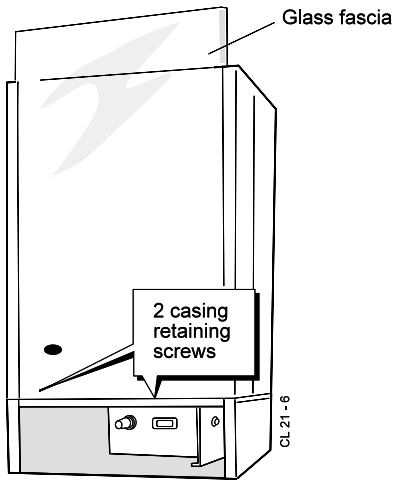
    Standard Model
    Close the pod door.

44 INITIAL LIGHTING - continued

Standard Model



Deluxe Model (LX)



45 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the Mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.
2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved. Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.
3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.
4. **Water Circulating System**
   - **a.** With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.
   - **b.** With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down in order to complete the flushing process.
   - **c.** Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.
   - **d.** Balance the system.
5. Finally set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations:

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING. The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

46 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations 1994, amendments 1996 or rules in force.
2. **Deluxe model (LX)** - Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls casing bottom panel.

   Standard Model - Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.
3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.
4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.

   Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.
5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.
6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and the local heating installer consulted.
7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.
8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted, then draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.
9. **After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the benchmark appliance log book and leave this with the customer.**
10. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a Corgi registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

47 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary. The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually . It is the law that any service work must be carried out by a CORGI registered installer.

a. Light the boiler and, using the flue sampling point (provided on the top RH side of the back panel) carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults.

b. Clean the main burner.

c. Clean the heat exchanger.

d. Clean the main and pilot injectors.

e. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

f. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

g. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 48 to 52 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING. Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed (Frame 48).*

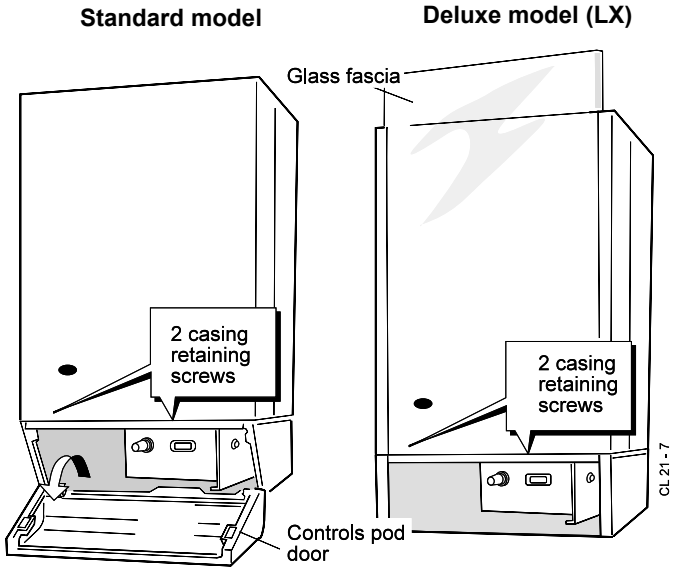
48 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

1. If the **Classic Sealed System Unit** is fitted (Standard boiler only), lift off the casing.

2. **Deluxe model (LX)** -Lift the glass fascia and pull the sliding catch out to retain the glass in the upper position. Release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the back panel. Retain the casing in a safe place.

Standard model - Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the back panel. Retain the casing in a safe place. Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 (page 6) should should be followed.

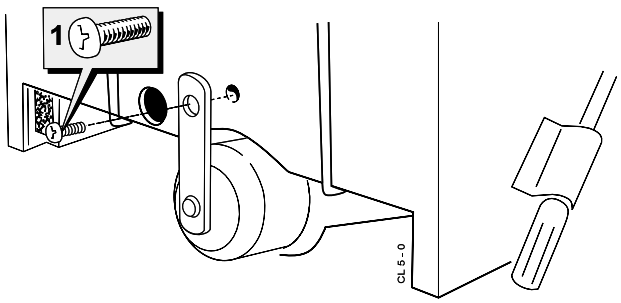
3. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



49 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

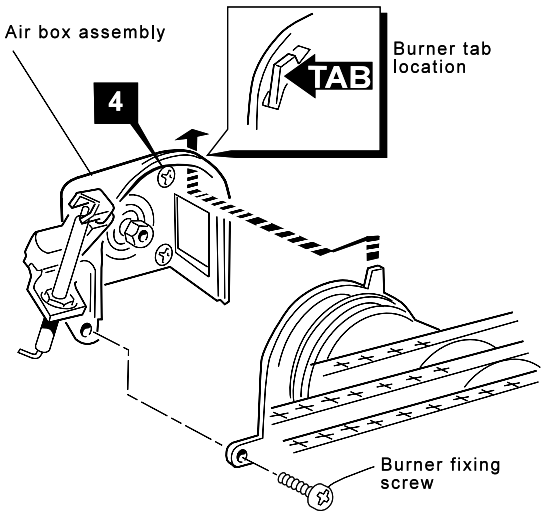
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support bracket to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.

2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.



3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the four screws retaining the air box /pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly



50 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
2. Disconnect the fan leads.

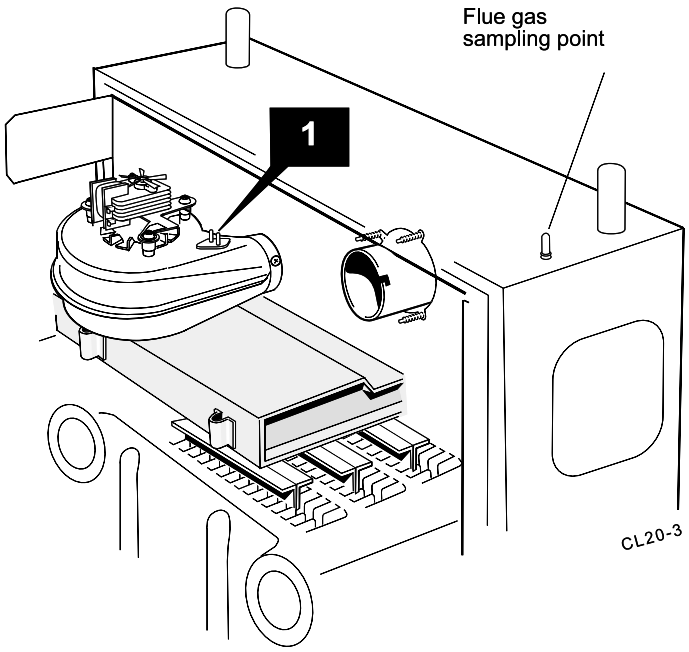
3a. Rear flue

Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side or top flue

Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.
7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.
8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.
10. Reassemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

51 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head, ensuring that the flame ports are unobstructed, and remove any debris that may have collected. **Note.** *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*
2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure that there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.
3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.
4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

- **a.** The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 58 for removal details.
- **b.** The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.
- **c.** The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.
- **d.** The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.
- **e.** The spark gap is correct (Frame 58). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

52 REASSEMBLY

Reassemble the boiler in the following order:

1. Refit the flue baffles.
2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally onto the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.
3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.
4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.
5. Refit the control box.
6. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 34 and 36.
7. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 55.
8. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock, and pressure test point.
9. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 43, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.
10. **Deluxe model (LX)** - Push the sliding catch in and lower the glass fascia to the closed position.

    Standard model - Close the controls pod door.

53 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 58) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 37 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting' - refer Frame 43.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

54 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.

2. Turn OFF the gas supply.

3. Remove the boiler casing - refer to Frame 48.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate spark operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

55 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

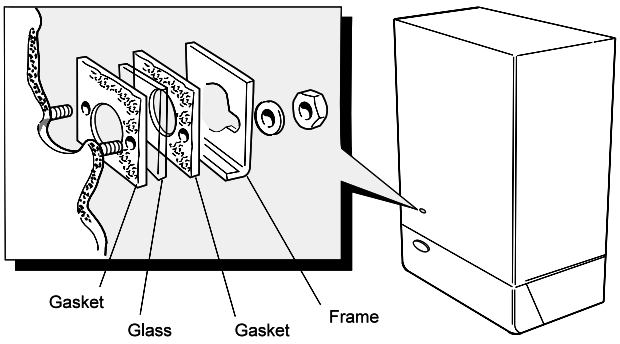
1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Unfasten the two nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.

3. When fixing the new assembly, ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.

4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.

6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 52.

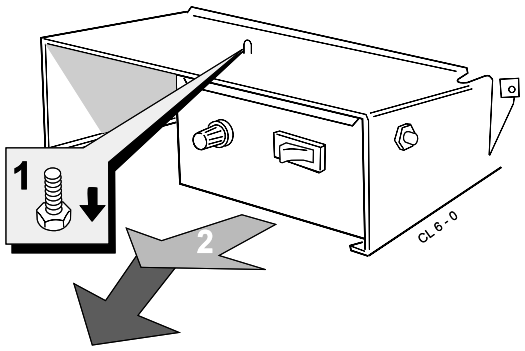


Note. *Standard model illustrated. For the deluxe model (LX) slide the glass fascia out before removing the sightglass assembly. Refit the glass fascia after refitting the new sightglass assembly.*

56 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

Refer to Frames 37, 54 & 70.

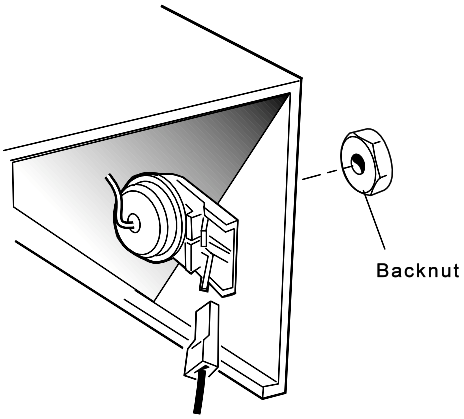
1. Remove the control box fixing screw.



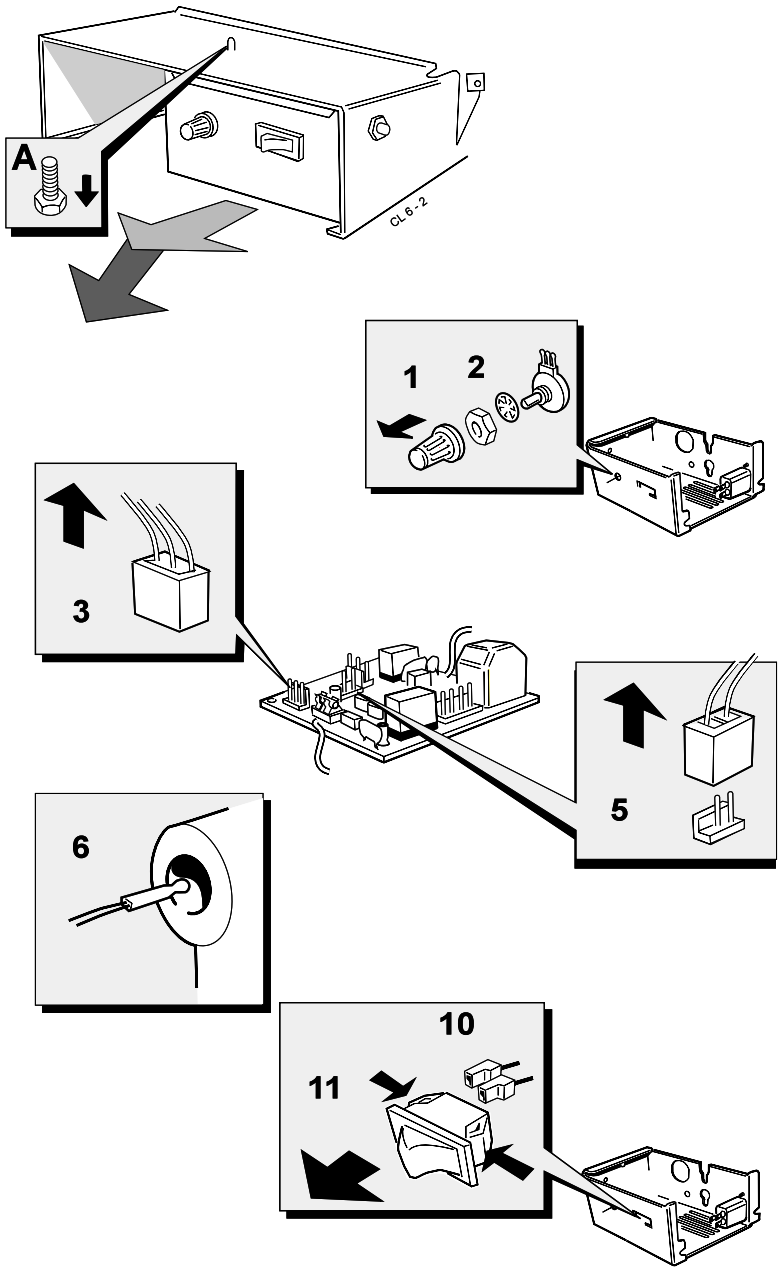
2. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. To remove the overheat thermostat pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Remove the thermostat from the heat exchanger pocket.

4. Reassemble in reverse order.



57 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD and ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT



Refer to Frame 54.

Remove the control box fixing screw (A). Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

Thermostat control

1. Pull the knob off the shaft.
2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.
3. Pull off the Molex connector from printed circuit board.
4. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

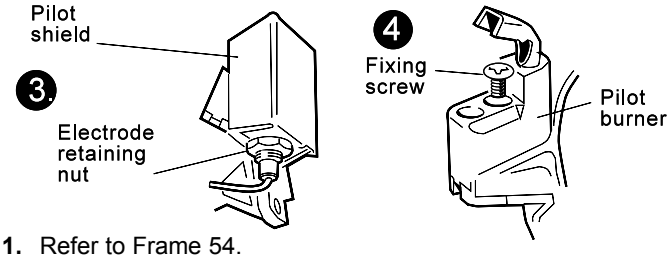
Thermistor sensor lead

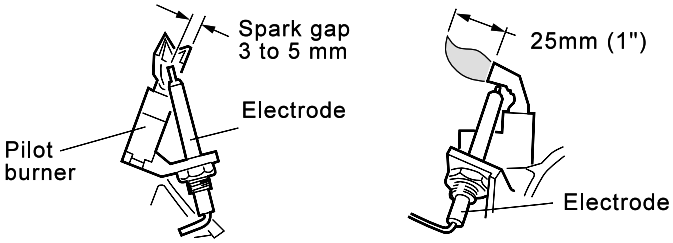
5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.
6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.
7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.
8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.
9. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

On/off switch

10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.
12. Reassemble in reverse order.

58 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT

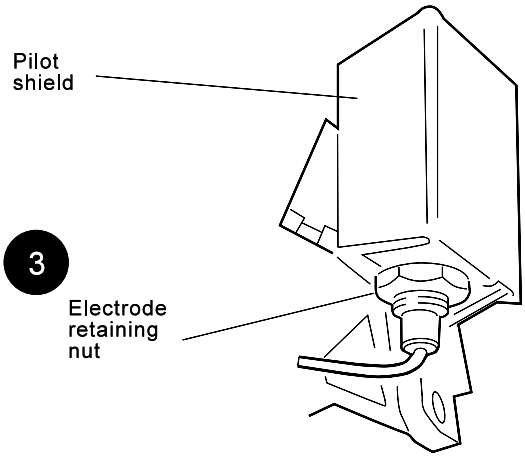




1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.
4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.
5. Replace the pilot burner and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.
6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.
7. Replace the box assembly.
8. Replace the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 37 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

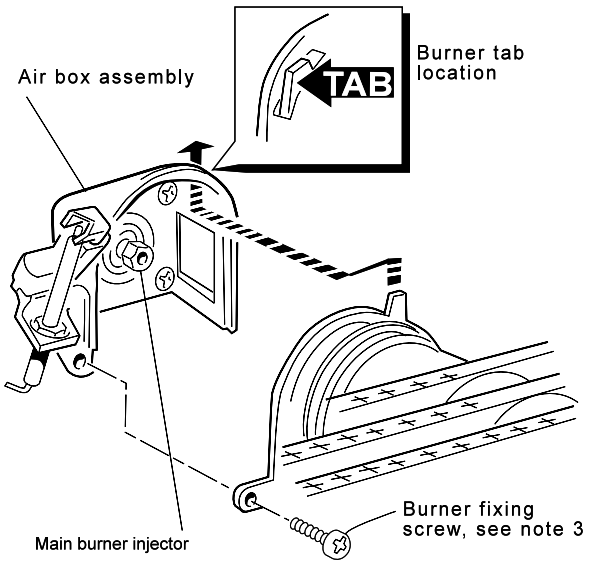
59 SPARK ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.
4. Remove the pilot shield.
5. Remove the spark electrode and integral lead.
6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.
7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 58.
8. Refit the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. Check the pilot ignition.



60 MAIN BURNER & MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.
3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.
4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that an approved jointing compound us used sparingly.
5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot.
6. Refit M5 retaining screw.
7. Refit the boiler casing.
8. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.



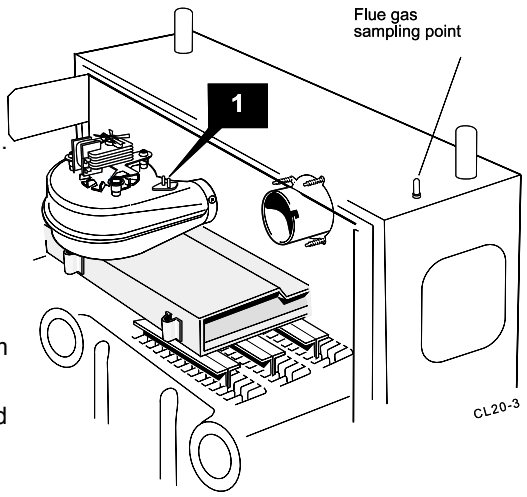
61 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

Note. *Also refer to Frame 69 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
4. Remove the gas control valve electrical connection.
5. Disconnect and remove the gas union from the gas control valve.
6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the two screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.
7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.
8. Remove the four screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new gas control valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on the back indicates the direction of flow) .

   Note. *Remove the gas cock stub and refit into the new gas control valve. Use an approved jointing compound on the pipe stub.*
9. Reassemble in reverse order.
10. Replace the boiler casing.
11. Check the gas valve operation.

62 FAN REPLACEMENT



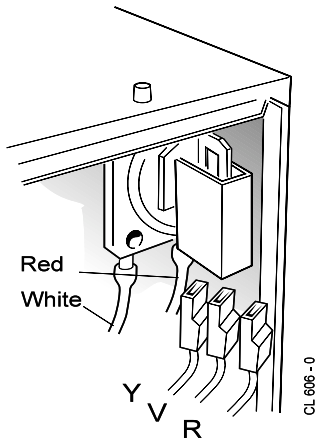
1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. **Rear flue.** Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. **Side or top flue.** Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove the collector hood / fan assembly.
7. Remove the three M4 screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.
8. Reassemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.
9. Refit the boiler casing.
10. Check the boiler operation.

63 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT



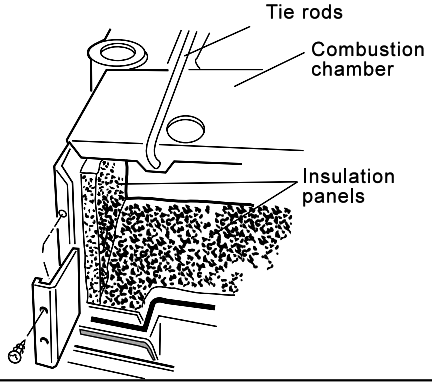
1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the APS fixing screw.
3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.
5. Connect the new APS in reverse order.
6. Refit the APS with the fixing screw.
7. Refit the boiler casing.
8. Check the boiler operation.

64 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frames 69 & 70 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
3. Remove the HT lead from the PCB
4. Remove the 6 push-in connectors from the PCB.
5. Remove the neutral wire on the PCB from its connection to the back of the socket inside the control box.
6. Remove the earth wire on the PCB from its connection to the earth stud inside the control box.
7. Remove the 2 connections from the on/off switch and remove the switch.
8. Compress the barbs on the PCB stand-offs to release the PCB from the box
9. Fit the new PCB and re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the correct orientation of the switch.
10. Refit the boiler casing.
11. Check the operation of the boiler.

65 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT



1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the 4 tie rods.
4. Remove the combustion chamber.
5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.
6. Remove the side insulation panels.
7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.
8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.
9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order.

66 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

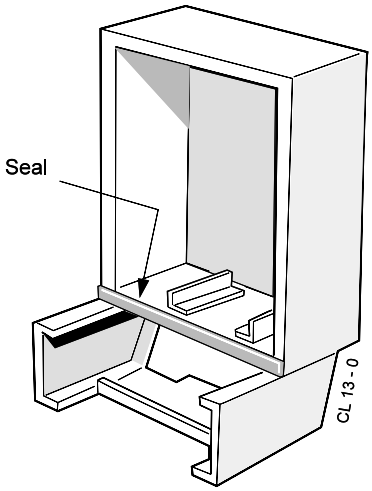
Note. *Refer to Frame 5 (Boiler Assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner /air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Drain the system.
4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings, in order to allow the heat exchange assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.
5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.
7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.
8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / interpanel retaining screws.
9. Lift the heat exchanger / interpanel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downward to clear the water pipes from the back panel.
10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.
11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.
12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.
13. Reassembly in reverse order.
14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.
15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

67 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

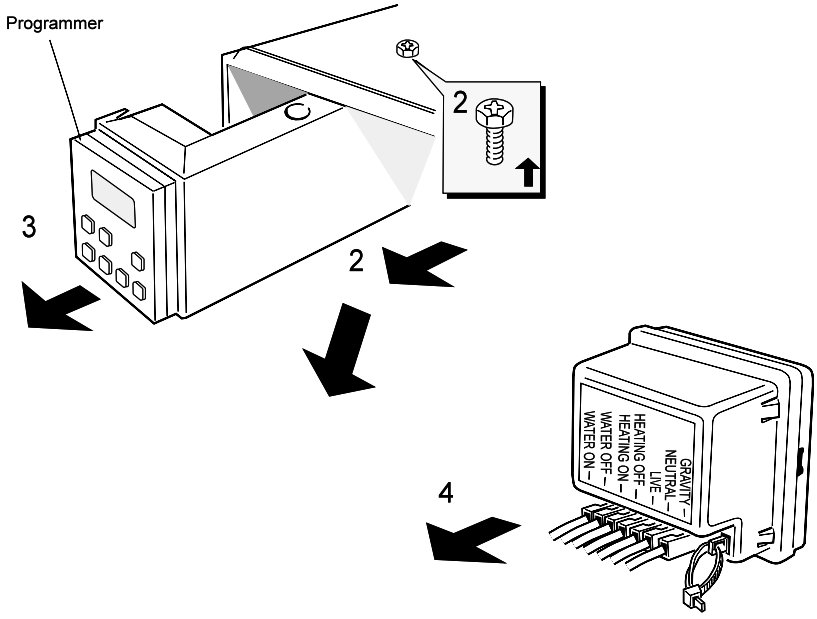
1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the old seal from the bottom edge of the casing and also from the edges of the boiler back panel.
3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.
4. Replace the boiler casing.

Note.
The standard model is illustrated. Use the same procedure for casing seal replacement on the deluxe model (LX)

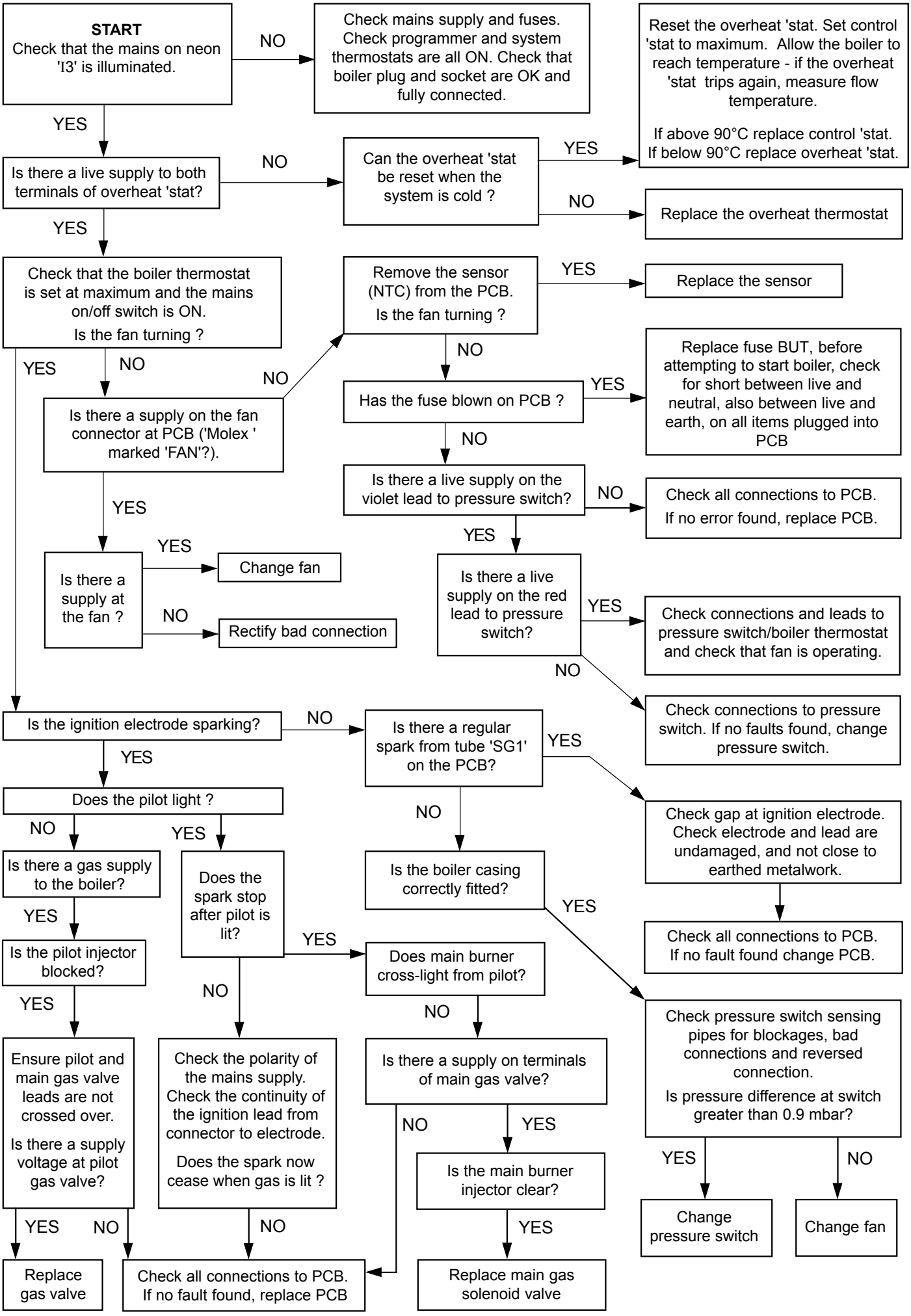


68 PROGRAMMER REPLACEMENT (IF FITTED)

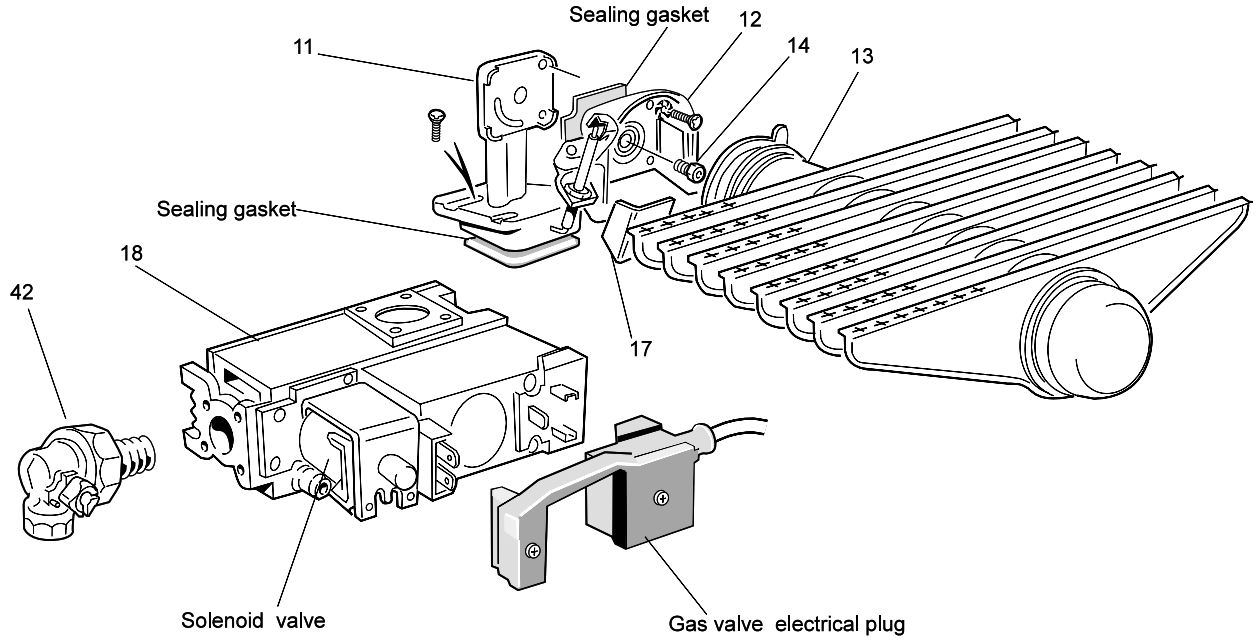
1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the programmer box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
3. Pull the programmer forward out of its box.
4. Pull off the terminal connections from back of programmer.
5. Fit the new programmer in reverse order.
6. Refit the boiler casing.
7. Set the programmer to the desired programme and check the operation of the boiler.



FAULT FINDING



69 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

(Numbers up to 56 relate to the B.G. spares list)

11. Burner manifold

12. Air box and pilot assembly.

13. Main burner.

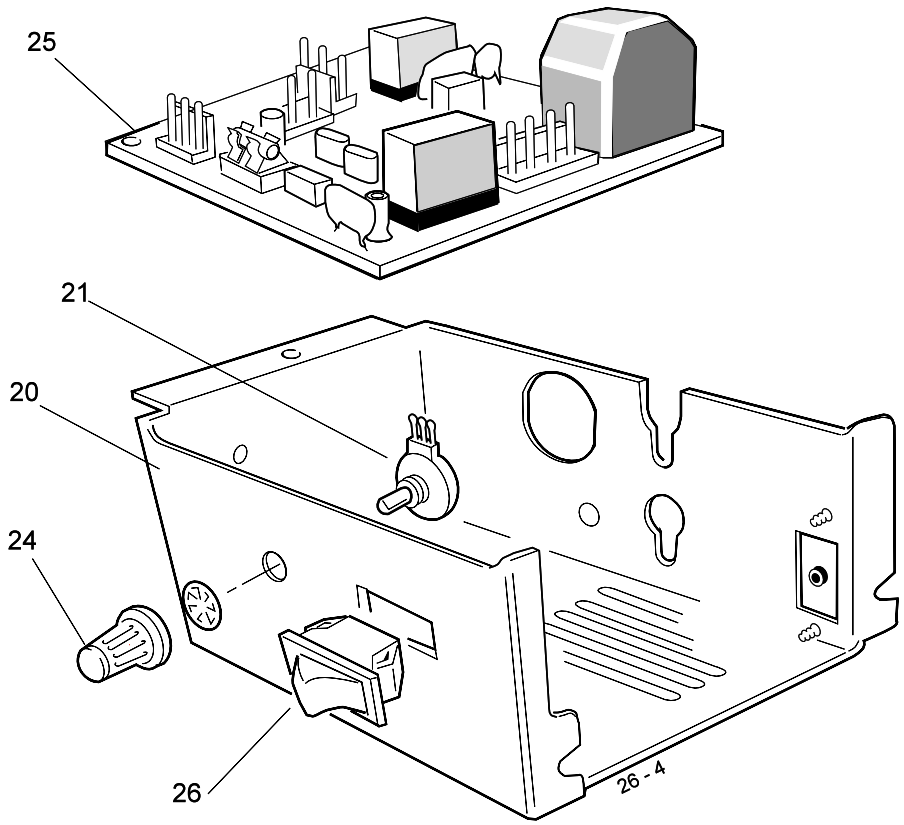
14. Main burner injector.

17. Pilot shield.

18. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

70 CONTROL BOX - Exploded view



LEGEND

(Numbers up to 56 relate to the B.G. spares list)

20. Control box.

21. Thermostat potentiometer.

24. Thermostat knob.

25. Printed circuit board.

26. Mains on/off switch.

SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

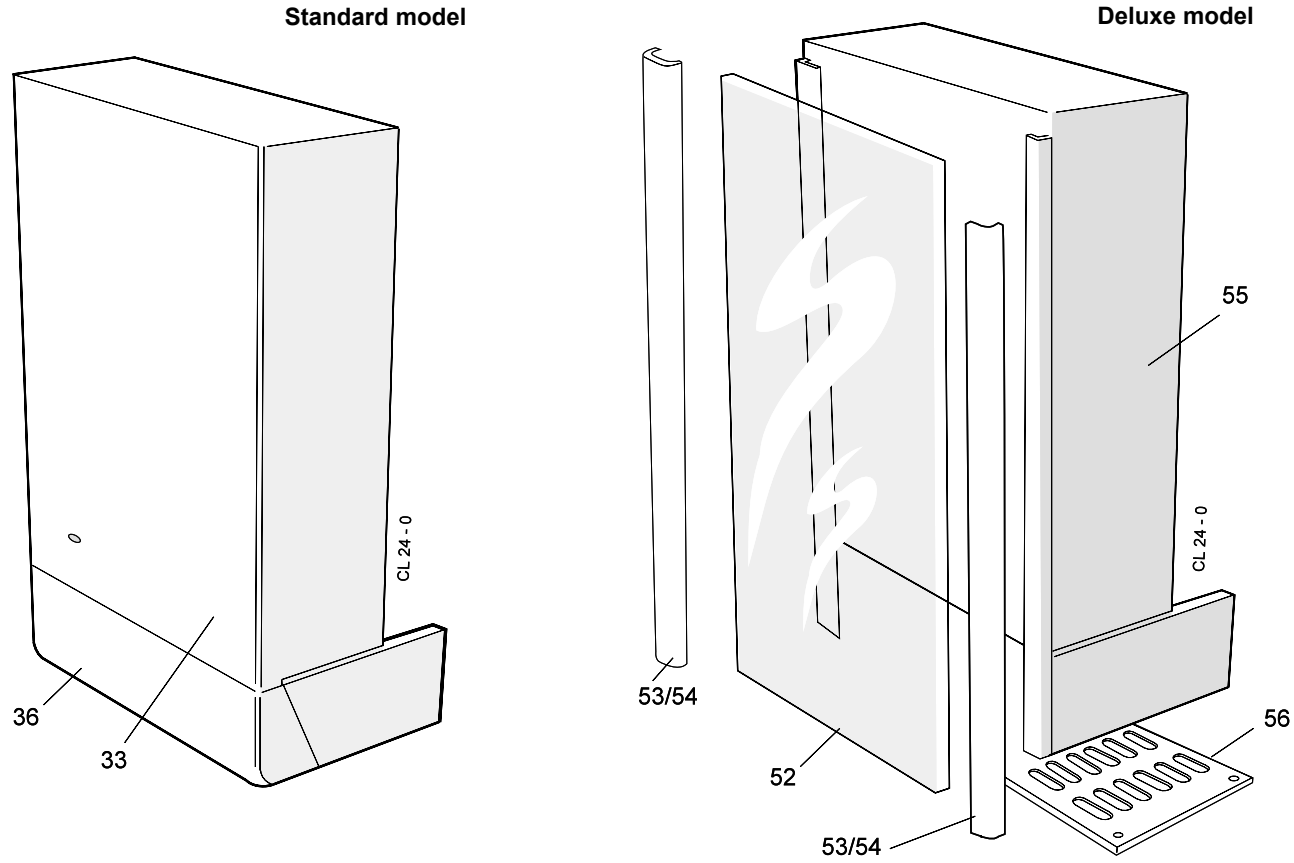
The full list is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

When ordering spares please quote:

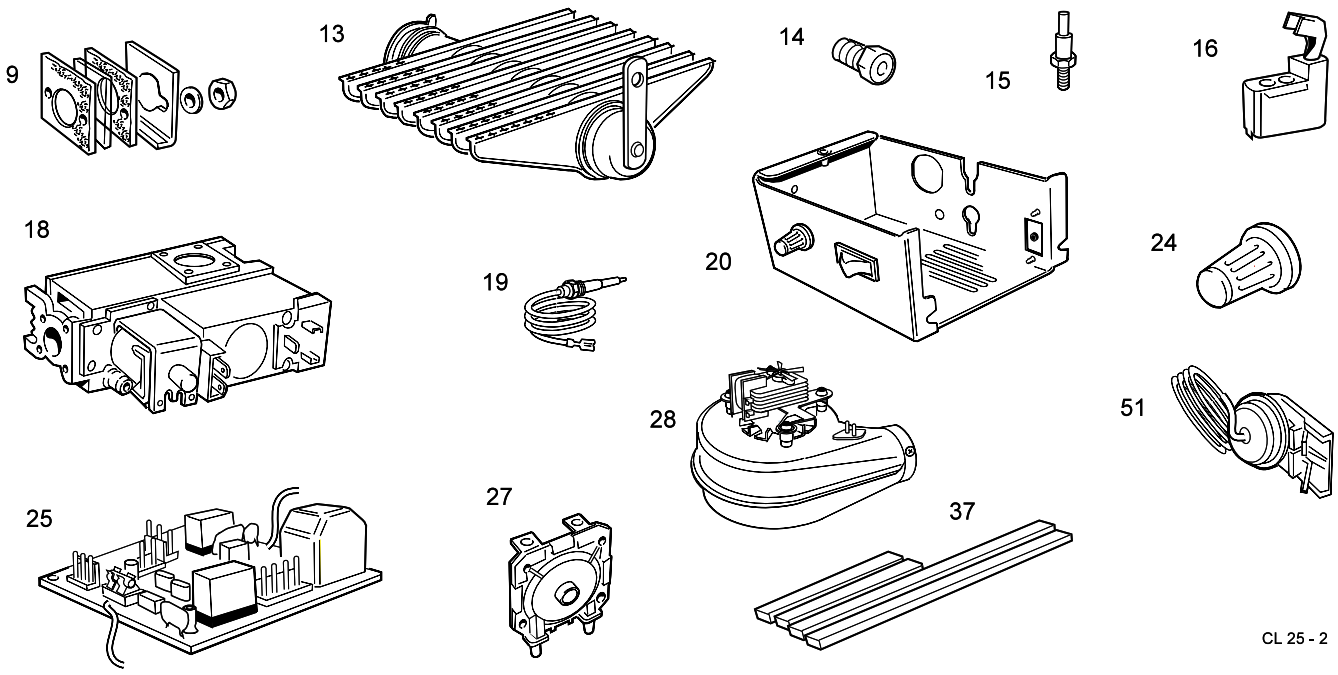
1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
13		Main burner		
	173 115	AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 296; FF 250 P & FF 260 P	1	112699
	173 116	AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 295; FF 275 P	1	112700
14		Main burner injector		
	389 612	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 520; FF 250 P		003 861
	389 540	BRAY Cat. 16 - size 600; FF 260 P	1	112 701
	398 043	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 800; FF 275 P	1	004 858
15	397 925	Pilot burner injector: Propane 459 00421-003 (stamped 20/23P)	1	005 018
16	173 117	Pilot burner head with injector: Propane	1	079 625
18	379 921	Gas control valve HONEYWELL VR 4601 EA, 230 V	1	111 074
19	308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm long	1	111 881
20	E02 653	Controls box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	151 252
24	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
25	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board PACTROL PCB No. 25 B	1	079716
27	385 861	Pressure switch assembly: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 A 1010	1	111 379
28	E02 661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No. WFFB 0221-039	1	151 586
33		Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation and M5 x 16 dogpoint pozipan head screws (Standard model only)	1	075 391
36	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instr. (Standard models only)	1	079 941
37		Casing sealing pack complete with screws	1	075 392
51	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 - P8508	1	113 200
52	308 622	Glass fascia FF (Deluxe model only)	1	112 734
53	308 624	Plastic fascia trim FF (Deluxe model only) - beige	2	138 249
54	308 623	Plastic fascia trim FF (Deluxe model only) - white	2	138 405
55	-	Boiler casing assembly - white stove enamel with sightglass and foil insulation (Deluxe model only)	1	075 393
56	-	Controls casing bottom panel	1	138 267

71 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY



72 SHORT PARTS LIST



benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

THIS SYMBOL IS YOUR ASSURANCE OF QUALITY

These appliances are designed for use with Propane Gas only. They have been tested and conform with the provisions of BS. 6332 and BS. 5258.

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01270 413 624*

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

CE

LXFF.87/AQ/220
LXRS.87/AQ/221
FF.87/AP/107
RS.87/AP/108

Propane Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

Caradon Plumbing Limited, P.O. Box 103, National Ave, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137. Registered Office: National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. *A subsidiary of Caradon p.l.c.*

Caradon Plumbing Limited pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

November 1999 UIN 112 558 A10

BOILERS Ideal

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

YOUR FEEDBACK

and your chance to win a free boiler

At Ideal we've been leaders in the design and engineering of robust and reliable boilers for over 90 years. We want to continue as leaders by listening to your suggestions for how to improve our boilers and our service. We will be giving away a free boiler for the five best ideas every year (to be selected by our Technical Director). Please complete this form, using extra sheets if required, and post it or fax it to us on 01482 498699.

Boiler details

Model / Size *(e.g. Classic RS 230, Mexico CF 3/60 etc. Details on control panel door)*

Date of Installation

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

How I would improve this boiler:

My general comments for Ideal:

Caradon Plumbing Solutions

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

Further information

If you would like information about Ideal Boilers please complete this sheet and fax it to us on 01482 498699 or post it to Caradon Plumbing Ltd, PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN.

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

General information required

- ☐ *Please send me details of Ideal Training Courses.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for a technical representative to contact me.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for me to join an Ideal factory tour.*

Range guides required

- ☐ *The Ideal Guide: a specifier's and installer's introduction to the Ideal domestic boiler range.*
- ☐ *The Ideal Householders Guide: to assist the installer when presenting to his/her customers.*

Technical manuals required

- ☐ *The Ideal C class combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic System wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic LX Deluxe wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Mexico floor standing boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Minimiser heat-saving boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Rapide combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response combi. boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response SE super efficiency combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Systemiser SE super efficiency system boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Concord high output boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Buccaneer oil fired boiler*

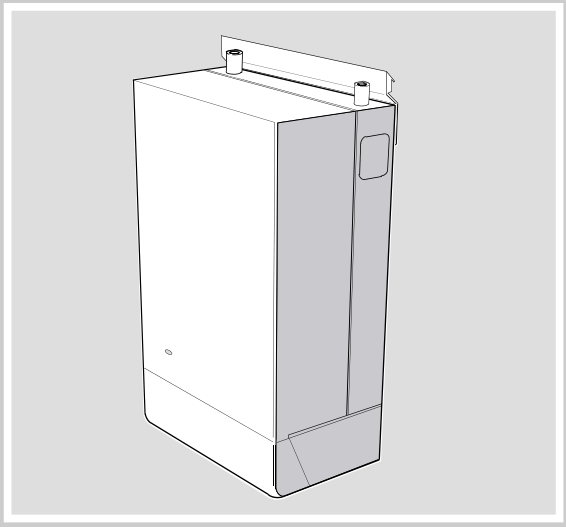
Caradon
Plumbing Solutions

Cardon Plumbing Ltd., PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492251 Fax: 01482 448858.

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

U.I.N. 112 558 A0

THE IDEAL INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



Classic Slimline

the wall hung boiler

Wall hung, fanned flue, gas fired boiler

FF 230 - 260

Ideal BOILERS

Installers guide to central heating boilers

Classic Slimline FF

Data Badge: on top of the controls support

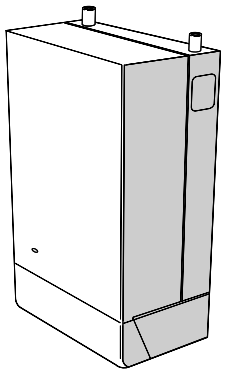
B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 BL 43

Destination Countries: GB and IE

Natural Gas only

Appliance type: C_{12}

Slimline models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 230	41 387 74
Classic FF 240	41 387 75
Classic FF 250	41 387 76
Classic FF 260	41 387 77



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} = A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is down stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{2H} = An appliance designed for use on 2nd Family gas, Group H only.

CONTENTS

Air Supply 6

Boiler Clearances 5

Boiler Exploded View 10

Burner Exploded View 35

Control Box Exploded View 35

Electrical Connections 21

Electrical Regulations 7

Extension Ducts - Fitting 19

External Control 21

Fault Finding 33

Flue Installation 6
- **Rear installation** 13
- **Side installation** 16

Gas Safety 4

Gas Supply 6

Initial Lighting 24

Installation 10

Mandatory Requirements 4

Pump 8

Servicing 26

Short List of Parts 34

Spares Replacement 28

System Diagrams 22

Terminal Guards 6

Water and Systems 7

Water Treatment 7

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260
Gas supply connection		(in. BSP)	Rc 1/2 (1/2) 1/2" (BSP Female)			
Flow connection			22mm copper			
Return connection			22mm copper			
Maximum static water head		m (ft.)	30.5 (100)			
Minimum static water head		m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)			
Electrical supply			230 V 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W			
Fuse rating			External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265			
Water content		litre (gal.)	2.7 (0.6)		3.65 (0.8)	
Dry Weight		kg (lb)	40.9 (90.3)		46.6 (102.8)	
Maximum installation weight		kg (lb) 31.4 (69.3)	37.4 (82.5)			
Boiler size	Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)			
	Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)			
	Depth	mm (in.)	280 (11.0)			
Flue duct diameter		mm (in.)	100 (4.0)			
Flue duct length (max)		m (ft)	1.0 (3.3)			

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260
Boiler input (Gross)	MINIMUM	kW	5.6	11.3	15.0	18.5
		Btu/h x 1000	19.1	38.5	51.2	63.3
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.15	0.29	0.38	0.49
		ft^3/h	19.4	37.1	48.7	62.9
	MID	kW	8.3	13.0	16.7	20.3
		Btu/h x 1000	28.5	44.3	56.85	69.2
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.22	0.34	0.43	0.53
		ft^3/h	28.1	42.7	54.5	67.6
	MAXIMUM	kW	11.0	14.7	18.3	22.0
		Btu/h x 1000	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.28	0.38	0.47	0.57
		ft^3/h	36.1	48.2	60.2	72.3
Boiler output	MINIMUM	kW	4.4	8.8	11.7	14.7
		Btu/h x 1000	15	30	40	50
	MID	kW	6.6	10.3	13.2	16.1
		Btu/h x 1000	22.5	35	45	55
	MAXIMUM	kW	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6
		Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60
Burner Setting pressure (HOT)	MINIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	3.3 (1.3)	6.6 (2.6)	8.8(3.5)	10.0 (4.0)
	MID	mbar (in.w.g.)	7.4 (2.9)	9.2 (3.7)	11.5 (4.6)	12.3 (4.9)
	MAXIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	13.1 (5.2)	11.7 (4.7)	13.8 (5.5)	14.4 (5.8)
Seasonal Efficiency (SEDBUK) *			[76.2]%	[75.8]%	[76.2]%	[76.7]%

* The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings. The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BG plc 0087.

Note. *Gas consumption is calculated using a calorific value of 38.7 MJ/m^3 (1038 Btu/ft^3) gross or 34.9 MJ/m^3 (935 Btu/ft^3) nett*

To obtain the gas consumption at a different calorific value:-

a. ***FOR L/S*** *- divide the gross heat input (kW) by the gross C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)*

b. ***FOR FT^3/H*** *- divide the gross heat input (Btu/h) by the gross C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)*

INTRODUCTION

The Classic Slimline FF230-260 is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

Note. *These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation.* If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Extension duct - up to 1m (39").

CURRENT GAS SAFETY (INSTALLATION AND USE) REGULATIONS OR RULES IN FORCE.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer (identified by ❀) in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority.

Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.6891 Low pressure installation pipes.

BS.6798 Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5449 Forced circulation hot water systems.

BS.5546 Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd Family Gases).

BS.7593 Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

BS.5440.1 Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5440.2 Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

Health & Safety Document No. 635

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the BG Technolgy Certification Services for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances -unless covered by these Installation and Servicing instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

SAFE HANDLING OF SUBSTANCES

Care should be taken when handling the boiler insulation panels, which can cause irritation to the skin. No asbestos, mercury or CFCs are included in any part of the boiler.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

Timber Framed Buildings

If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IGE/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

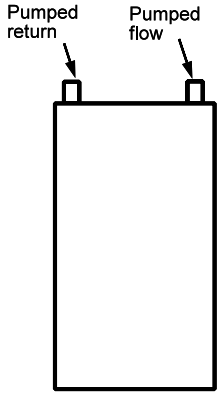
The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland, the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower.

.....continued on page 6.

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS

This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.



2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing.

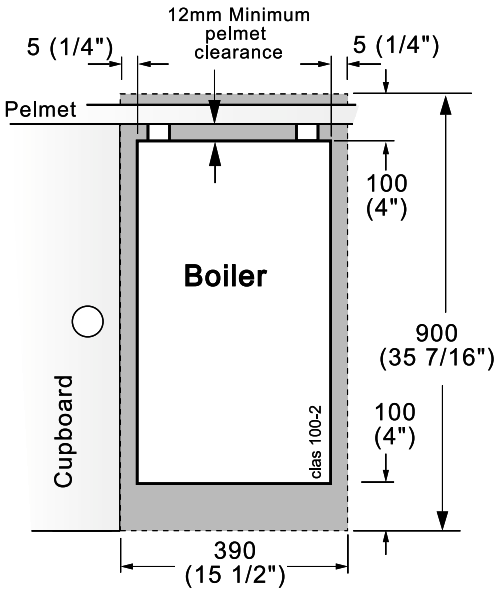
Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

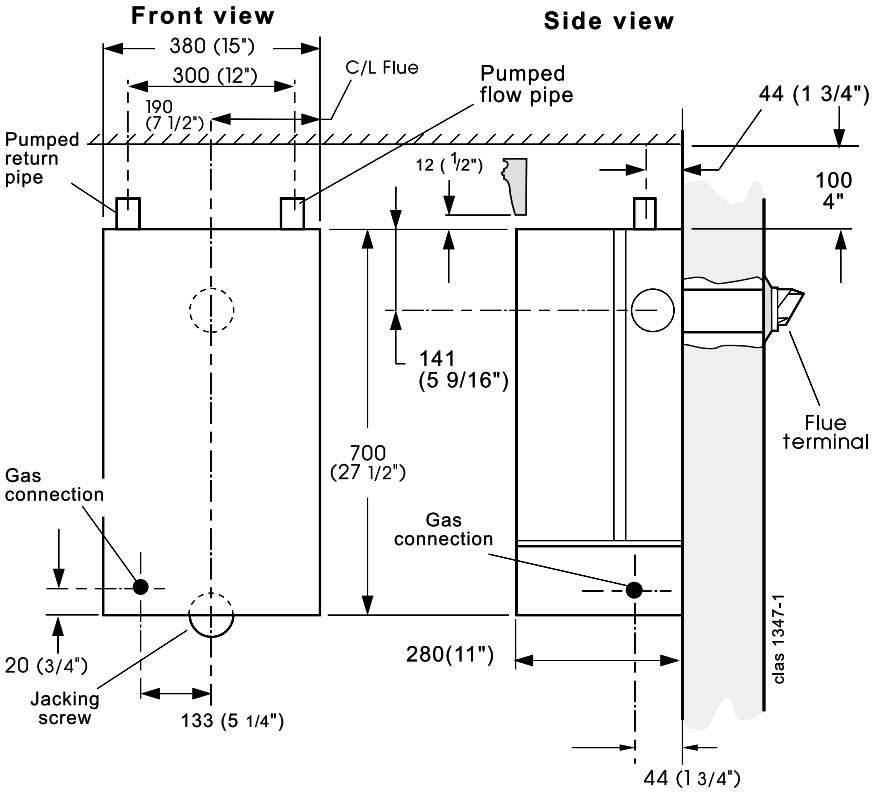
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.





Front clearance: 533mm (21") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built behind a concealing panel is 5mm (1/4") provided that the top and bottom of the casing are *NOT* enclosed.

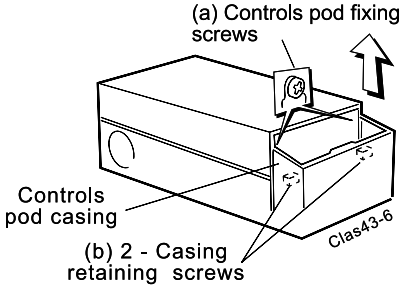
Pelmet restrictions.

If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.



Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler MUST be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler. Refer to 'Air Supply'.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service refer to Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

The local gas supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas. An existing service pipe must NOT be used without prior consultation with the local gas supplier.

The boiler is to be installed only on gas supply with a governed meter.

A gas meter can only be connected by the local gas supplier or by a local regional contractor.

An existing meter should be checked, preferably by the gas supplier, to ensure that the meter is adequate to deal with the rate of gas supply required. A MINIMUM pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating.

Installation pipes MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 6891. Pipework from the meter to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance:-

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard. The minimum spacing in Table 3, Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 75mm in order to allow a terminal guard to be fitted.

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
3. Below eaves	25 mm (1")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	25 mm (1")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
6. From internal or external corners	25 mm (1")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers - ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

7. Where it is essential that the terminal wall plate is fitted, i.e. wall thicknesses over 600mm (23 1/2") or with an inaccurately cut hole, the minimum spacing in Table 3 Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 60mm (2 1/2") in order to allow the terminal wall plate to be fitted.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses. Refer to Frame 10.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space, cm (in²)		Air direct from outside, cm (in²)	
FF 230	102	(16)	51	(8)
FF 240	135	(21)	68	(11)
FF 250	170	(26)	83	(13)
FF 260	198	(31)	102	(16)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS.6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

Boilers not fitted to a sealed system must be vented.

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug, which is provided, to drain the BOILER ONLY, in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistance of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.

Maximum boiler operating temperature should be 82°C (180°F).

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size	FF	230	240	250	260
Boiler Output	kW	8.8	11.7	14.6	17.6
	Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60
Water Flow Rate	l/min	11.4	15.2	19.0	22.8
	gal/h	150	200	250	300
Pressure Loss	mbar	22.0	20.4	31.5	41.7
	in wg	8.9	8.3	12.6	16.7

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-
Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd, Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel. 0870 5601 5000 or
Betz Dearborn Ltd, Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

IMPORTANT. Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators, or two port valves without end switches, then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

This appliance must be efficiently earthed.

Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower. See Frame 38 for details.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

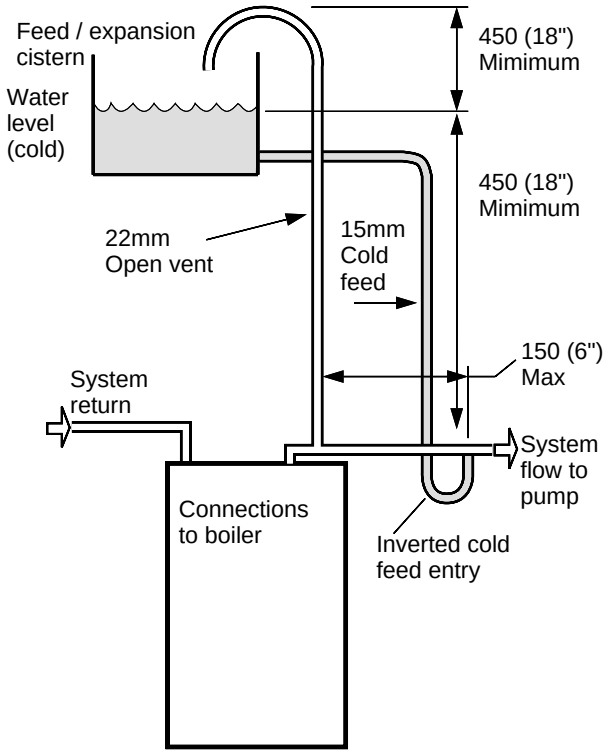
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") - of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grundfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note. *A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (refer to BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.*



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

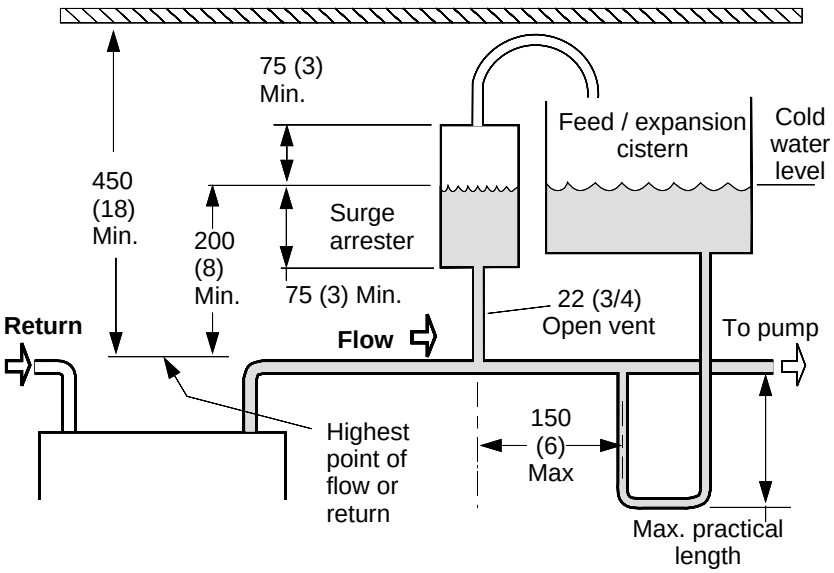
The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.
2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.
3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with*

Minimum Requirements

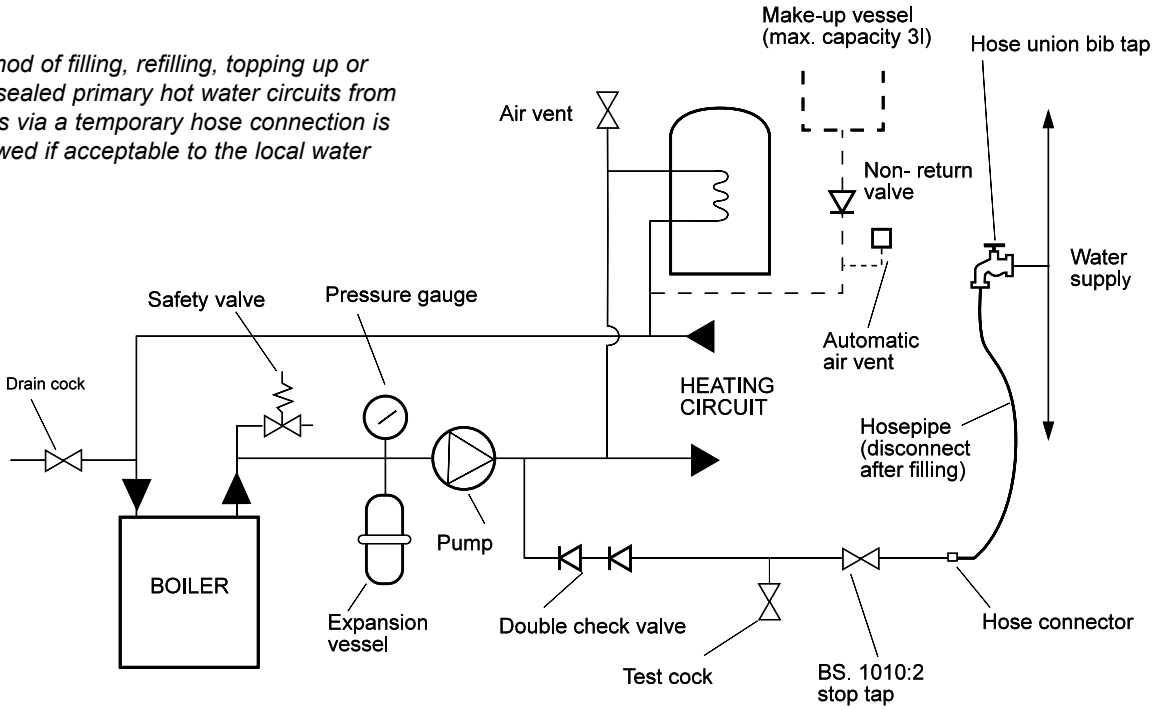


All dimensions in mm (in.). **N.B.** Imperial dimensions are approximate

5 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Note.

The method of filling, refilling, topping up or flushing sealed primary hot water circuits from the mains via a temporary hose connection is only allowed if acceptable to the local water authority.



1. General

a. The installation must comply with the requirements of BS 6798 and BS 5449.

b. The installation should be designed to work with flow temperatures of up to 82°C.

c. All components of the system, including the heat exchanger of the indirect cylinder, must be suitable for a working pressure of 3 bar (45lb/in^2) and temperature of 110°C. Care should be taken in making all connections so that the risk of leakage is minimised.

2. Cylinder

The cylinder must be either of the indirect coil type or a direct cylinder fitted with an immersion calorifier which is suitable for operating on a gauge pressure of 0.35 bar (5 lb/in^2) in excess of the safety valve setting. Single feed indirect cylinders are not suitable for sealed systems.

3. Make-up Water

Provision must be made for replacing water loss from the system, either:

a. From a manually fitted make-up vessel with a readily visible water level. The vessel should be mounted at least 150 mm (6") above the highest point of the system and be connected through a non-return valve to the system, fitted at least 300 mm (12") below the make-up vessel on the return side of the domestic hot water cylinder or radiators.

b. Where access to a make-up vessel would be difficult, by pre-pressurisation of the system. Refer to 'Filling'.

4. Mains Connection

There must be no direct connection to the mains water supply or to the water storage tank supplying domestic water, even through a non-return valve, without the approval of the local water authority.

5. Filling

The system may be filled by one of the following methods:

a. Through a cistern, used for no other purposes, via a ball valve permanently connected directly to a service pipe and/or a cold water distributing pipe. The static head available from the cistern should be adequate to provide the desired initial system design pressure. The cold feed pipe from the cistern should include a non-return valve and a stop valve with an automatic air vent connected between them, the stop valve being located between the system and the automatic air vent. The stop valve may remain open during normal operation of the system if automatic water make-up is required.

b. Through a self-contained unit comprising a cistern, pressure booster pump (if required) and, if necessary, an automatic pressure reducing valve and flow restrictor. The cistern should be supplied through a temporary connection from a service pipe or cold water distributing pipe.

This unit may remain permanently connected to the heating system to provide limited automatic water make-up. Where the temporary connection is supplied from a service pipe or distributing pipe which also supplies other draw-off points at a lower level, then a double-check valve shall be installed upstream of the draw-off point.

c. Through a temporary hose connection from a draw-off tap supplied from a service pipe under mains pressure. Where the mains pressure is excessive, a pressure reducing valve shall be used to facilitate filling.

The following fittings shall form a permanent part of the system and shall be fitted in the order stated.

A stop valve complying with the requirements of BS 1010, Part 2 (the hose from the draw-off tap shall be connected to this fitting).

A test cock.

A double-check valve of an approved type.

- Thoroughly flush out the whole of the system with cold water, without the pump in position.
- With the pump fitted, fill and vent both system and pump until the pressure gauge registers 1.5 bar (21.5lb/in^2). Examine for leaks.
- Check the operation of the safety valve by manually raising the water pressure until the valve lifts. This should occur within ± 0.3 bar (± 4.3lb/in^2) of the pre-set lift pressure.
- Release water from the system until the initial system design pressure is reached.
- Light the boiler and heat the system to the maximum working temperature. Examine for leaks.
- Turn off the boiler and drain the system while still hot.
- Refill and vent both system and pump.
- Adjust the initial pressure to the required value.

6 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS *continued*

Sizing procedure for expansion vessels:

The volume of the expansion vessel (litres) fitted to a sealed system shall not be less than that given by the table opposite, multiplied by a factor of 0.8 (for flow temperature of less than 88°C).

If the system volume exceeds the figure given in the opposite table for an 8-litre expansion vessel then an additional vessel may be fitted, provided that it is as close to the appliance on the return to the boiler as is practically possible.

Refer to BS 5449 and BS 7074:1 for detail of expansion vessel application, selection and installation.

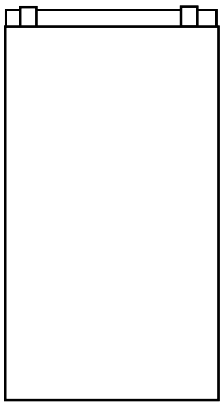
Safety valve setting	3.0 bar		
Vessel charge and initial system pressure	0.5 bar	1.0 bar	1.5 bar
Total water content of system	**Expansion vessel volume (litres)**		
25 litres	2.1	2.7	3.9
50	4.2	5.4	7.8
75	6.3	8.2	11.7
100	8.3	10.9	15.6
125	10.4	13.6	19.5
150	12.5	16.3	23.4
175	14.6	19.1	27.3
200	16.7	21.8	31.2
225	18.7	24.5	35.1
250	20.8	27.2	39.0
275	22.9	30.0	42.9
300	25.0	32.7	46.8
Multiplying factors for other system volumes	0.0833	0.109	0.156

7 UNPACKING

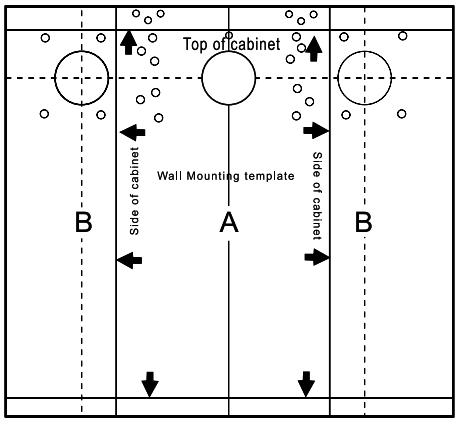
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extra, if ordered (Extension Duct Kit D) is available in a separate box.

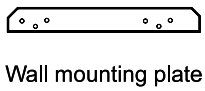
Unpack and check the contents.



Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



Wall mounting plate



Cupboard supports

Pack A Contents

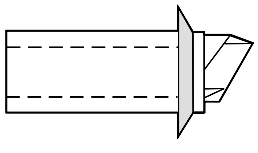
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube - 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring - 1 off
- Cupboard support - 2 off

Hardware Pack Contents

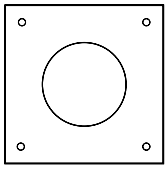
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug, 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 Hx. Hd. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 2 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy., 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



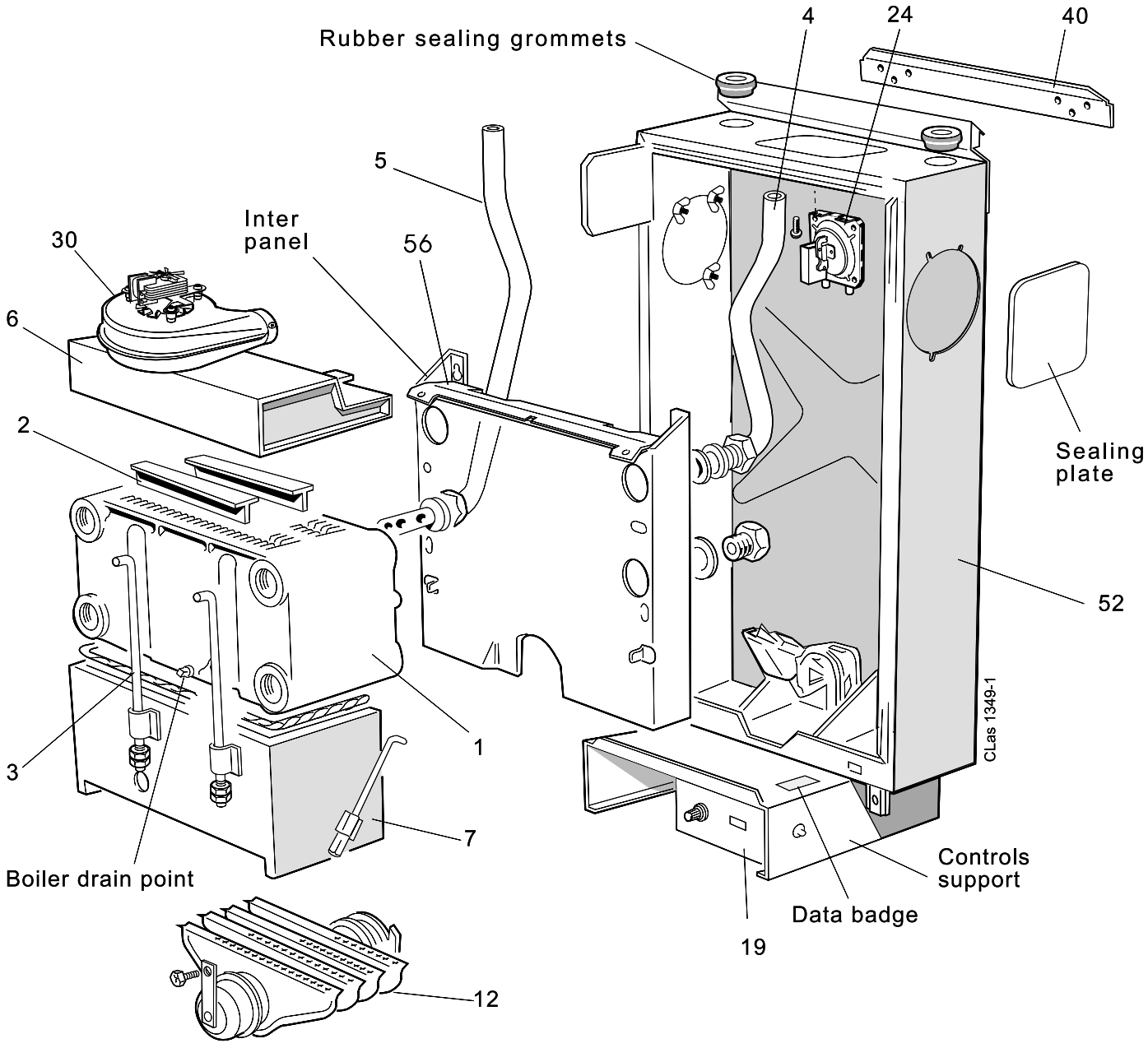
Flue terminal



Terminal wall plate

8 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 230 shown

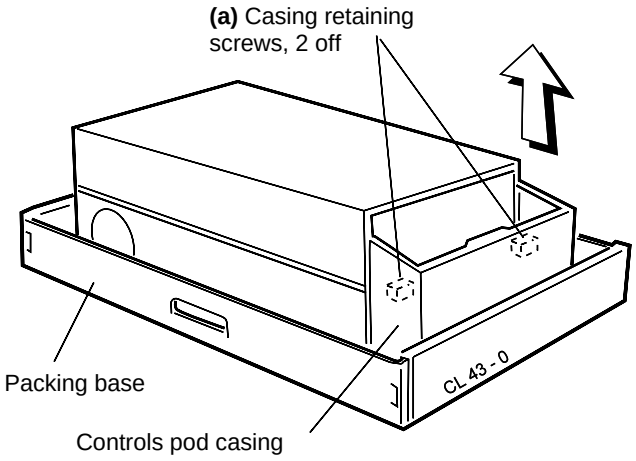


LEGEND

1. Heat exchanger.
2. Flue baffles.
3. Hook bolts
4. Flow pipe assy.
5. Return pipe assy.
6. Collector hood assembly.
7. Combustion chamber.
12. Main burner.
19. Control box .
24. Pressure switch.
30. Fan.
40. Wall mounting plate.
52. Back panel.
56. Baffle plate (250/60 only).

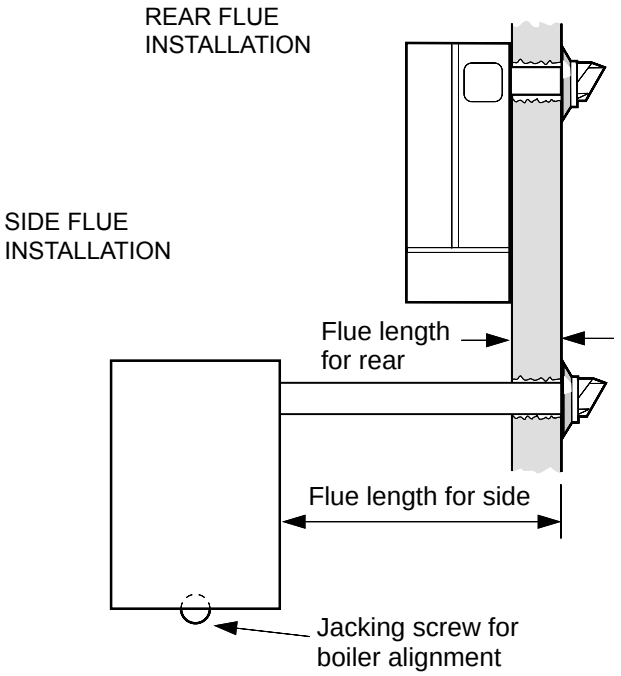
9 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

1. Unpack the boiler.
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).



10 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST IMPORTANT that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.



FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

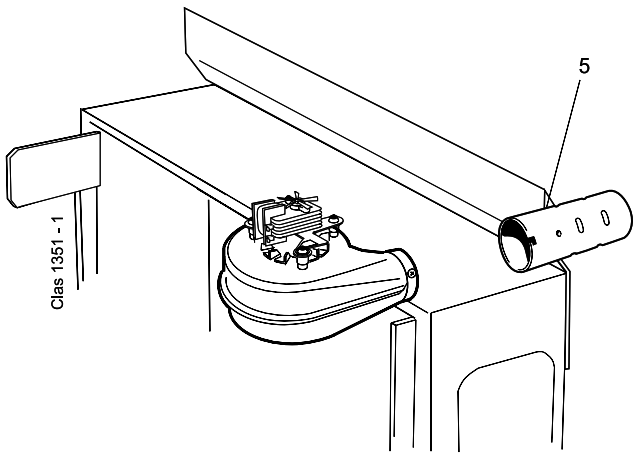
A maximum of 1 extension duct (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.

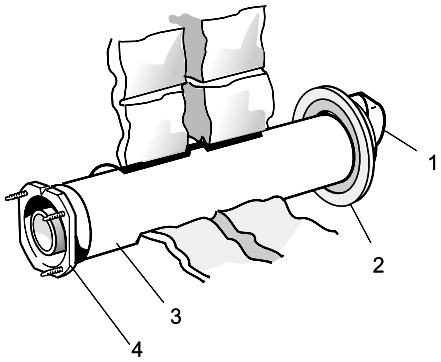
Note: *The total length must not exceed 1 metre.*

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	152227
600 to 1000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack 1 off	152227 + 152132

11 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.
2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



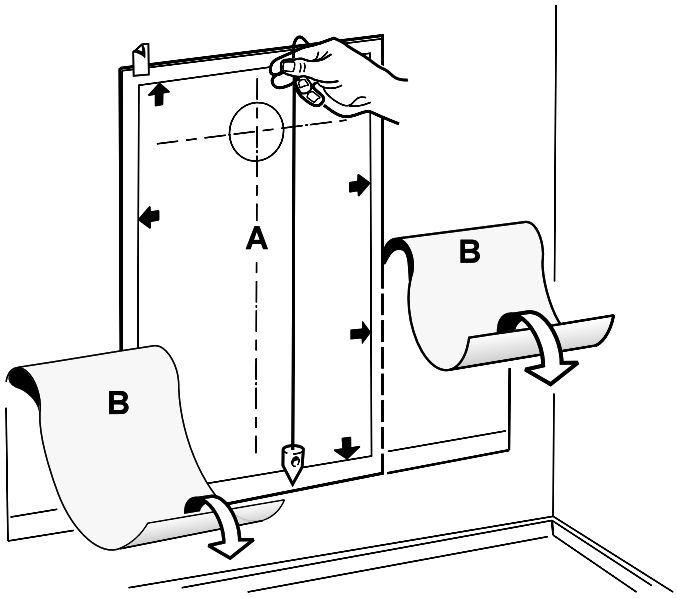


LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing ring.
5. Flue extension tube.

12 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

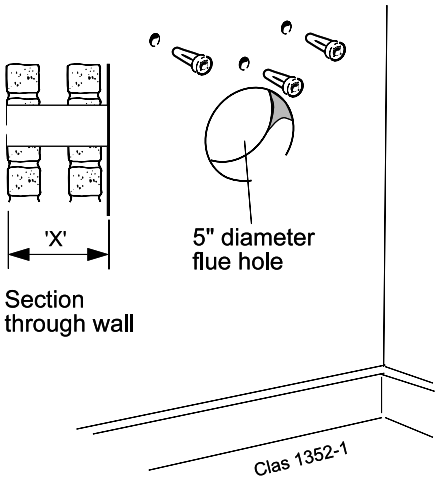
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape the templates into the selected position.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **b.** The position of the flue duct hole.
5. Remove the templates from the wall.



13 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 2 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill.
3. Drill 1 further hole above the flue hole for boiler fixing with the same 8mm (5/16") drill.
4. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



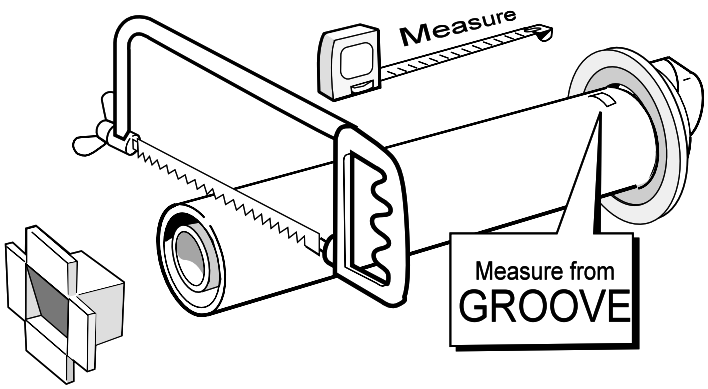
Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

REAR FLUE OUTLET

14 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

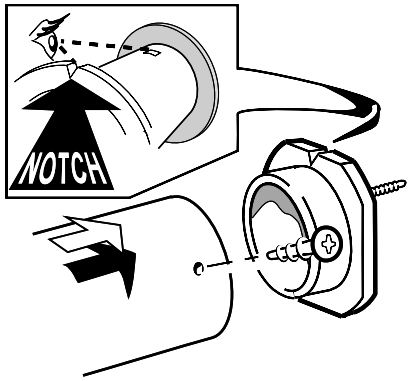
1. Measure and note the wall thickness X.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length X, using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.



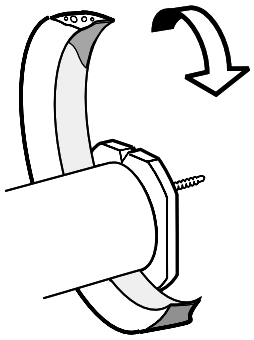
15 FITTING THE BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.

   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

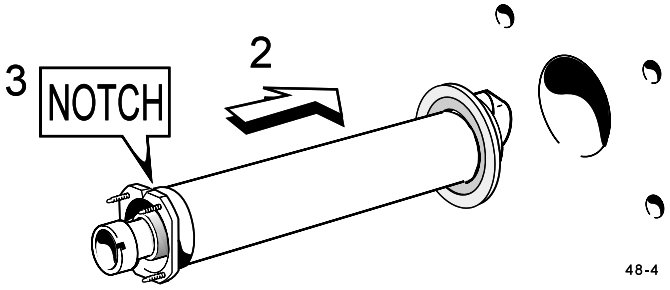


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self-tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self-adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



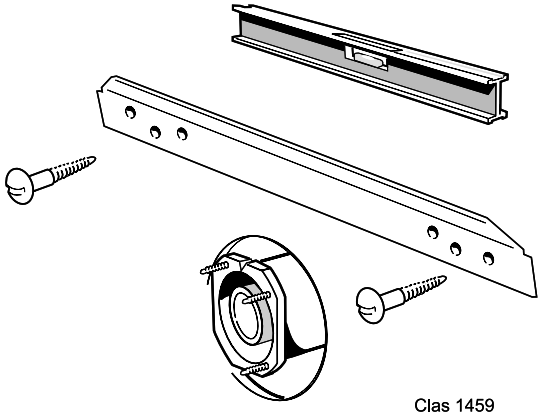
16 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



17 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. Check with a spirit level that the plate is horizontal.
3. **Cupboard Supports**
   In some applications existing wooden supports my hinder the removal of the casing. Two cupboard supports are provided for the top and bottom of the opening. These should be positioned to allow the casing to be removed in servicing.



18 MOUNTING THE BOILER

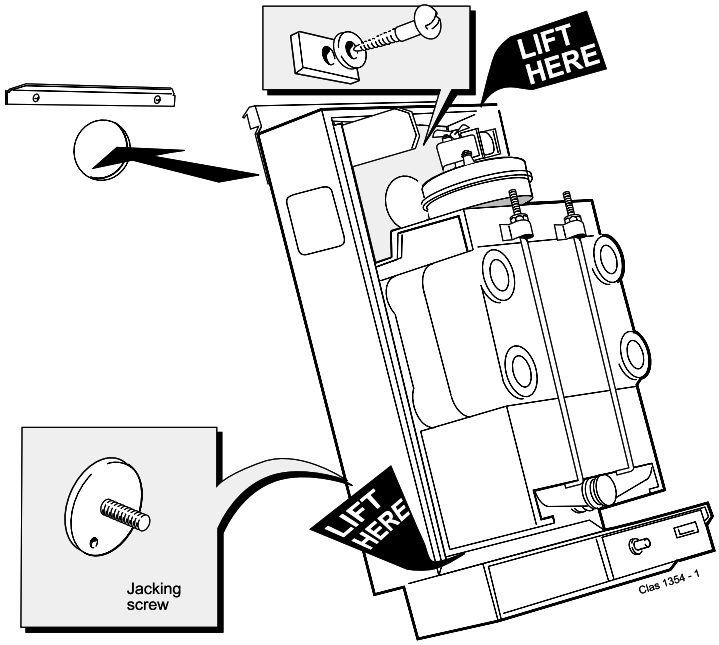
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit an additional No.14 x 50mm woodscrew through the slot in the boiler back panel above the flue into the wall plug. Use the washer and rectangular sealing plate to seal the slot and retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the retaining screw check the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.

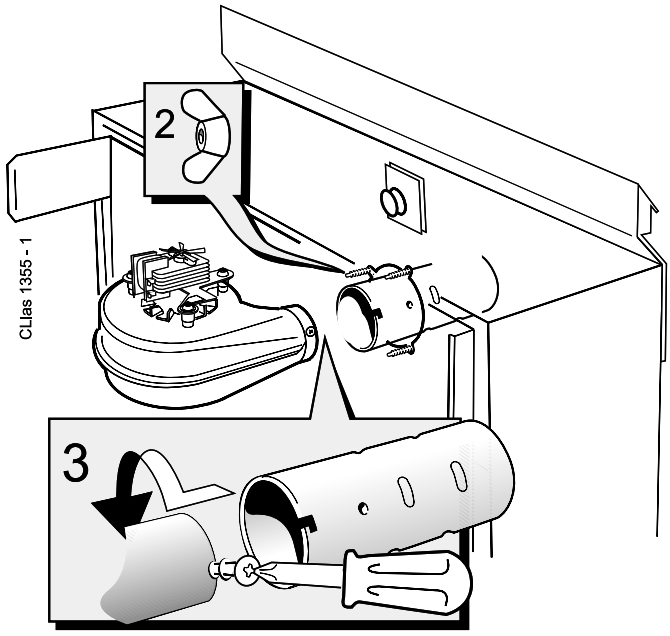


19 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan. Locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

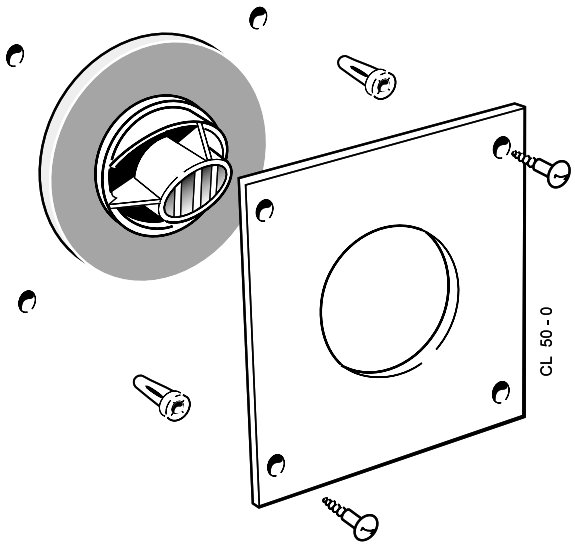


20 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

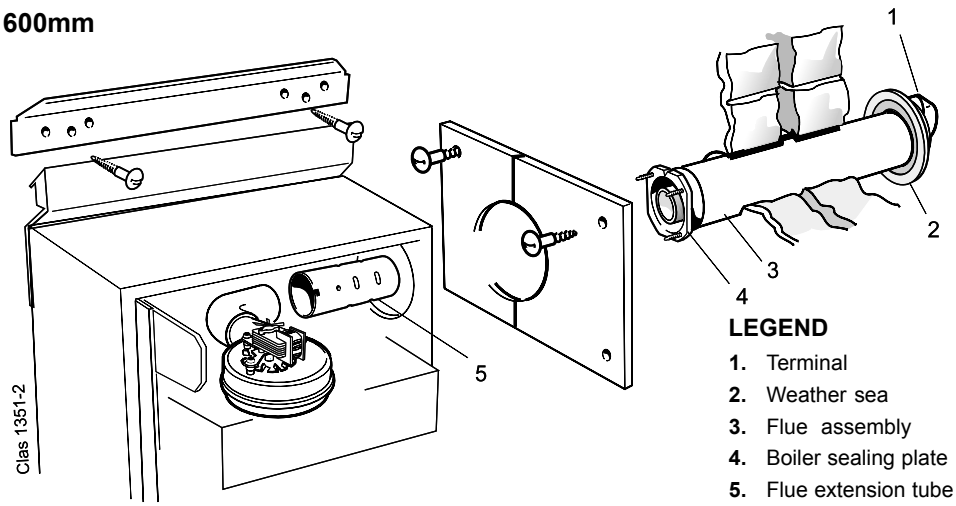
Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 2.*



21 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.
2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.

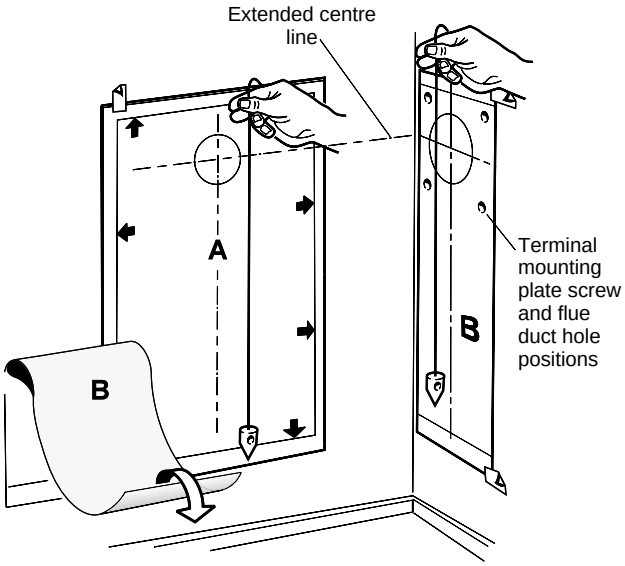


LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing plate
5. Flue extension tube

22 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

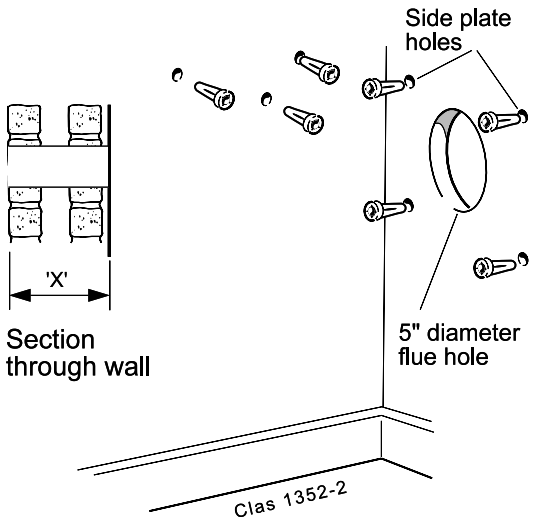
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The 4 wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group).
   - **b.** The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.
   - **c.** The position of the flue duct hole. **Note.** *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **d.** The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.
5. Remove both templates from the wall.



23 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

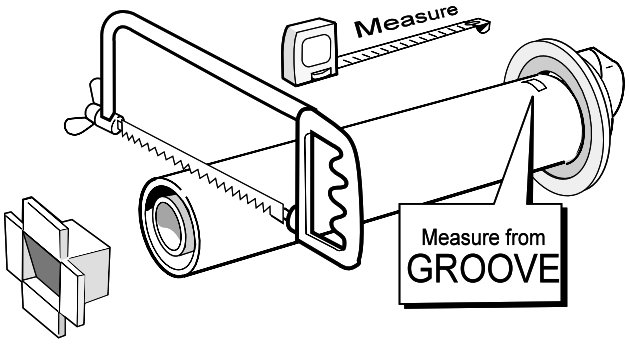
1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 2 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.
3. Drill 1 further hole below the wall plate fixing screws, in the position shown on the template, for boiler fixing with the same 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plug provided.
4. Drill 4 holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate.



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

24 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

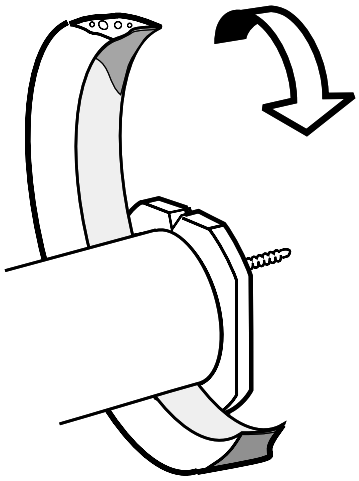
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall). Refer to Frame 11.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard duct ring for support and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard duct ring and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm, refer to Frames 34 & 35 - Flue extension ducts.

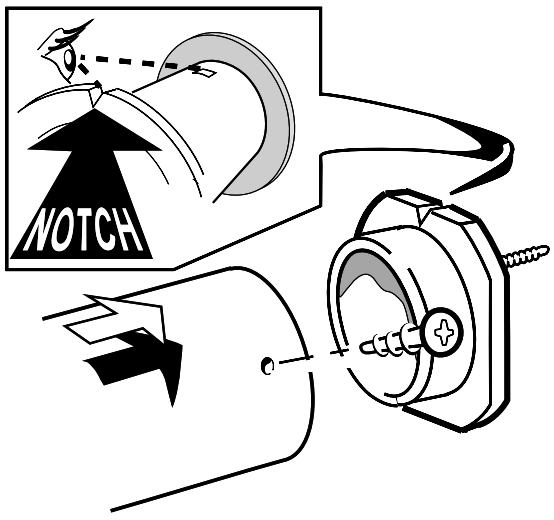
25 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self-adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



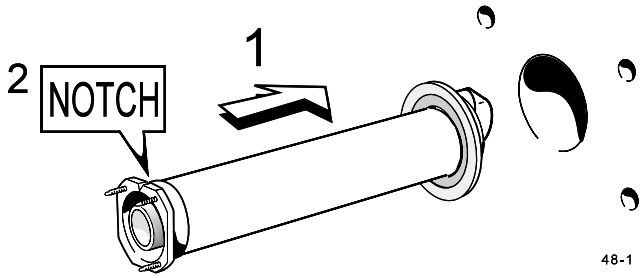
26 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



27 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

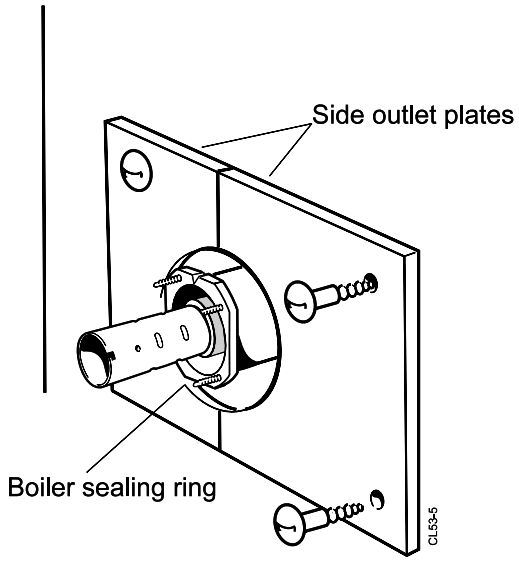


Flue assembly

28 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

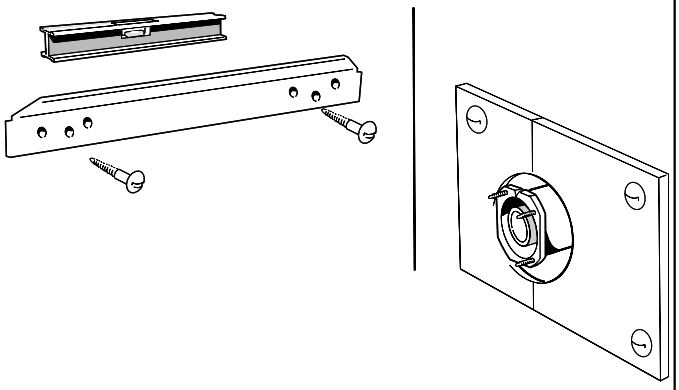
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



29 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. Check with a spirit level that the plate is horizontal.



3. **Cupboard Supports**
   In some applications existing wooden supports my hinder the removal of the casing. Two cupboard supports are provided for the top and bottom of the opening. These should be positioned to allow the casing to be removed in servicing.

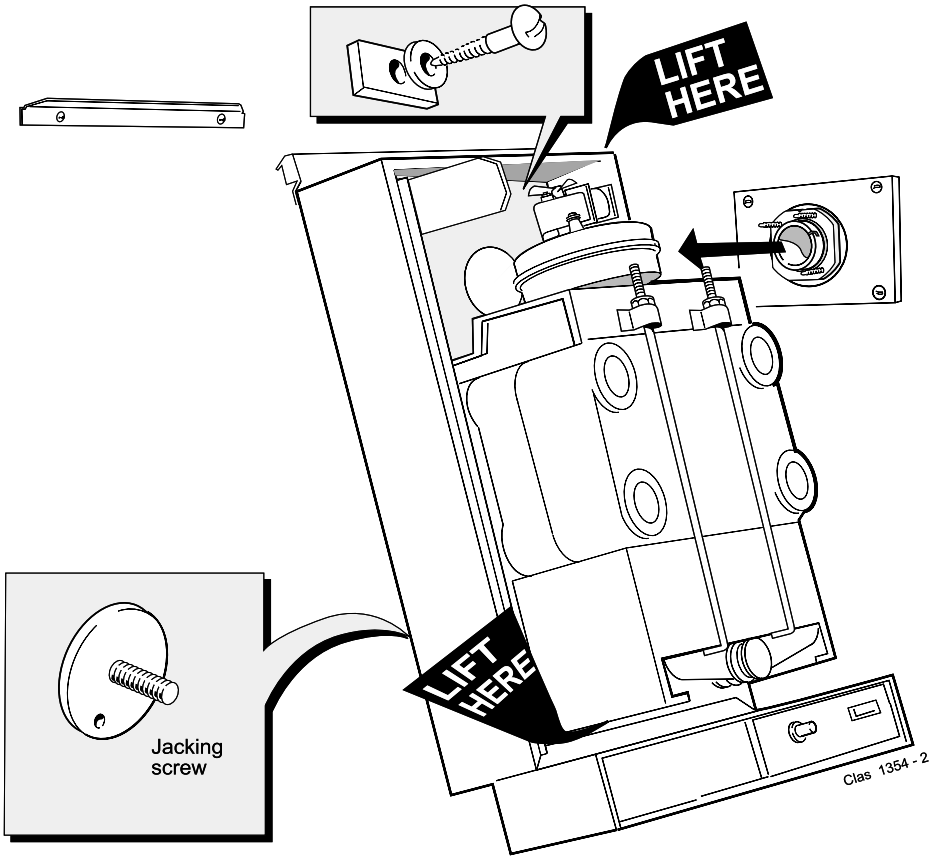
30 MOUNTING THE BOILER

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate, as shown.

   Do not use the burner/ controls for lifting.

3. Fit the No. 14 x 50mm wood screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

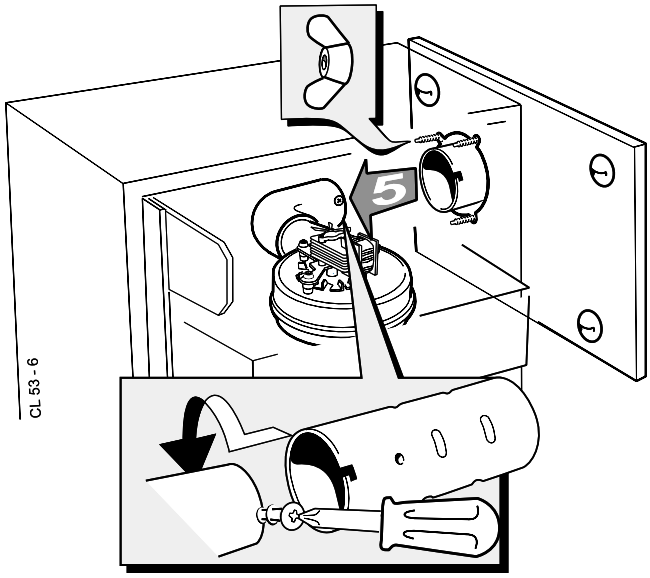
Note. *Before fully tightening the retaining screw check the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



31 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

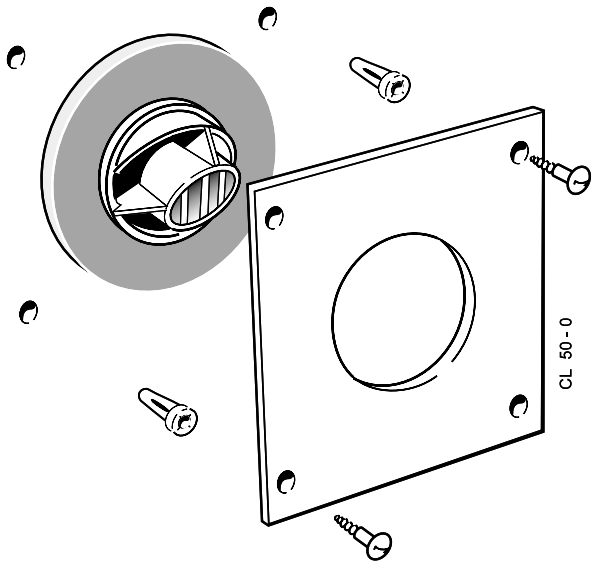


32 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

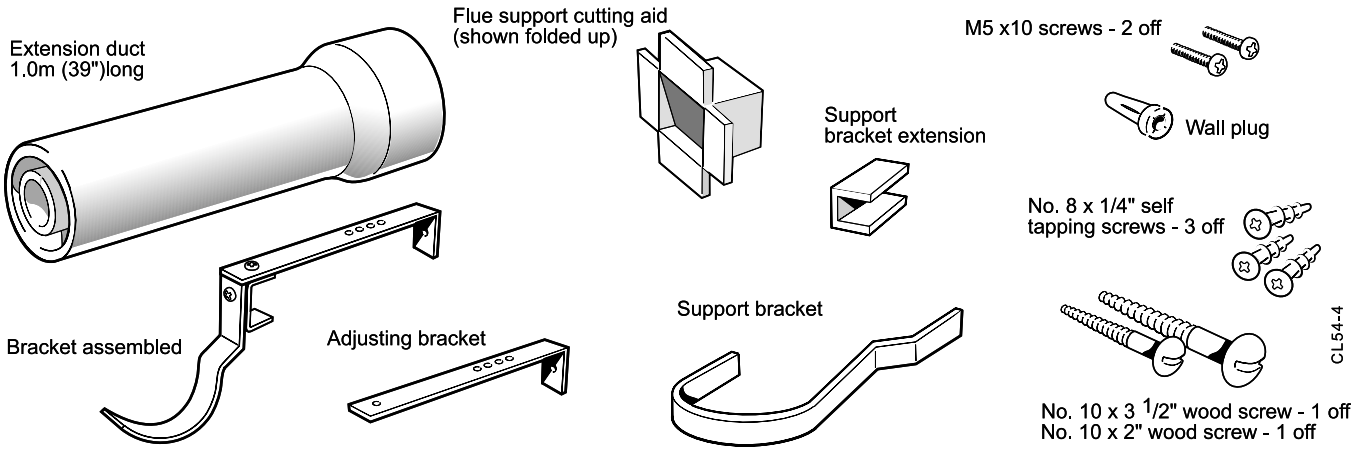
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the contents list on Page 2.*



33 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents.

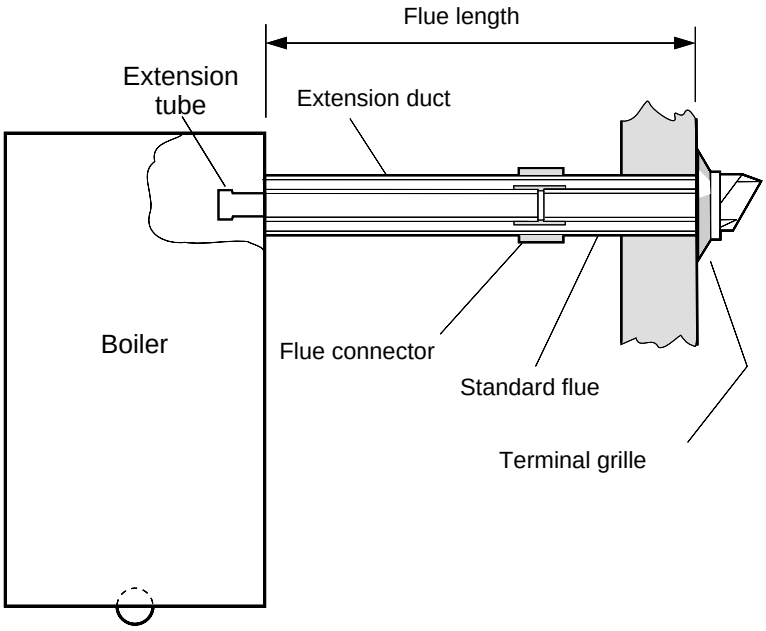


34 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

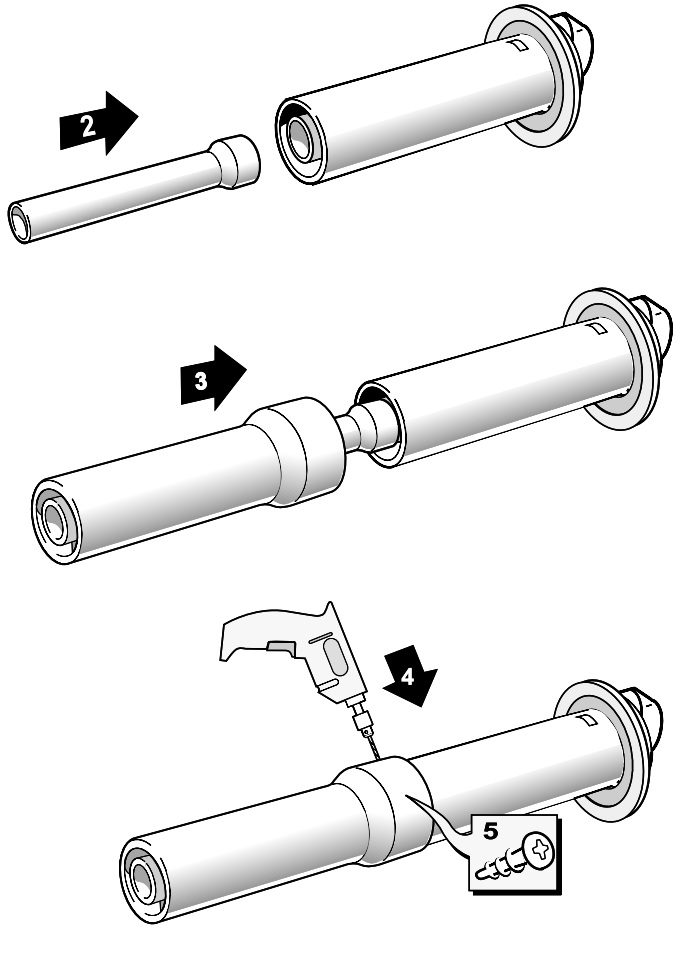
Note.
Side flue shown.

A *maximum* of 1 extension duct (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.



Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 10
600 to 1000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack 1 off	see Frame 10

35 FITTING THE KIT



REP932 - 2

1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill 3 - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screws provided to fix the air duct in position.

36 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 7.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

37 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

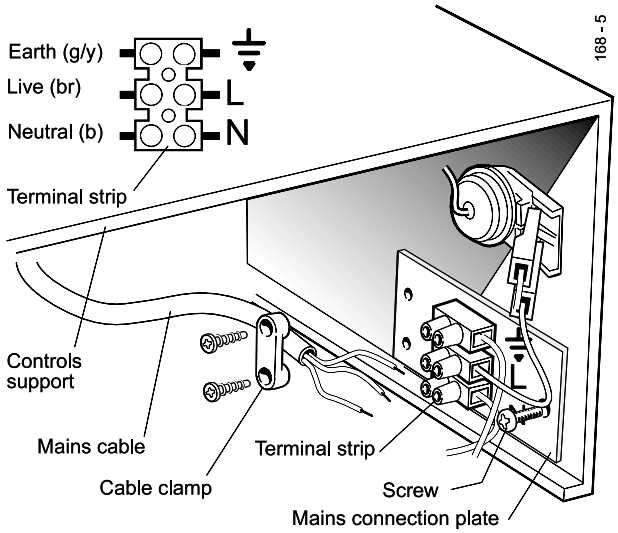
38 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

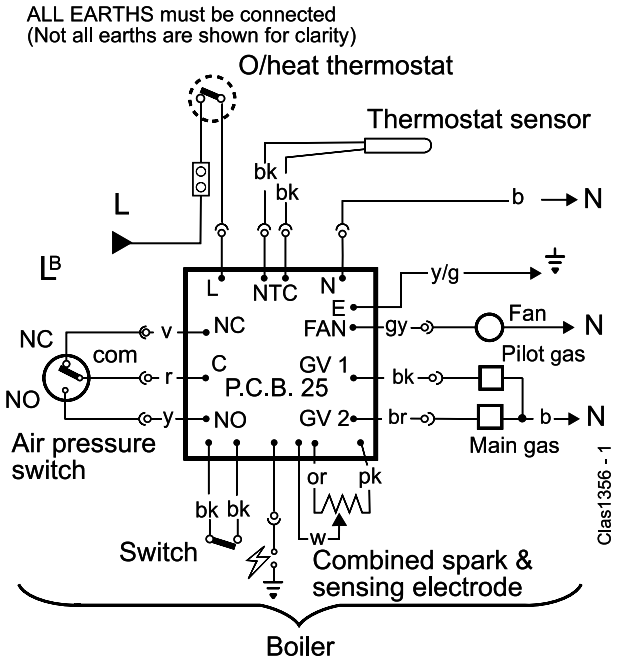
A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulated & sheathed cable, not less than 0.75mm² (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The means of isolation must be accessible to the user after installation.



Flow wiring diagram



LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green

1. Remove the control box securing screw (M4 pozi). Pull the box forward to disengage. Refer to Frame 57.
2. Route the mains cable through the grommet in the plate of the control box.
3. Remove the screw and release the mains connection plate. Unscrew the cable clamp screws and remove the clamp.
4. Connect the mains cable wires to the terminal strip.
5. Assemble in reverse order.
6. Replace the control box and fasten to the controls support.

39 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 41-43 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 41-43.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

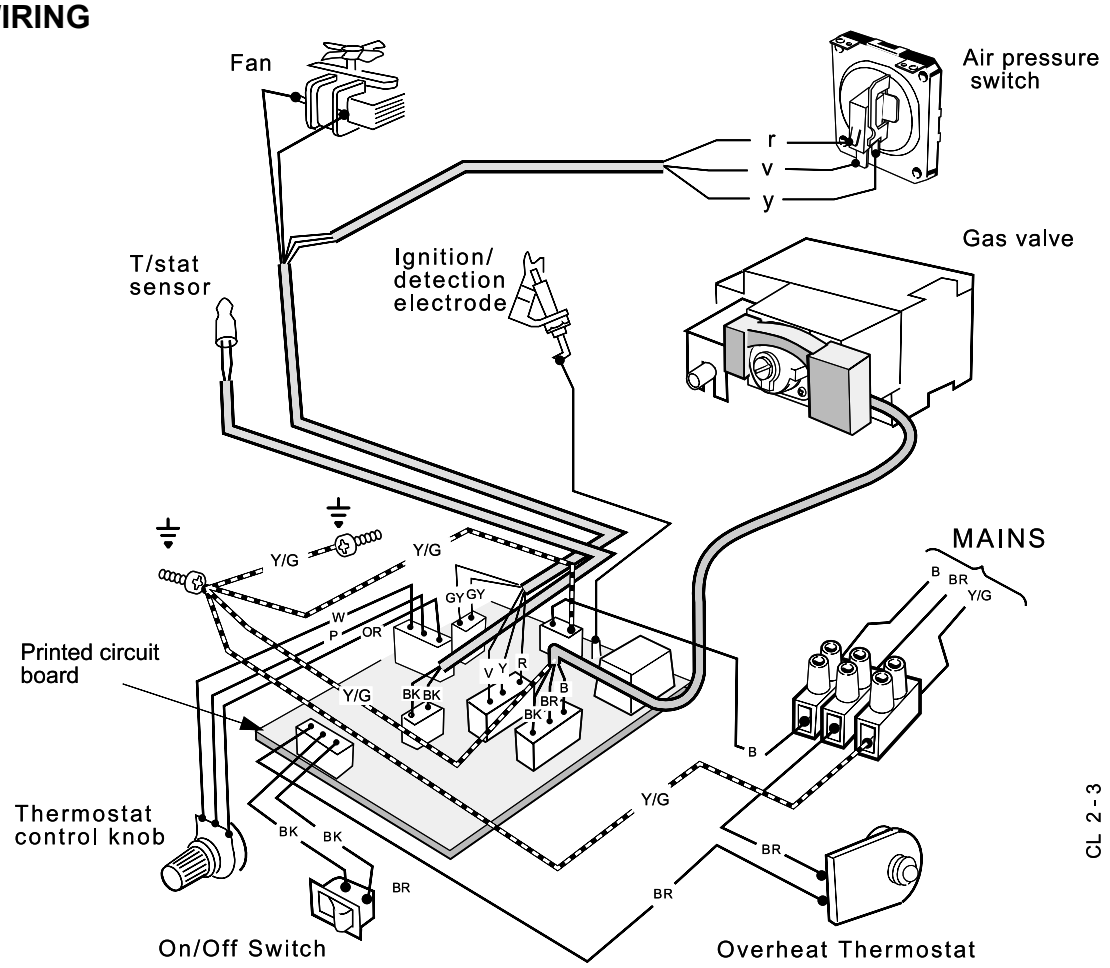
1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 43.
3. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
4. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

40 PICTORIAL WIRING



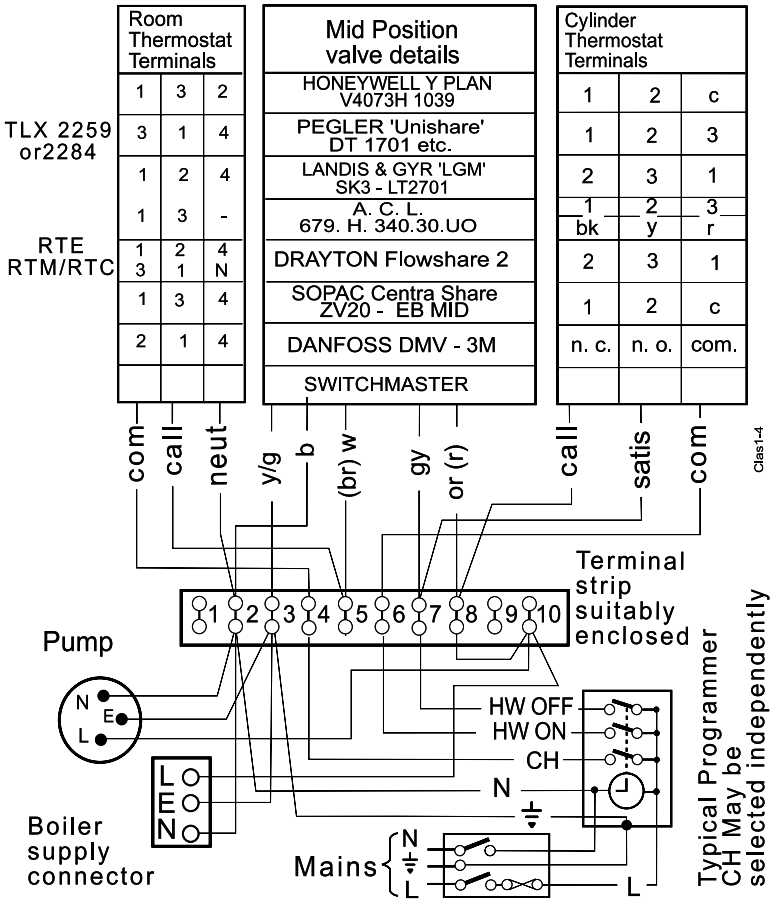
LEGEND

b	blue
bk	black
br	brown
r	red
y	yellow
w	white
or	orange
v	violet
p	pink
gy	grey
y/g	yellow/green

41 MID POSITION VALVE **Pumped only**

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation but the wiring differs slightly - see the manufacturer's literature.*



LEGEND

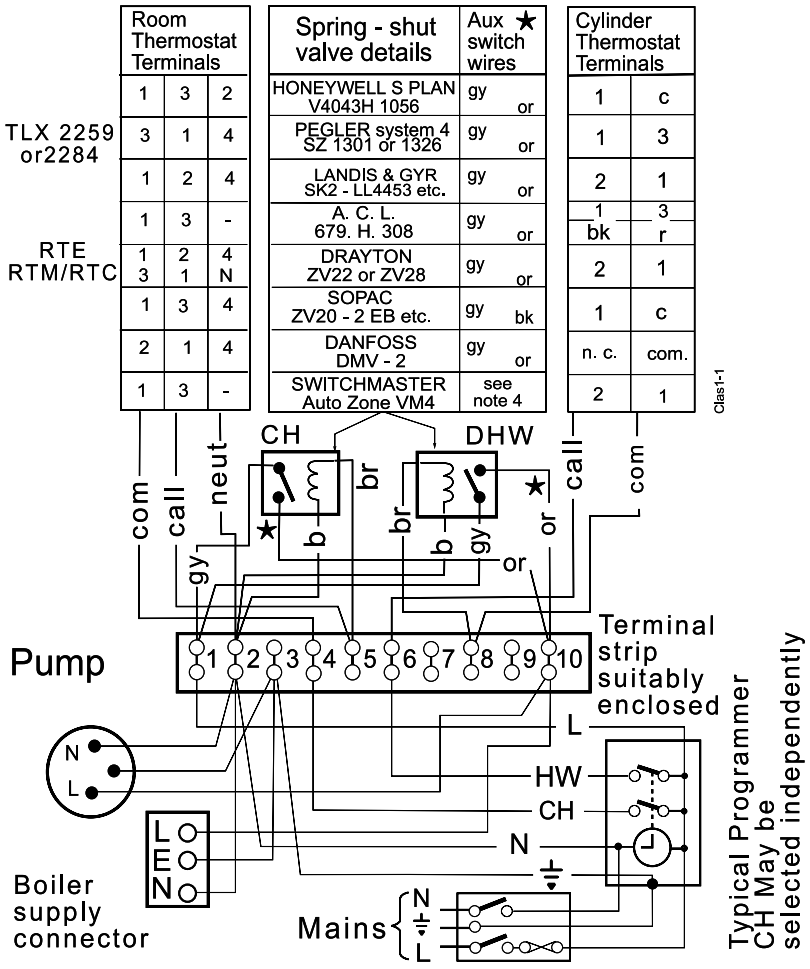
b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**gy**	grey

42 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

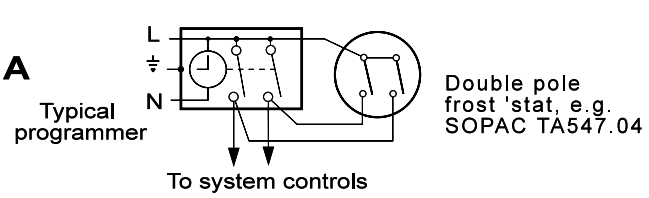
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey and orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

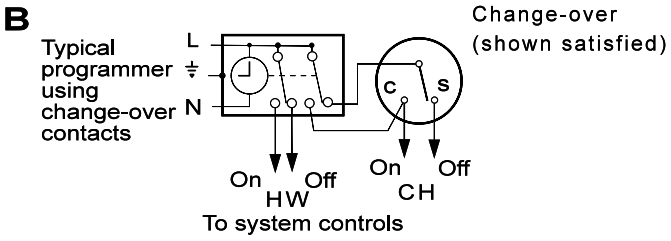


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**gy**	grey
br	brown	**y/g**	yellow/green
r	red	**or**	orange
y	yellow	**v**	violet
		pk	pink

43 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

44 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

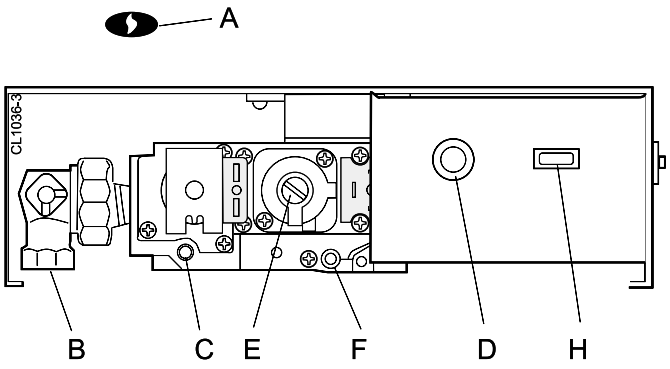
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

45 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

A Sightglass.
B Gas service cock.
C Inlet pressure test point.
D Thermostat knob
E Main burner pressure adjuster.
F Burner pressure test point.
H Boiler mains on/off switch.

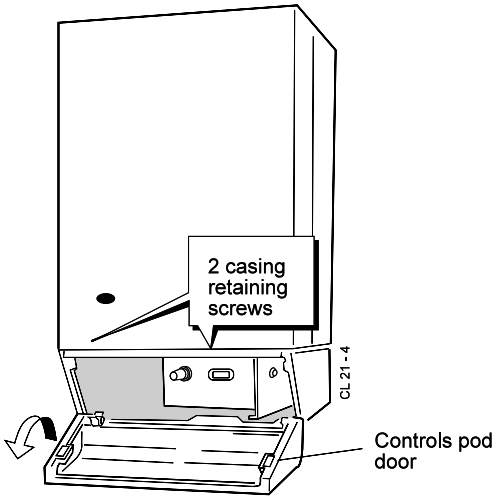
TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains on/off switch is OFF.
3. If the boiler output is to be set to minimum or mid, affix the appropriate indicator label supplied in the hardware pack to the data badge, located on the controls support.
4. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**

   The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls pod casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws. To improve access to the gas valve, remove the controls pod casing. Release the controls pod front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots, as illustrated.

   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint. Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.

5. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
6. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
7. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position 6 and the boiler Mains on/off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross-light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
8. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
9. Operate the boiler for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
10. The boiler is preset at the factory to its highest nominal rating but can be range rated to suit the system design requirements. Refer to Table 2 (page 3). Remove the silver threaded protection cap on the top of the regulator. Adjust the main burner pressure adjuster (E) until the required main burner pressure is achieved.
11. Set the boiler mains on/off switch to OFF.
12. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test point.
13. Turn ON and check for gas soundness at the pressure test point.
14. Refit the controls pod and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.
15. Close the pod door.



46 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.

2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved.

   Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.

3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.

4. **Water Circulating System**

   a. With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.

   b. With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down, in order to complete the flushing process.

   c. Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.

   d. Balance the system.

5. Finally, set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations.

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING. The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

47 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations or rules in force.

2. Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.

3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.

4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.
   Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.

5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.

6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and a registered CORGI installer consulted.

7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.

8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.

9. **After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the benchmark appliance log book and leave this with the customer.**

10. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a CORGI registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

48 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary. The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually. It is the law that any service work must be carried out by a CORGI registered installer.

a. Light the boiler and, using the flue sampling point (provided on the top RH side of the back panel) carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults.

b. Clean the main burner.

c. Clean the heat exchanger.

d. Clean the main and pilot injectors.

e. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

f. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

g. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 49 to 53 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING. Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

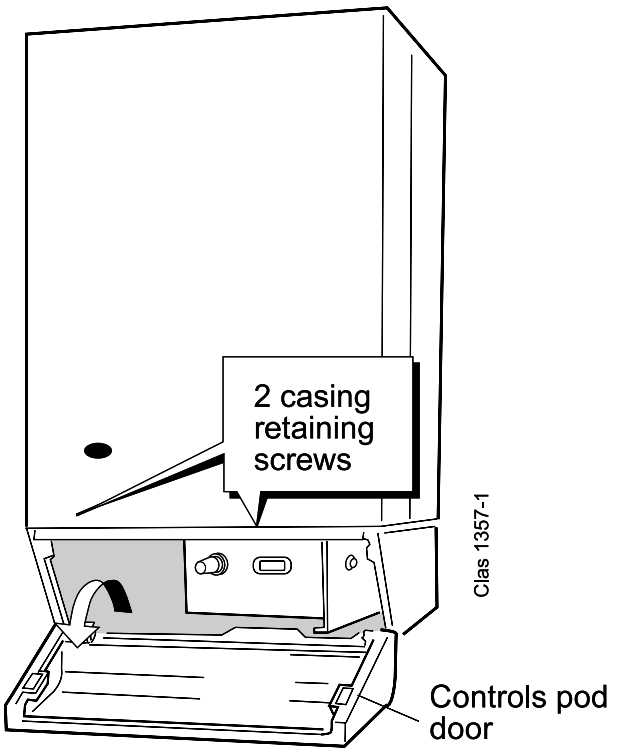
The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed. Refer to Frame 49.*

49 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

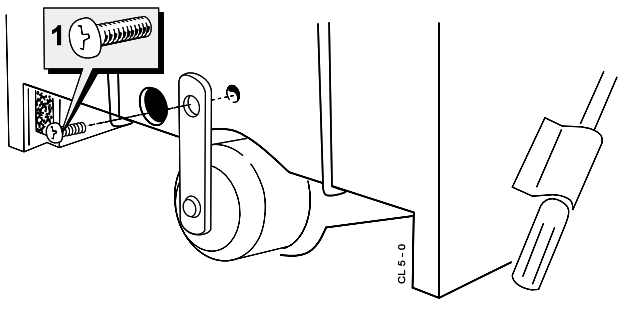
1. Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the pack panel. Retain the casing in a safe place. Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 should be followed.

3. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



50 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

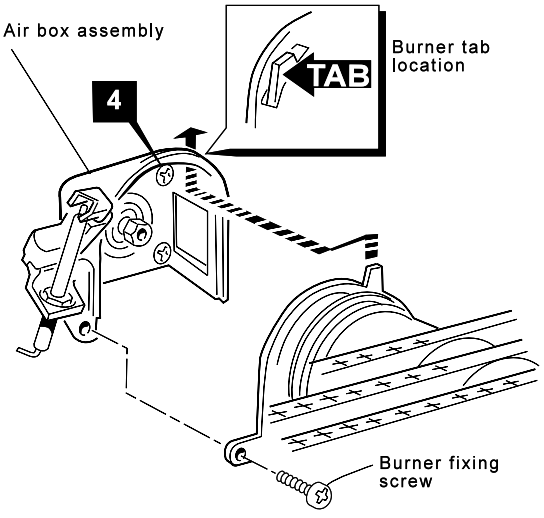
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove the burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.



2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the 4 screws retaining the air box/pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly.



51 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.

2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue
Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side flue
Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

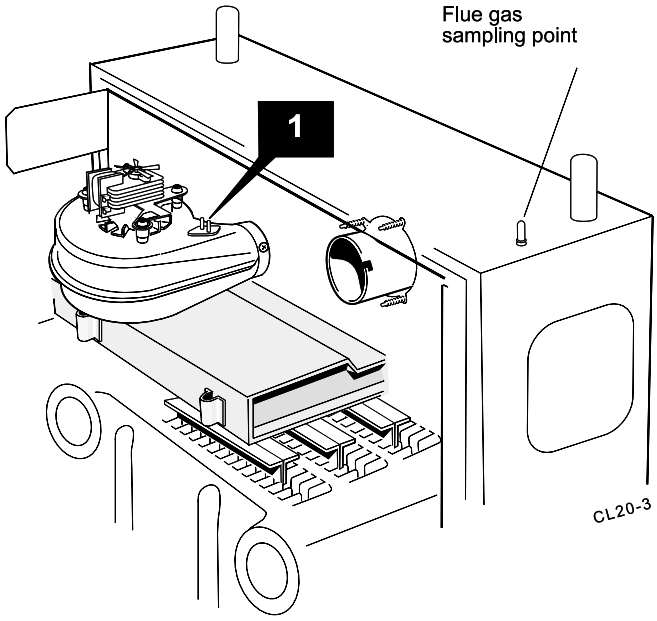
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.

5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.

6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.

7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.

8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.

10. Re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

52 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head (ensuring the flame ports are unobstructed) and remove any debris that may have collected.
Note. *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*

2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.

3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.

4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

a. The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 59 for removal details.

b. The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.

c. The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.

d. The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.

e. The spark gap is correct (Frame 59). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

53 RE-ASSEMBLY

Re-assemble the boiler in the following order.

1. Refit the flue baffles.

2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally on to the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.

3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.

4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.

5. Refit the control box.

6. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 36 & 38.

7. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 57.

8. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock and pressure test point.

9. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 45, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.

10. Close the controls pod door.

54 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If, after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 59) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting', Frame 45.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input. Any required adjustments should be made by using the pressure adjustment screw.

Refer to 'initial Lighting', Frame 45.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

55 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.
2. Turn OFF the gas supply.
3. Remove the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 49.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding, the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

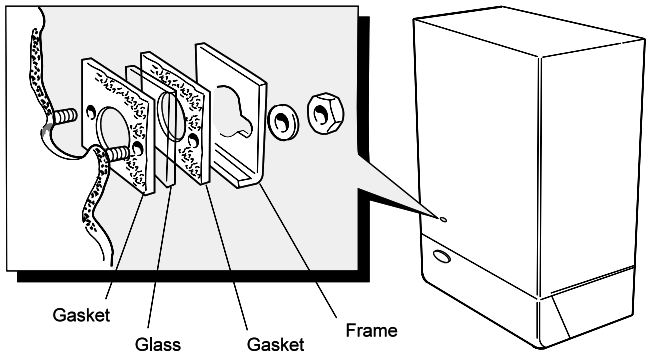
Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate ignition operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

56 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

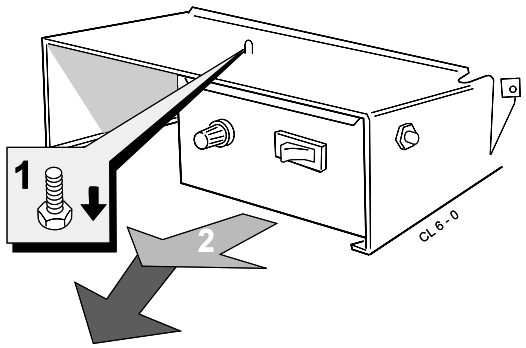
1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Unfasten the 2 nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.
3. When fixing the new assembly ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.
4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.
6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 53.



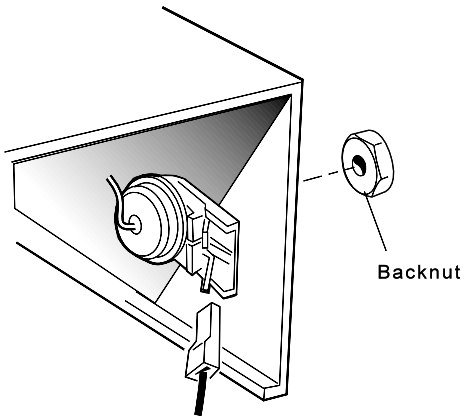
57 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

Refer to Frames 39, 555 & 70.

1. Remove the control box fixing screw.



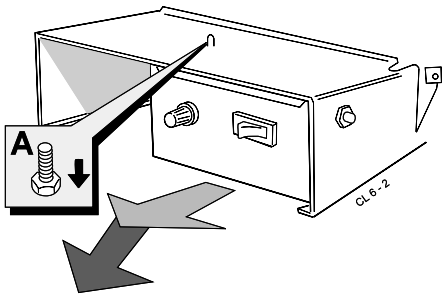
2. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
3. To remove the overheat thermostat pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Remove the thermostat from the heat exchanger pocket.
4. Re-assemble in reverse order.



58 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD & ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT

Refer also to Frame 55.

Remove the control box fixing screw (A). Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.



Thermostat control

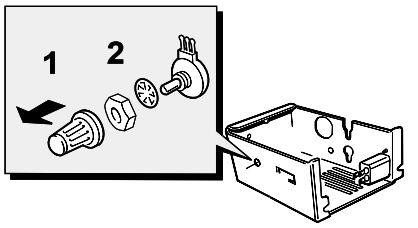
1. Pull the knob off the shaft.
2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.
3. Pull off the Molex connector from the printed circuit board.
4. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

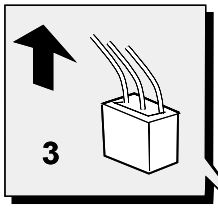
Thermistor sensor lead

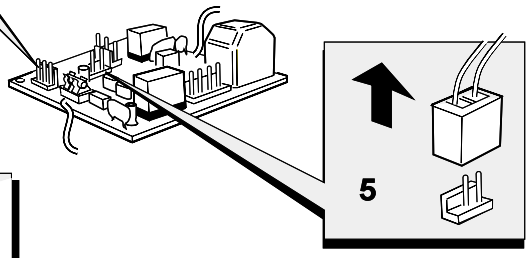
5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.
6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.
7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.
8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.
9. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

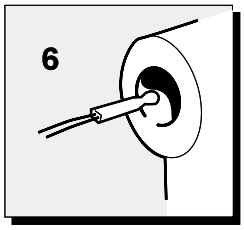
On/off switch

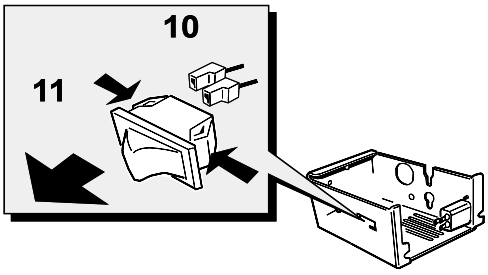
10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.
12. Re-assemble in reverse order.



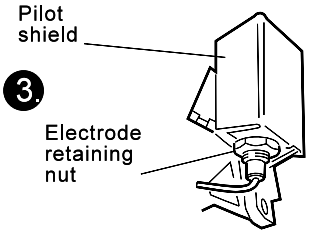


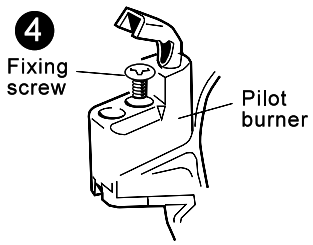


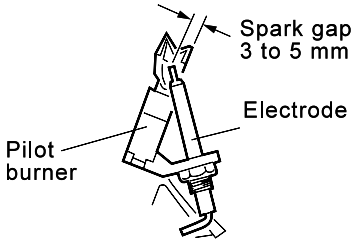


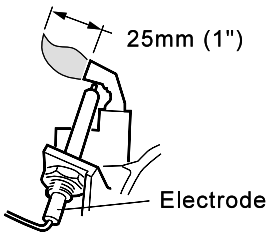


59 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT





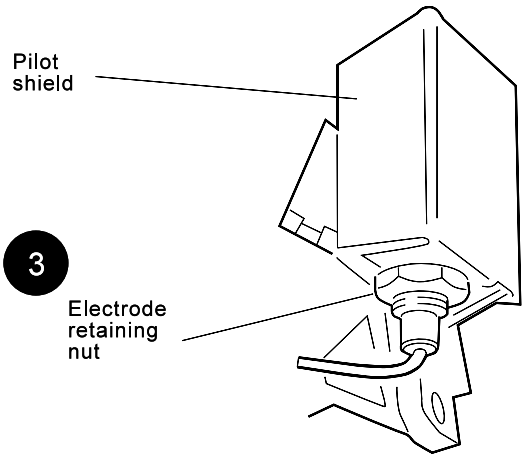




1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.
4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.
5. Replace the pilot burner (injector if necessary) and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.
6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.
7. Replace the box assembly.
8. Replace the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

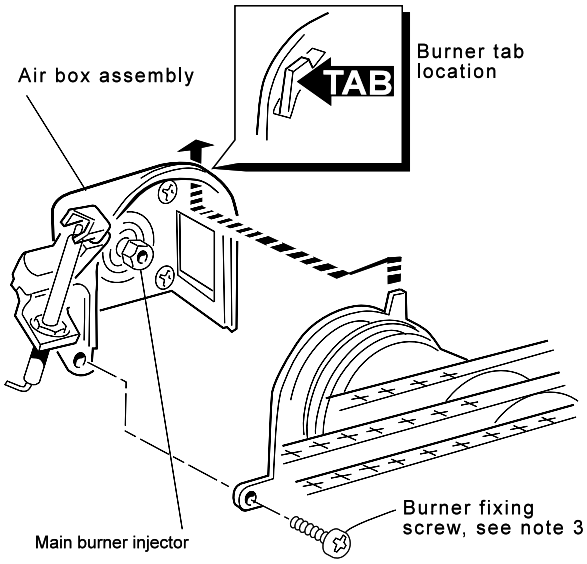
60 IGNITION ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.
4. Remove the pilot shield.
5. Remove the ignition electrode and integral lead.
6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.
7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 59.
8. Refit the burner.
9. Replace the boiler casing.
10. Check the pilot ignition.



61 MAIN BURNER AND MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.
3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downward to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.
4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that an approved jointing compound is used sparingly.
5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot.
6. Refit the M5 retaining screw.
7. Refit the boiler casing.
8. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.



62 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

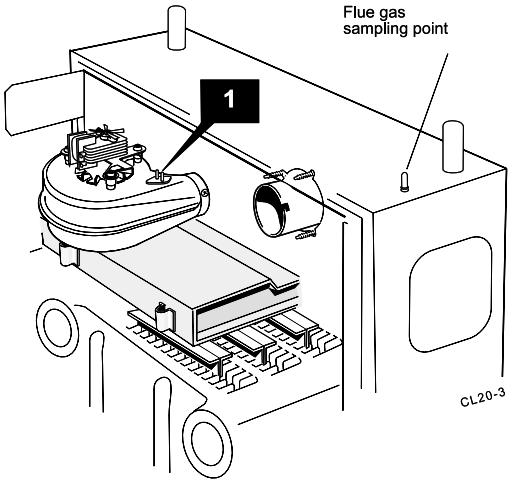
Note. *Also refer to Frame 69 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
3. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
4. Remove the gas control valve electrical connection.
5. Disconnect and remove the gas union from the gas control valve.
6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the 2 screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.
7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.
8. Remove the 4 screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new gas control valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on back indicates the direction of flow).

   Note. *Remove the gas cock stub and refit into the new gas control valve. Use an approved jointing compound on the pipe stub.*
9. Re-assemble in reverse order.
10. Replace the boiler casing.
11. Check the gas valve operation.

63 FAN REPLACEMENT

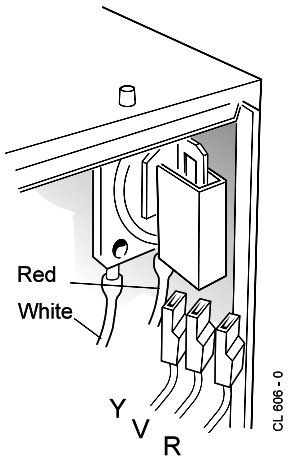
1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
2. Disconnect the fan leads.
3a. **Rear flue.** Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.
3b. **Side flue.** Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood / fan assembly.
7. Remove the three screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.
8. Re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads, and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.



9. Refit the boiler casing.
10. Check the boiler operation.

64 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the APS fixing screw.
3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.
5. Connect the new APS in reverse order.
6. Refit the APS with the fixing screw.
7. Refit the boiler casing.
8. Check the boiler operation.



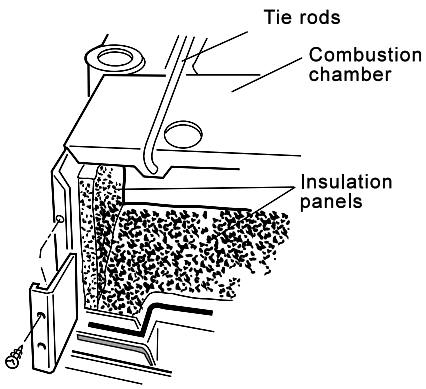
65 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frames 69 & 70 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.
3. Remove the HT lead from the PCB
4. Remove the 6 push-in connectors from the PCB.
5. Remove the neutral wire on the PCB from its connection to the back of the socket inside the control box.
6. Remove the earth wire on the PCB from its connection to the earth stud inside the control box.
7. Remove the 2 connections from the on/off switch and remove the switch.
8. Compress the barbs on the PCB stand-offs to release the PCB from the box
9. Fit the new PCB and u in reverse order, ensuring the correct orientation of the switch.
10. Refit the boiler casing.
11. Check the operation of the boiler.

66 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 55.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
3. Remove the 4 tie rods.
4. Remove the combustion chamber.
5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.
6. Remove the side insulation panels.
7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.
8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.
9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order.



67 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frame 8 (Boiler assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 55.

2. Remove the burner / air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

3. Drain the system.

4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings in order to allow the heat exchanger assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.

5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.

7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.

8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / inter-panel retaining screws.

9. Lift the heat exchanger / inter-panel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downwards to clear the water pipes from the back panel.

10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.

11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.

12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.

13. Re-assemble in reverse order.

14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.

15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

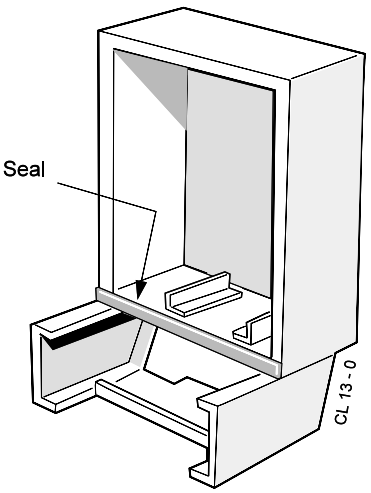
68 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 55.

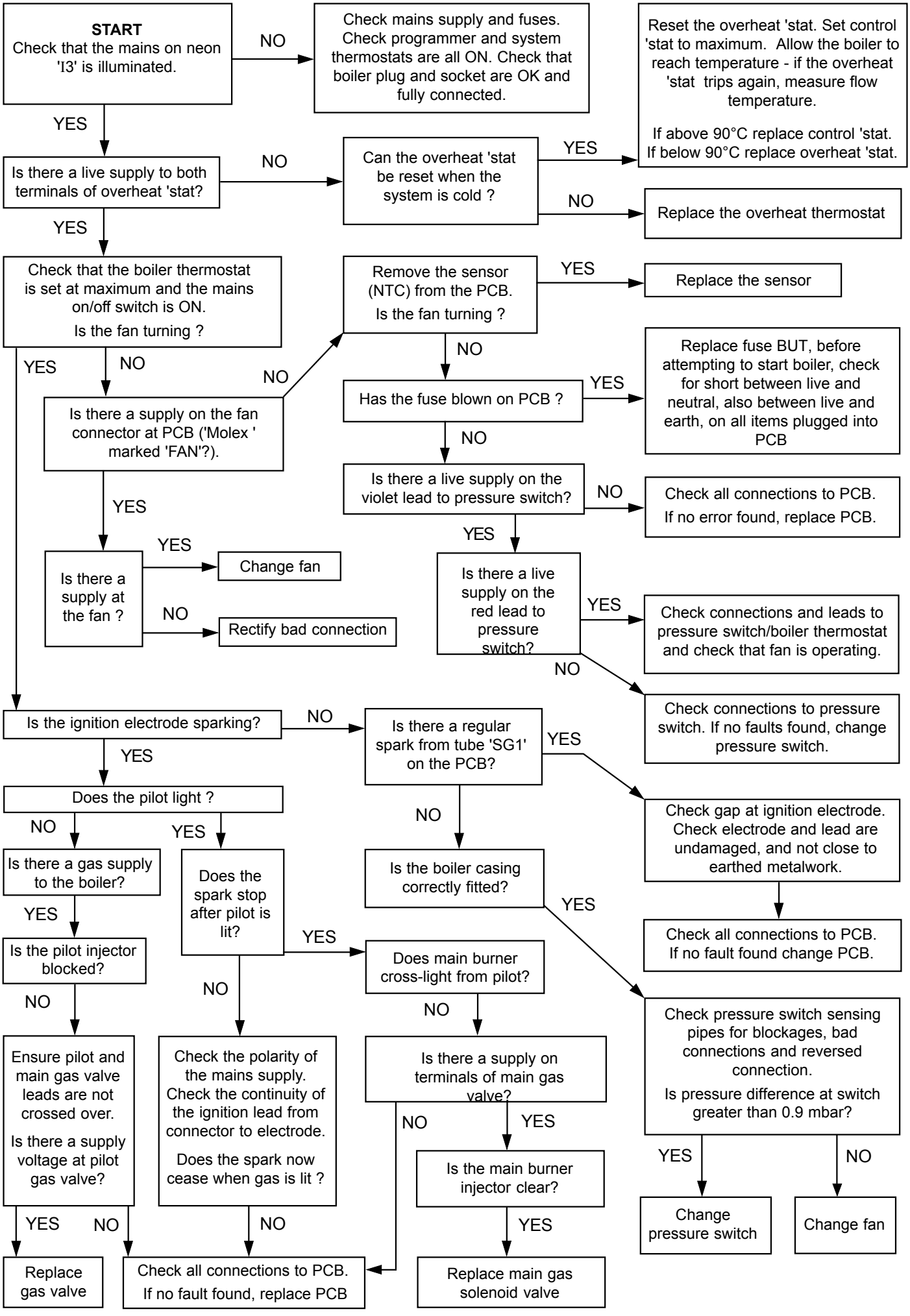
2. Remove the old seal from the casing surround and thoroughly clean the casing surfaces.

3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.

4. Replace the boiler casing.



FAULT FINDING



SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

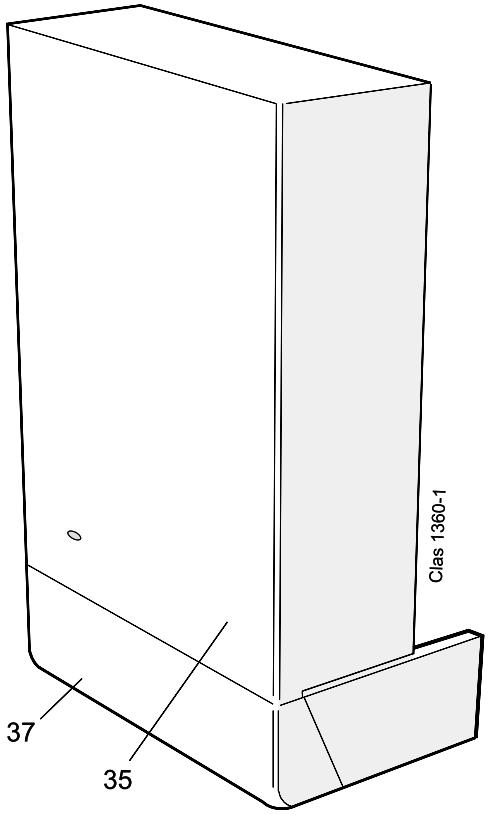
The full lists is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

When ordering spares please quote:

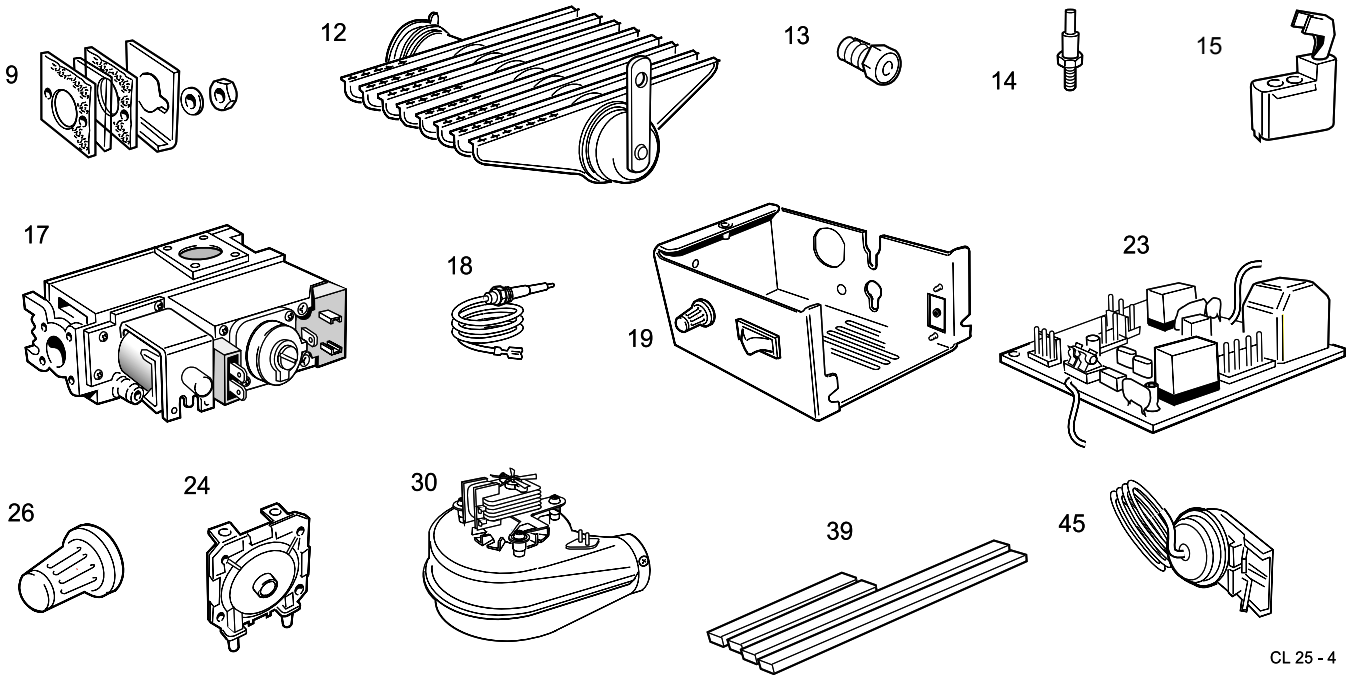
1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
12		Main burner		
		AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 306; FF 230 & FF 240	1	155396
		AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 305; FF 250 & FF 260	1	155397
13		Main burner injector		
		Injector Ø 2.56mm FF 230	1	155 398
		Injector Ø 3.00mm FF 240	1	155 399
		Injector Ø 3.30mm FF 250		155 400
		Injector Ø3.59mm FF 260	1	155 401
13A		Copper washer, Aeromatic 91416 (for injector); FF230, FF240, FF250, FF260	1	152426
14	397 943	Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075002 ; FF 230-260	1	004982
15	308 358	Pilot burner head Q359A with: Honeywell 4580 1075002 injector FF 230-260	1	079599
17		Gas valve kit VR 4601AA1036, 230 V	1	075698
18	308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm lg.	1	111881
19		Control box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	155321
23	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board : PACTROL PCB 25 B	1	079716
24	385 861	Pressure switch: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 A 1010	1	111379
26	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
30	E02-661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No. FFB 1701-037		155331
35		Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation & M5 x 16 dogpoint pozi pan hd FF 230-260	1	155329
37	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instructions	1	079941
39	E04-504	Casing seal pack complete with screws	1	075392
45	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 P 8508	1	113200

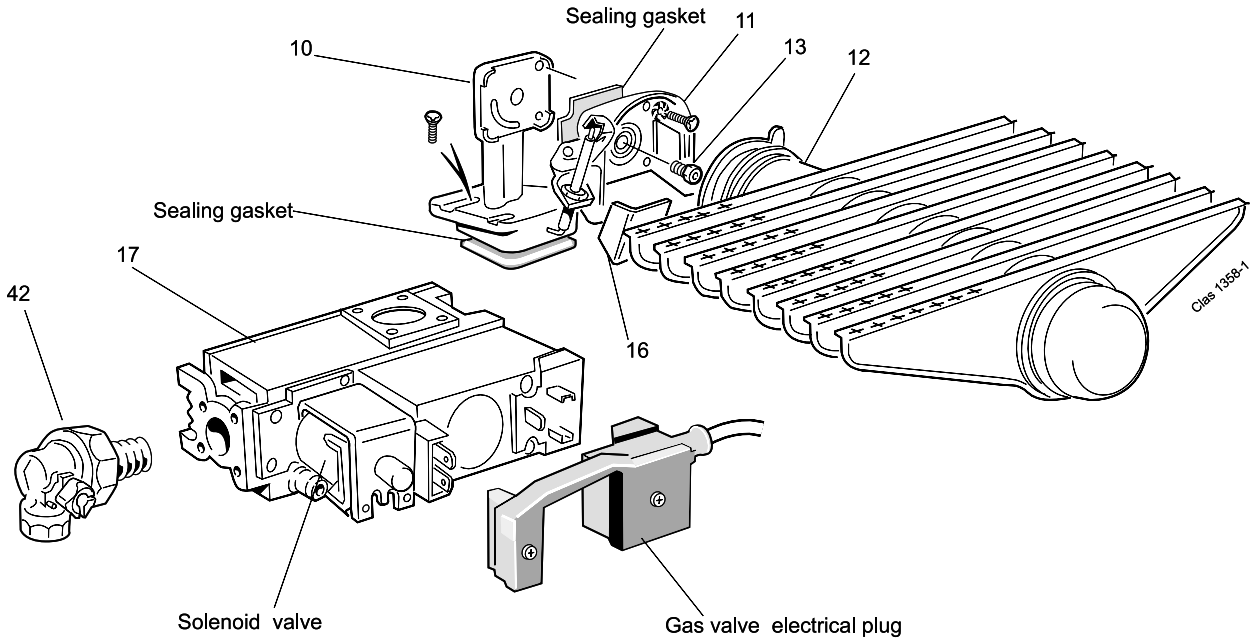
69 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY



70 SHORT PARTS LIST



71 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

10. Burner manifold

11. Air box and pilot assembly.

12. Main burner.

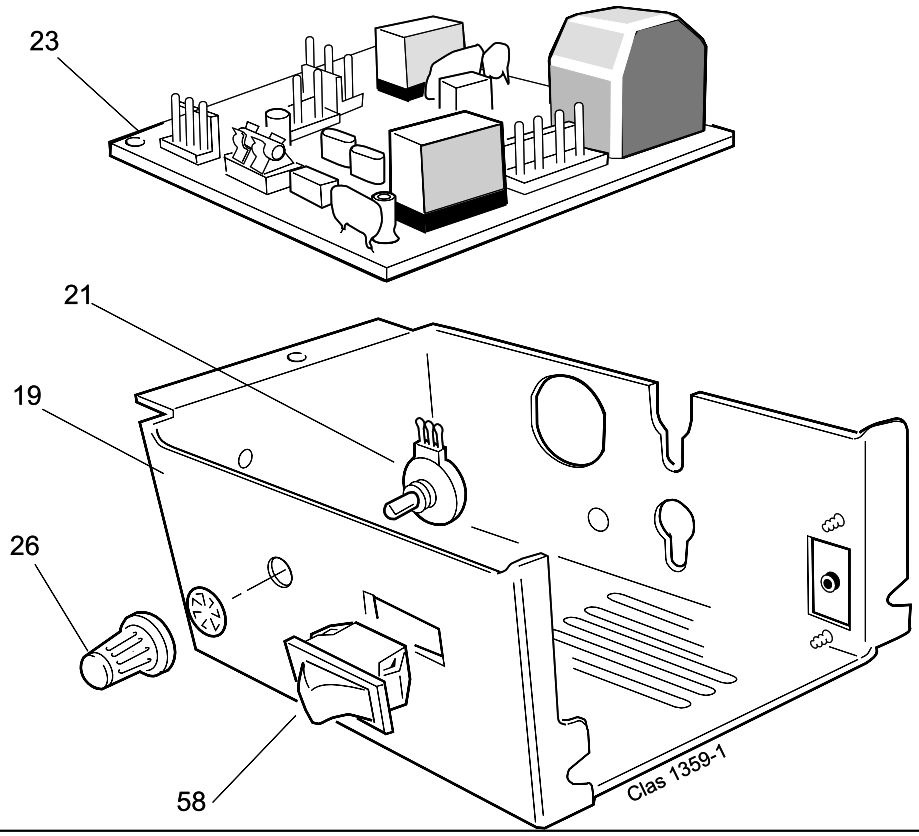
13. Main burner injector.

16. Pilot shield.

17. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

72 CONTROL BOX - Exploded View



LEGEND

19. Control box.

21. Thermostat potentiometer.

23. Printed circuit board.

26. Thermostat knob.

58. Mains on/off switch.

NOTES

NOTES

NOTES

benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01482 498432*

CE 87/BL/43

Natural Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

Caradon Plumbing Limited pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

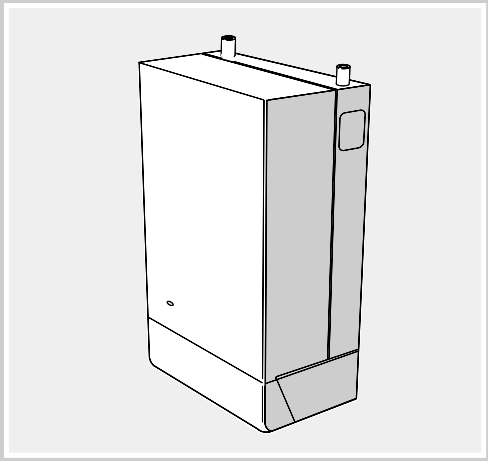
Caradon Plumbing Limited, P.O. Box 103, National Ave, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137. Registered Office: National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN.
A subsidiary of Caradon plc

August 2000 155527 A01

BOILERS Ideal

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

THE IDEAL INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



classic

the wall hung boiler

**Wall hung,
fanned flued,
gas fired boiler**

Classic LXFF 230-280
Classic FF 230-2 100

Ideal BOILERS

Installers guide to domestic central heating boilers

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260	FF 270	FF 280	FF 2 100
Gas supply connection		(in. BSP)	Rc 1/2 (1/2) 1/2" (BSP Female)						
Flow connection			22mm copper				28mm copper (FEMALE)		
Return connection			22mm copper				28mm copper (FEMALE)		
Maximum static water head		m (ft.)	30.5 (100)						
Minimum static water head		m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)						
Electrical supply			230 V 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W						
Fuse rating			External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265						
Water content		litre (gal.)	2.7 (0.6)		3.65 (0.8)		4.65 (1.0)		4.65(1.0)
Dry Weight		kg (lb)	40.9 (90.3)		46.6 (102.8)		52.6 (116.0)		52.6(116)
Maximum installation weight kg (lb)		31.4 (69.3)	37.4 (82.5)		43.1 (95)		43.1(95)		
Boiler size	Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)						
	Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)						
	Depth	mm (in.)	300 (11.8)						
Flue duct diameter		mm (in.)	100 (4.0)						
Flue duct length (max)		m (ft)	3 (9.8)						0.6 (2)

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260	FF 270	FF 280	FF 2 100
Boiler input	MINIMUM	kW	5.6	11.3	15.0	18.5	22.5	26.3	31.6
(Gross)		Btu/h x 1000	19.1	38.5	51.2	63.3	76.9	89.7	107.8
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.15	0.29	0.38	0.49	0.58)	0.67	0.80
		ft^3/h	19.4	37.1	48.7	62.9	73.1	86.3	101
	MID	kW	8.3	13.0	16.7	20.3	24.0	27.8	34.2
		Btu/h x 1000	28.5	44.3	56.85	69.2	82.0	94.9	116.7
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.22	0.34	0.43	0.53	0.62	0.71	0.87
		ft^3/h	28.1	42.7	54.5	67.6	78.8	91.3	110.0
	MAXIMUM	kW	11.0	14.7	18.3	22.0	25.6	29.3	36.6
		Btu/h x 1000	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	125.0
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.28	0.38	0.47	0.57	0.66	0.76	0.95
		ft^3/h	36.1	48.2	60.2	72.3	84.3	96.3	121
Boiler output	MINIMUM	kW	4.4	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6	20.5	24.9
		Btu/h x 1000	15	30	40	50	60	70	85
	MID	kW	6.6	10.3	13.2	16.1	19.0	22.0	27.1
		Btu/h x 1000	22.5	35	45	55	65	75	92.5
	MAXIMUM	kW	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6	20.5	23.4	29.3
		Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60	70	80	100
Burner Setting pressure (HOT)	MINIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	3.3 (1.3)	6.7 (2.7)	9.1 (3.6)	10.0 (4.0)	9.2 (3.7)	10.6 (4.2)	10.4 (4.2)
	MID	mbar (in.w.g.)	7.5 (3.0)	8.7 (3.5)	11.1 (4.4)	12.1 (4.8)	10.4 (4.2)	12.0 (4.8)	12.3 (4.9)
	MAXIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	12.8 (5.1)	11.0 (4.4)	13.5 (5.4)	13.9 (5.6)	12.0 (4.8)	13.2 (5.3)	14.5 (5.8)
Seasonal Efficiency (SEDBUK) *			[76.2]%	[75.8]%	[76.2]%	[76.7]%	[77.1]%	[76.0]%	[76.4]%

*The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings. The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BG plc 0087.

Note. *Gas consumption is calculated using a calorific value of 38.7 MJ/m^3 (1038 Btu/ft^3) gross or 34.9 MJ/m^3 (935 Btu/ft^3) nett*

To obtain the gas consumption at a different calorific value:-

- ***a. FOR L/S*** *- divide the gross heat input (kW) by the gross C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)*
- ***b. FOR FT^3/H*** *- divide the gross heat input (Btu/h) by the gross C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)*

Classic FF

B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 AP 107 94

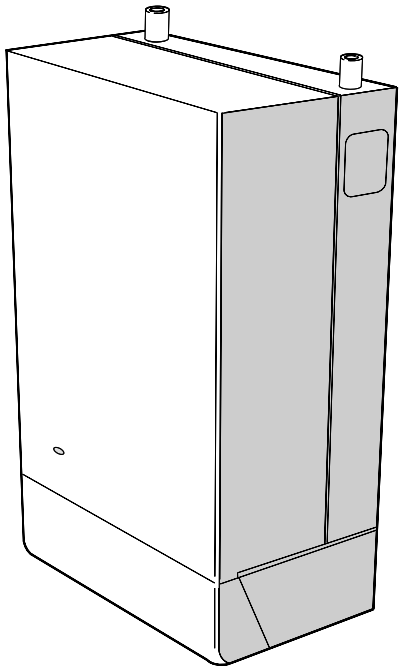
Data Badge: on top of the controls support

Destination Countries: GB and IE

Natural Gas only Appliance type: C_{12} & C_{32}

Models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 230	41 387 01
Classic FF 240	41 387 02
Classic FF 250	41 387 03
Classic FF 260	41 387 04
Classic FF 270	41 387 05
Classic FF 280	41 387 06
Classic FF 2 100	41 349 71

(Classic FF 2 100 is a type C_{12} appliance only)



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} & C_{32} =
A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal or vertical terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is down stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{2H} = An appliance designed for use on 2nd Family gas, Group H only.

CONTENTS

Air Supply 6
Boiler Clearances 5
Boiler Exploded View 9
Burner Exploded View 34
Control Box Exploded View 34
Electrical Connections 20
Electrical Regulations 7
Extension Ducts - Fitting 18
External Controls 20
Fault Finding 32
Flue Installation 6
Rear installation 12
Side installation 15
Gas Safety 4
Gas Supply 6
Initial Lighting 23
Installation 9
Mandatory Requirements 4
Pump 8
Servicing 25
Short List of Parts 33
Spares Replacement 27
System Electrical Diagrams 21
Terminal Guards 6
Water and Systems 7
WaterTreatment 7

BENCHMARK LOG BOOK DETAILS

Boiler	**Page**
Make and model	3
Appliance Serial No. on Data Badge	9
Controls	as applicable
For all boilers	
Flushing to BS.7593	7
Inhibitor	7
Gas inlet working pressure	6
Burner operating pressure	2
Heat input	to be calculated
Temperature differential	measure and record
For combination boilers only	Not applicable
For domestic hot water mode	Not applicable
For condensing boilers	Not applicable
For all boilers:	*complete, sign & hand over to customer*

For assistance see Technical Helpline on the back page

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

INTRODUCTION

The Classic FF230-2 100 is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

Note.

These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation. If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Downward Piping Kit.

Programmer Kit.

Vertex Flue Kit* - for vertical flue connection

Roof Flue Kit*

90° Flue Elbow Kit*

Sealed System Unit - this fits on top of the appliance. Suitable for standard boiler only.

Extension ducts* - up to 3m (118").

Turret Outlet Kit.*

**not available for FF2 100*

Current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations or rules in force.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority. Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.6891 Low pressure installation pipes.

BS.6798 Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5449 Forced circulation hot water systems.

BS.5546 Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd Family Gases).

BS.7593 Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

BS.5440.1 Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5440.2 Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

Health & Safety Document No. 635

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the British Standards Institution for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances -unless covered by these Installation and Servicing instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the BSI Certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

SAFE HANDLING OF SUBSTANCES

Care should be taken when handling the boiler insulation panels which can cause irritation to the skin. No asbestos, mercury or CFCs are included in any part of this boiler.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

Timber Framed Buildings

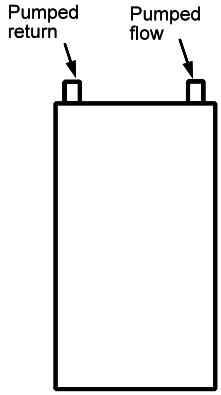
If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IGE/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland, the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower. *continued on page 6*

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS



This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.

FF 270, FF 280 & FF2 100 ONLY

must be fitted with the 22mm x 28mm copper sockets, provided in the Hardware Pack, (or equivalent 22mm x 28mm compression fittings) and the pumped flow and return pipes run in 28mm pipe.

2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing.

Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

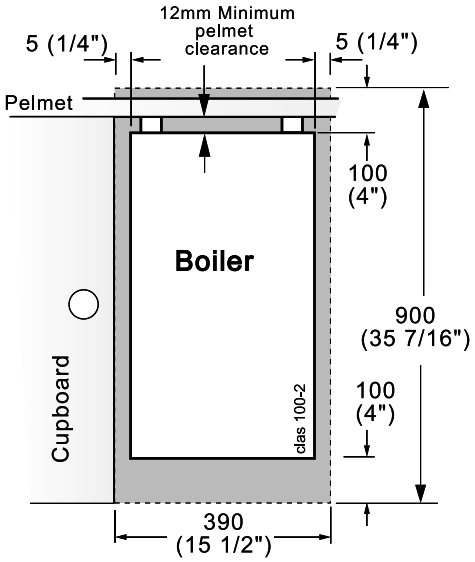
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.

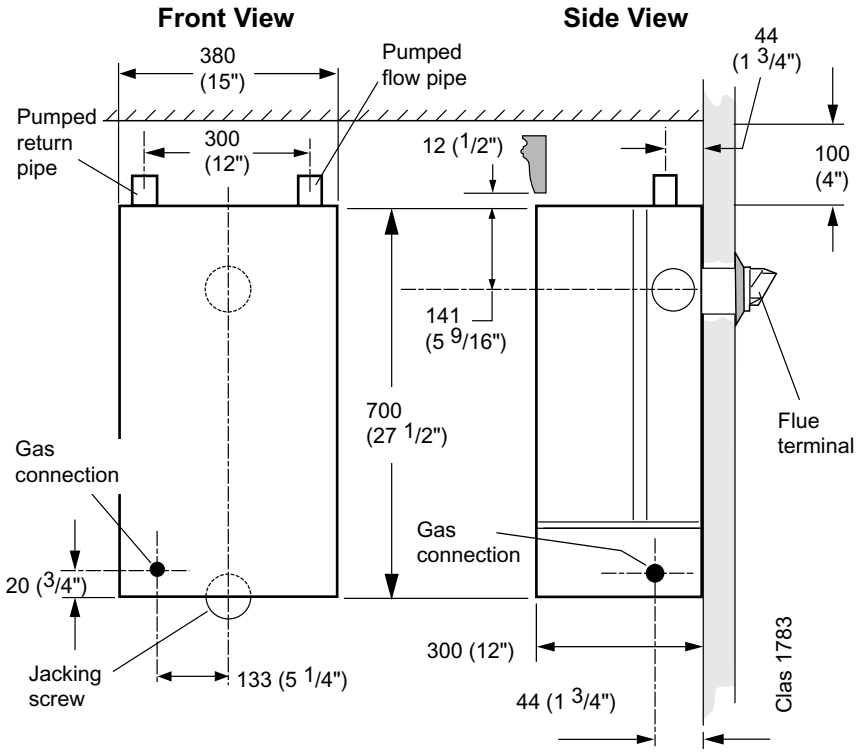
c. If using the Complete Sealed System Unit then refer to the instructions packed with the unit for the necessary clearances.



Front clearance: 450mm (17 3/4") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built in to cupboard is 75 mm (3").

Front View **Side View**



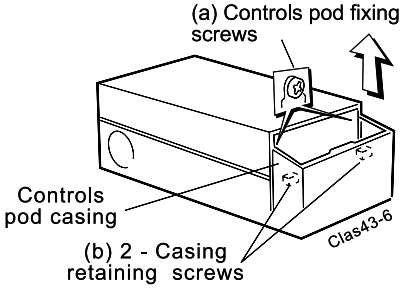
Pelmet restrictions.

If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.



Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler MUST be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler. Refer to 'Air Supply' on page 7.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service refer to the Wall mounting diagram, Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

The local gas supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas. An existing service pipe must NOT be used without prior consultation with the local gas supplier.

The boiler is to be installed only on a gas supply with a governed meter.

A gas meter can only be connected by the local gas supplier or by a local regional contractor.

An existing meter should be checked, preferably by the gas supplier, to ensure that the meter is adequate to deal with the rate of gas supply required. A MINIMUM pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating.

Installation pipes MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 6891. Pipework from the meter to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size. FF2 100 models should be piped in 22mm minimum. The final 1metre may be run in 15mm if it is visible.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance:-

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard. The minimum spacing in Table 3,

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
3. Below eaves	25 mm (1")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	25 mm (1")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm (1")
6. From internal or external corners	25 mm (1")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 75mm in order to allow a terminal guard to be fitted.

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers - ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

7. Where it is essential that the terminal wall plate is fitted, i.e. wall thicknesses over 600mm (23 1/2") or with an inaccurately cut hole, the minimum spacing in Table 3 Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 60mm (2 1/2") in order to allow the terminal wall plate to be fitted.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses. Refer to Frame 8.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/ compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space, cm (in^2)		Air direct from outside, cm (in^2)	
FF230	102	(16)	51	(8)
FF240	135	(21)	68	(11)
FF250	170	(26)	83	(13)
FF260	198	(31)	102	(16)
FF270	231	(36)	116	(18)
FF280	264	(41)	132	(21)
FF2 100	340	(52)	170	(26)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS.6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

Boilers not fitted to a sealed system must be vented.

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug, which is provided, to drain the BOILER ONLY, in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistance of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.
Maximum boiler operating temperature should be 82 $^{\circ}$C (180 $^{\circ}$F).

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size	FF	230	240	250	260	270	280	2 100
Boiler Output	kW	8.8	11.7	14.6	17.6	20.5	23.4	29.3
	Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60	70	80	100
Water Flow Rate	l/min	11.4	15.2	19.0	22.8	26.5	30.3	38.0
	gal/h	150	200	250	300	350	400	500
Pressure Loss	mbar	22.0	20.4	31.5	41.7	54.8	77.0	106
	in wg	8.9	8.3	12.6	16.7	22.0	30.9	42.5

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd. recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-
Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd., Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel 0870 5601 5000 or
Betz Dearborn Ltd., Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

IMPORTANT. Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd. INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators, or two port valves without end switches, then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

WARNING. The appliance MUST be efficiently earthed.
Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower. See Frame 36 for details.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

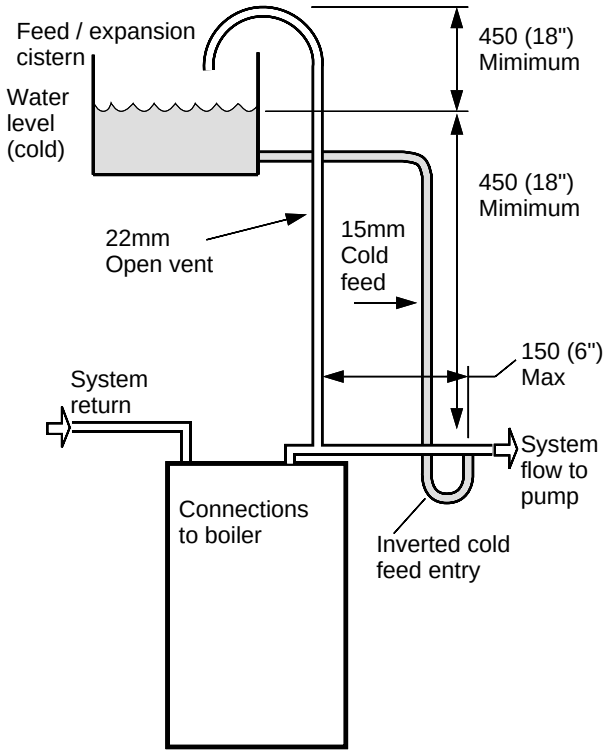
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") - of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grundfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note. *A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (refer to BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.*



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

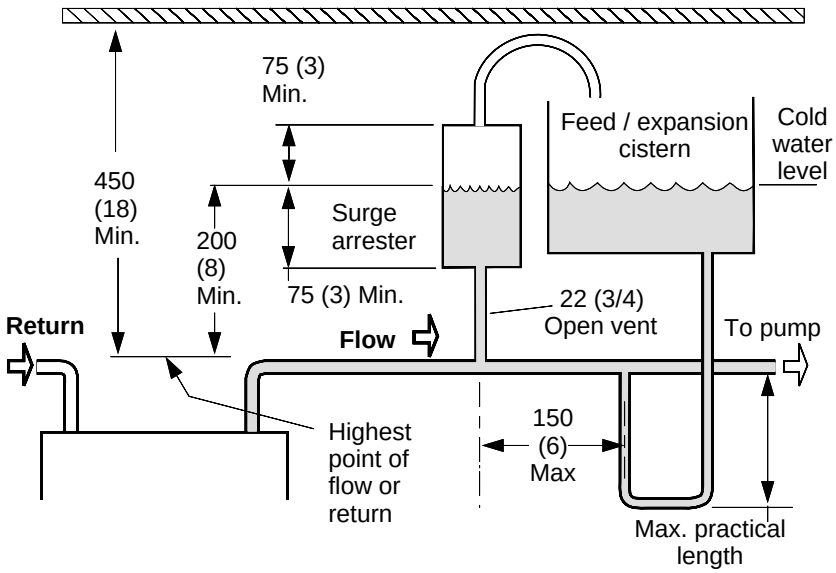
The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.
2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.
3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with*

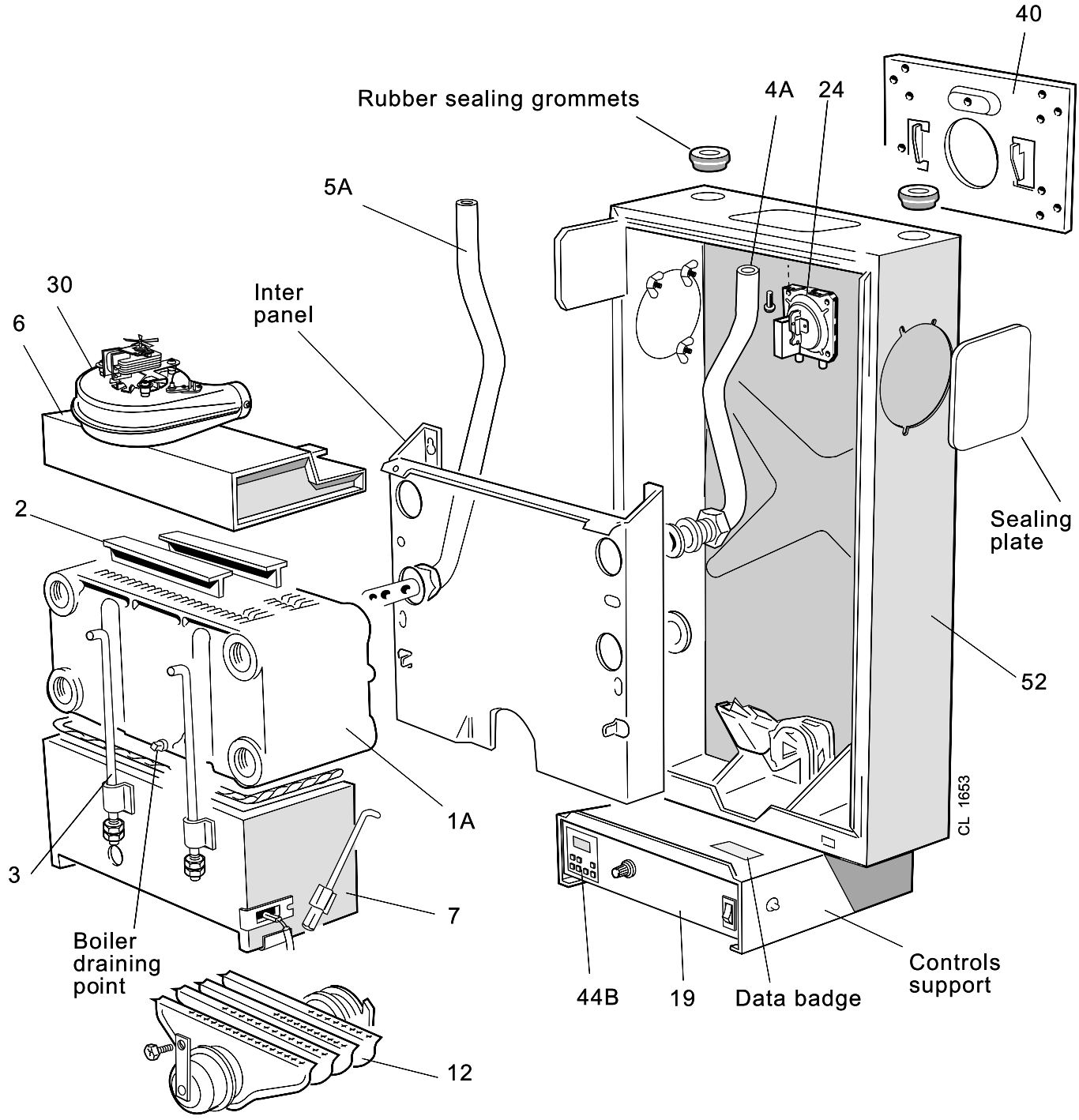
Minimum Requirements



All dimensions in mm (in.). **N.B.** Imperial dimensions are approximate

5 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 230 shown



LEGEND

1A. Heat exchanger.

2. Flue baffles.

3. Tie rods.

4A. Pumped flow pipe.

5A. Pumped return pipe.

6. Collector hood assembly.

7. Combustion chamber.

12. Main burner.

19. Control box .

24. Pressure switch.

30. Fan.

40. Wall mounting plate.

44B. Programmer (optional).

52. Back panel.

6 UNPACKING

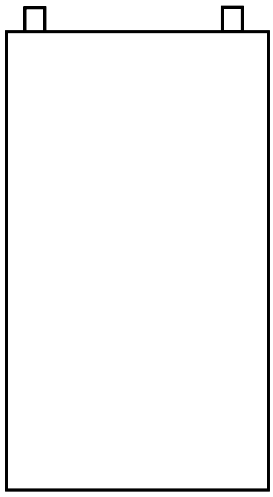
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extras, if ordered (Downward Piping Kit, Programmer Kit, complete Sealed System Unit, Extension Duct Kit D, Vertex Flue Kit G, Roof Flue Kit H and 90° Flue Elbow Kit F) are available in separate boxes.

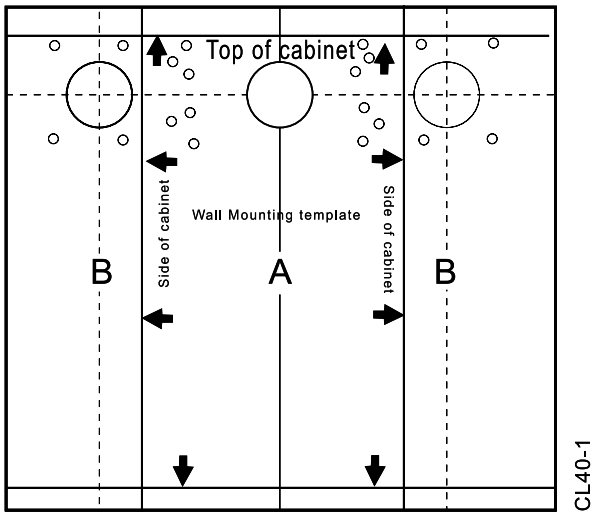
Unpack and check the contents.

Pack A Contents

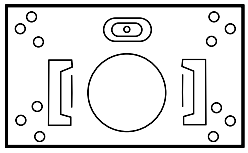
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube - 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring - 1 off



Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



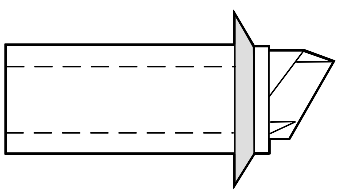
Wall mounting plate

Hardware Pack Contents

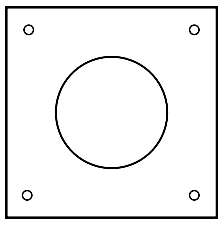
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug, 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- 22mm x 28mm copper reducing socket (FF 270, FF 280 and FF 2 100 ONLY), 2 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 Hx. Hd. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 2 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy., 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



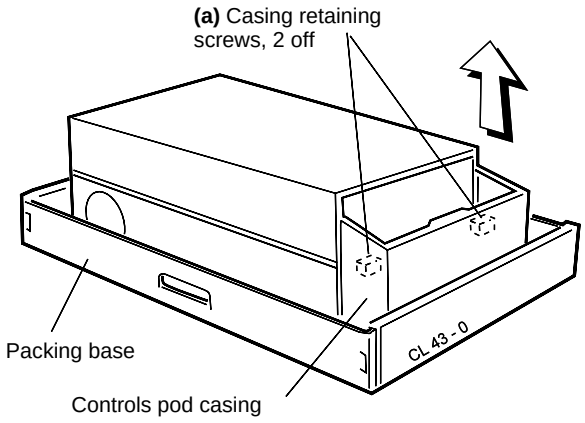
Flue terminal



Terminal wall plate

7 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

1. Unpack the boiler.
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).

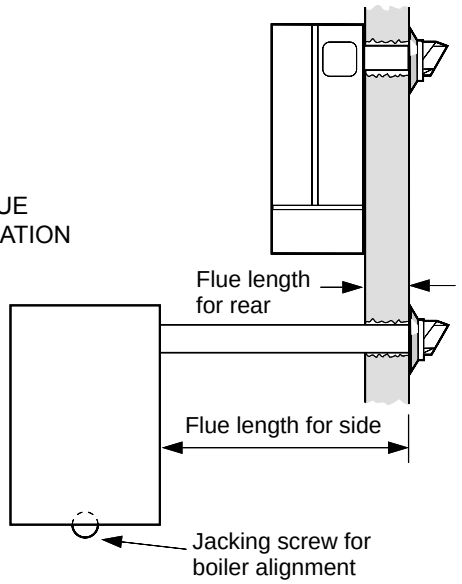


8 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST IMPORTANT that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.

REAR FLUE INSTALLATION

SIDE FLUE INSTALLATION



FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D*: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

1. A maximum of 2 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

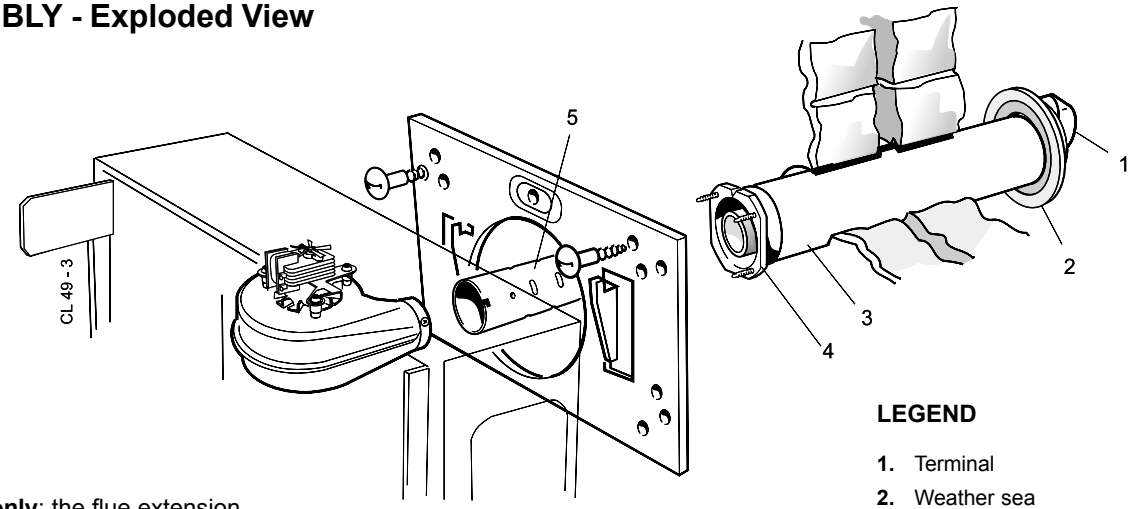
Note.
Vertex and roof flue kits are available as optional extras for vertical flue installation, supplied with separate fitting instructions.

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	150308
600 to 1550*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	150308+153883
1550 to 2500*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	150308+ 153883, 2 off
2500 to 3000*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	150308+ 153883, 3 off

* Not for FF 2 100 model

9 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.
2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



IMPORTANT.
On FF 2 100 models only: the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

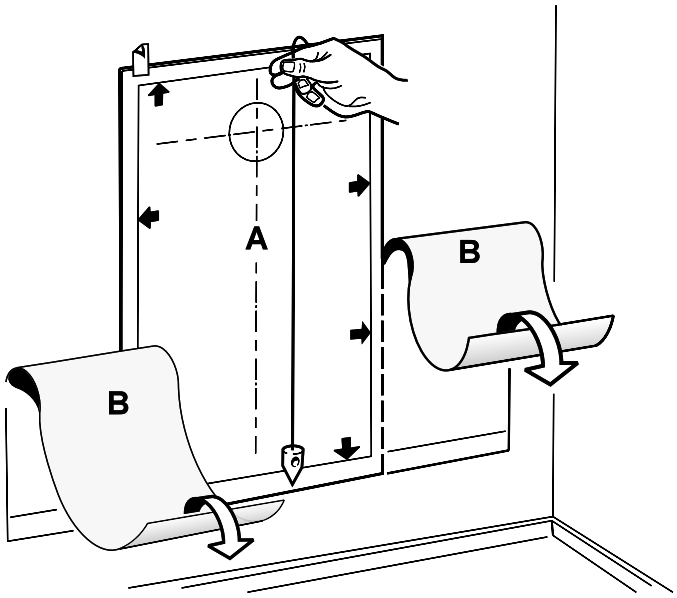
LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing ring
5. Flue extension tube

10 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation. Care must be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.*

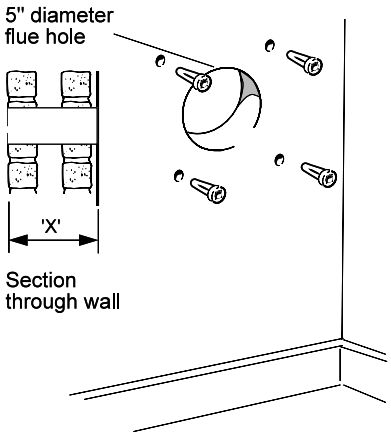
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape the templates into the selected position.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **b.** The position of the flue duct hole.
   - **c.** Downward pipe routing bracket screw positions.
5. Remove the templates from the wall.



11 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the two wall faces.
2. Drill 4 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill. If the stand-off brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.
3. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



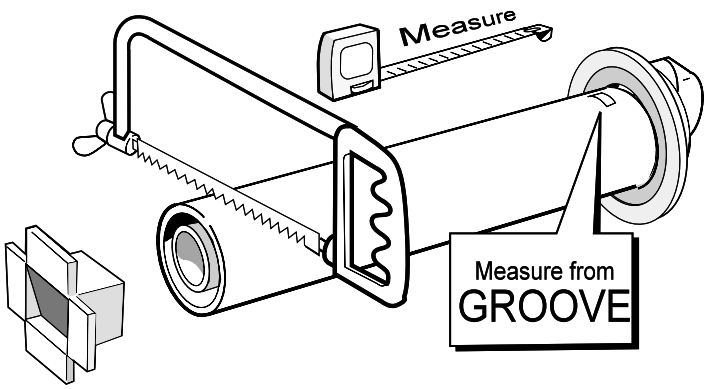
Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided.*
The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.

12 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

Note. *If the stand-off brackets are used it is essential that 30mm is added to the measured wall thickness when marking the flue (to allow for the thickness of the brackets).*

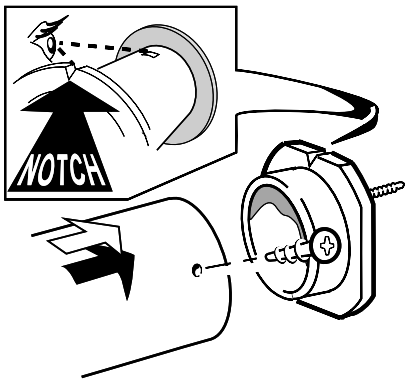
1. Measure and note the wall thickness X.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length X, using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.



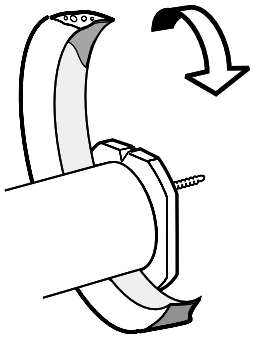
13 FITTING THE BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.

   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

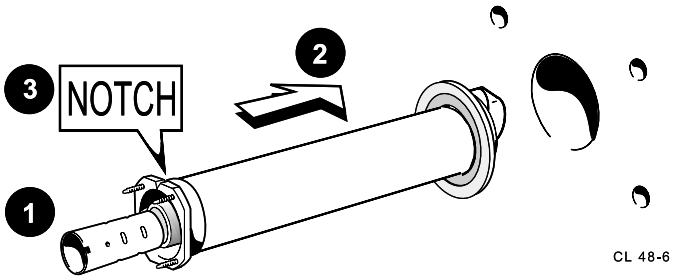


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self-tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self-adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



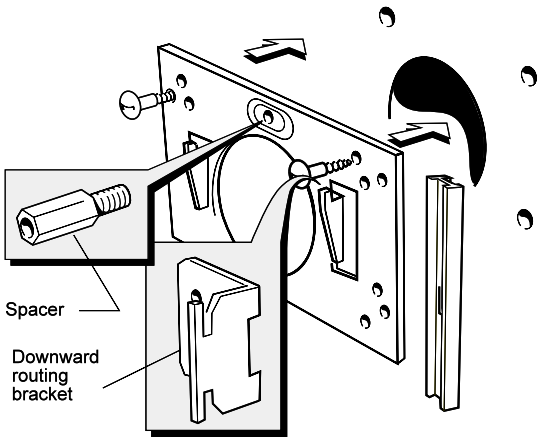
14 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



15 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If downward routing of pipes is required then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



REAR FLUE OUTLET

16 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Note. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack. For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

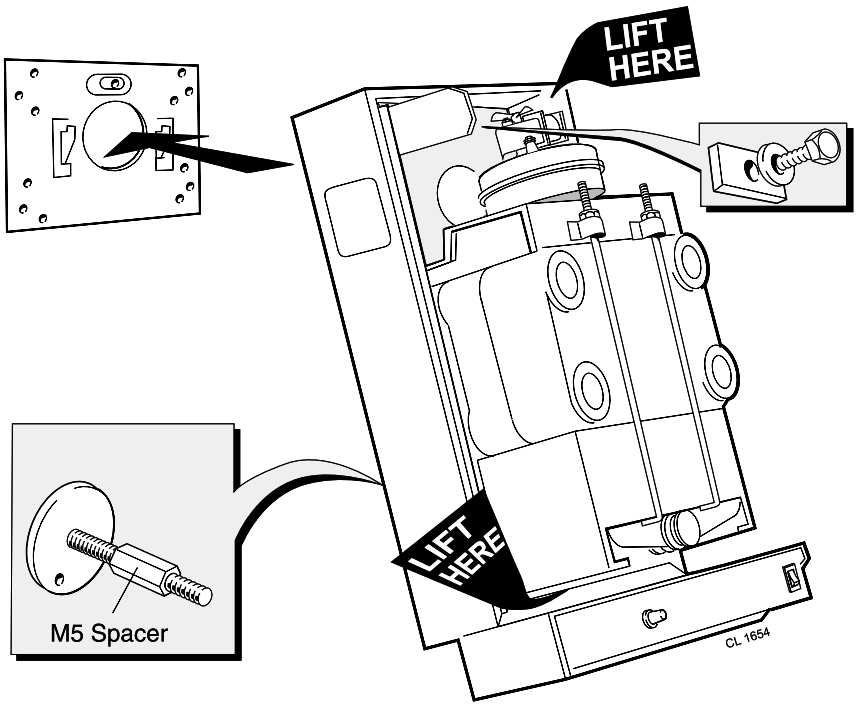
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the M8 screw, check the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.



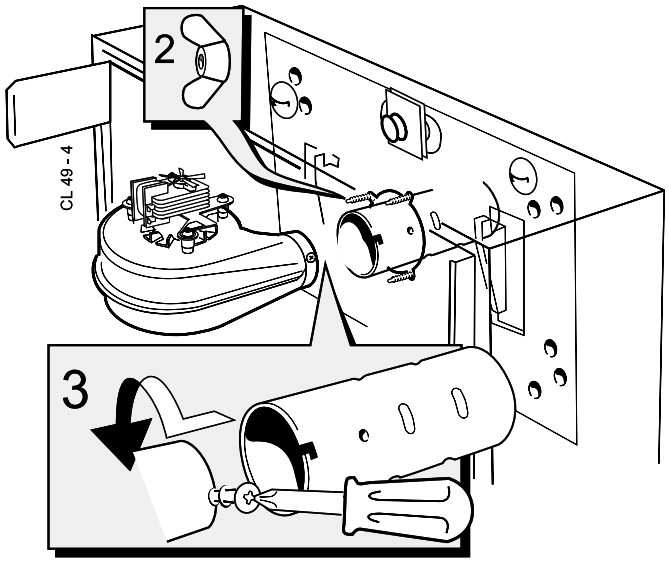
17 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the wall mounting plate and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan. Locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

IMPORTANT
On FF 2 100 models only: the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

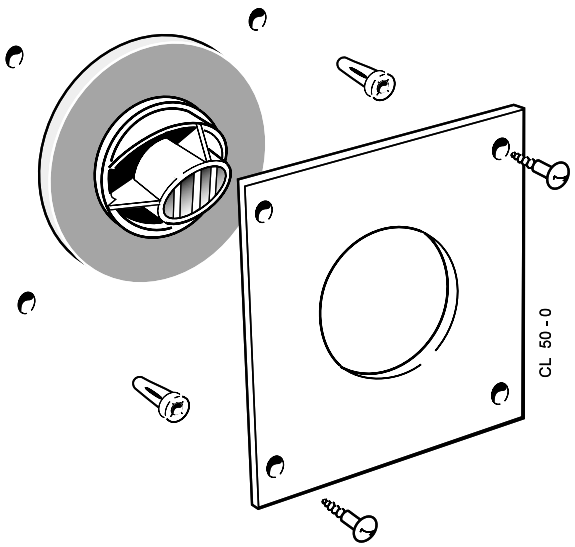


18 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 3.*

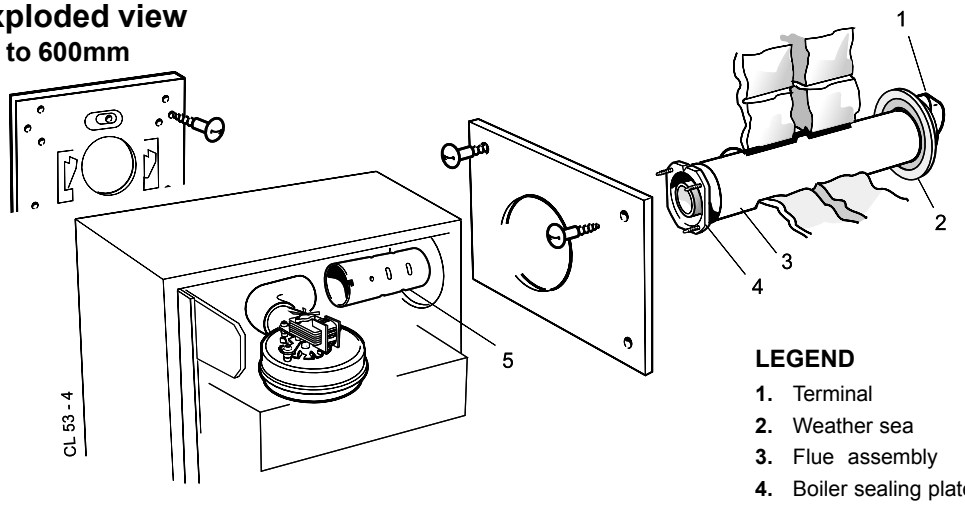


19 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 8.

2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.



LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing plate
5. Flue extension tube

IMPORTANT.
On FF 2 100 models only; the flue extension tube includes an air deflector ring.

20 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation.*
If the flow and return pipes are to be routed down behind the boiler the downward routing pipe brackets, supplied with the Downward Piping Kit, must be used. These brackets are secured to the wall mounting plate and it is essential to use only those holes as shown on the wall mounting template.
Care MUST be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.

1. Separate the templates.

2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.

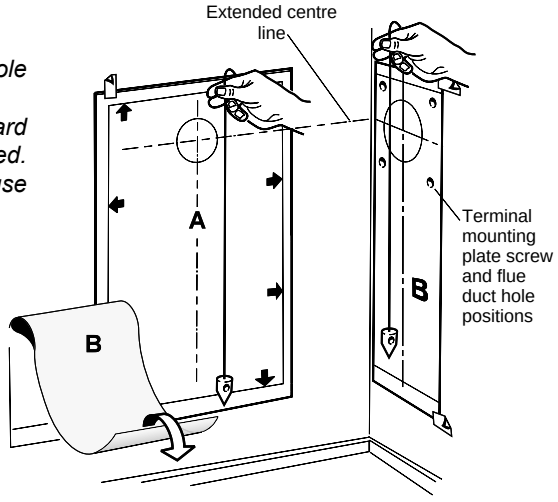
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.

4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:

a. The 4 wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). If the downward routing pipe brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.

b. The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.

c. The position of the flue duct hole (ensure that the correct centre is marked depending on whether the downward routing pipe brackets are used or not).



Note. *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*

d. The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.

5. Remove both templates from the wall.

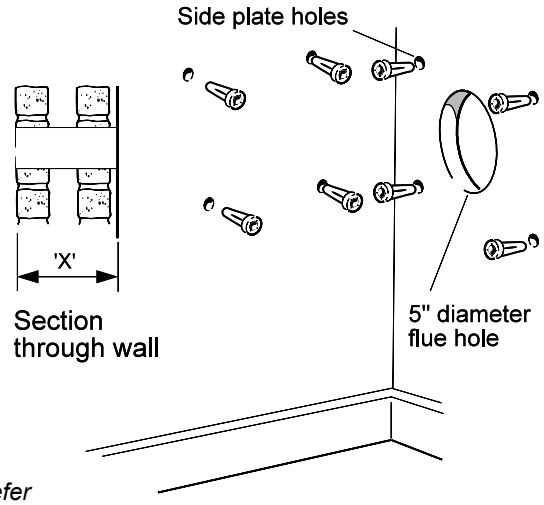
21 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.

2. Drill 4 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.

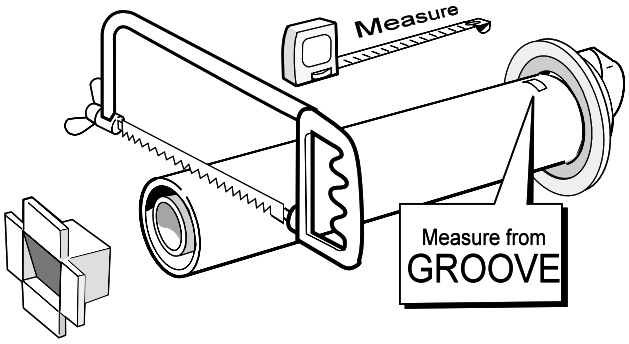
3. Drill 4 holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate.



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

22 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

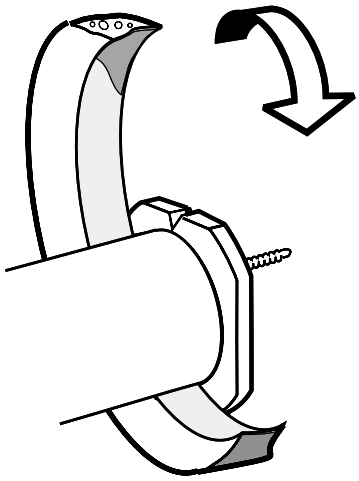
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall). Refer to Frame 9.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard duct ring for support and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard duct ring and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm, refer to Frames 32 & 33 - Flue extension ducts.

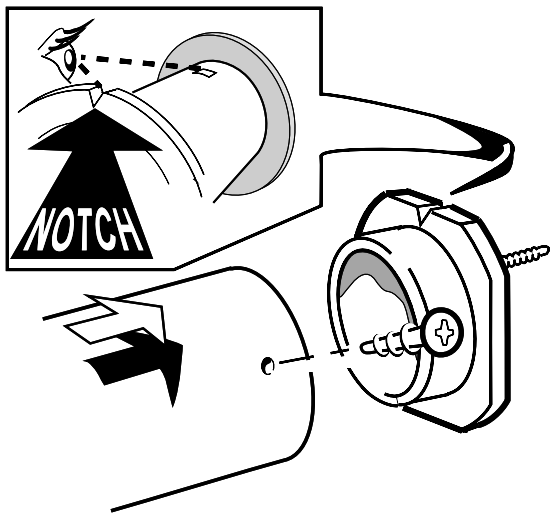
23 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self-adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



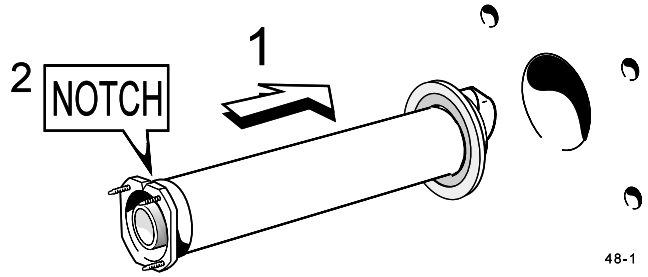
24 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



25 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

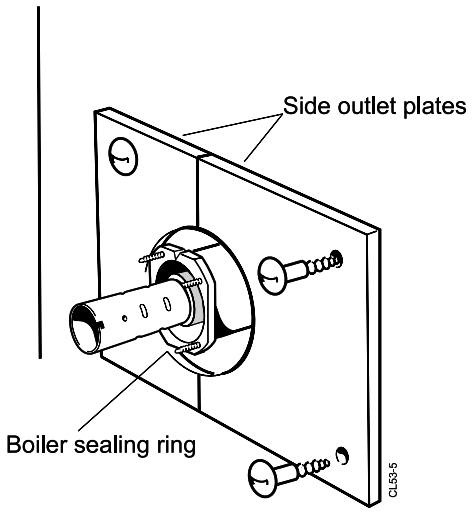


Flue assembly

26 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

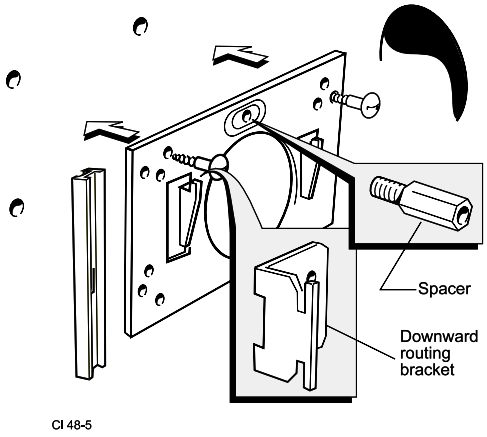
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



27 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If downward routing of pipes is required then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



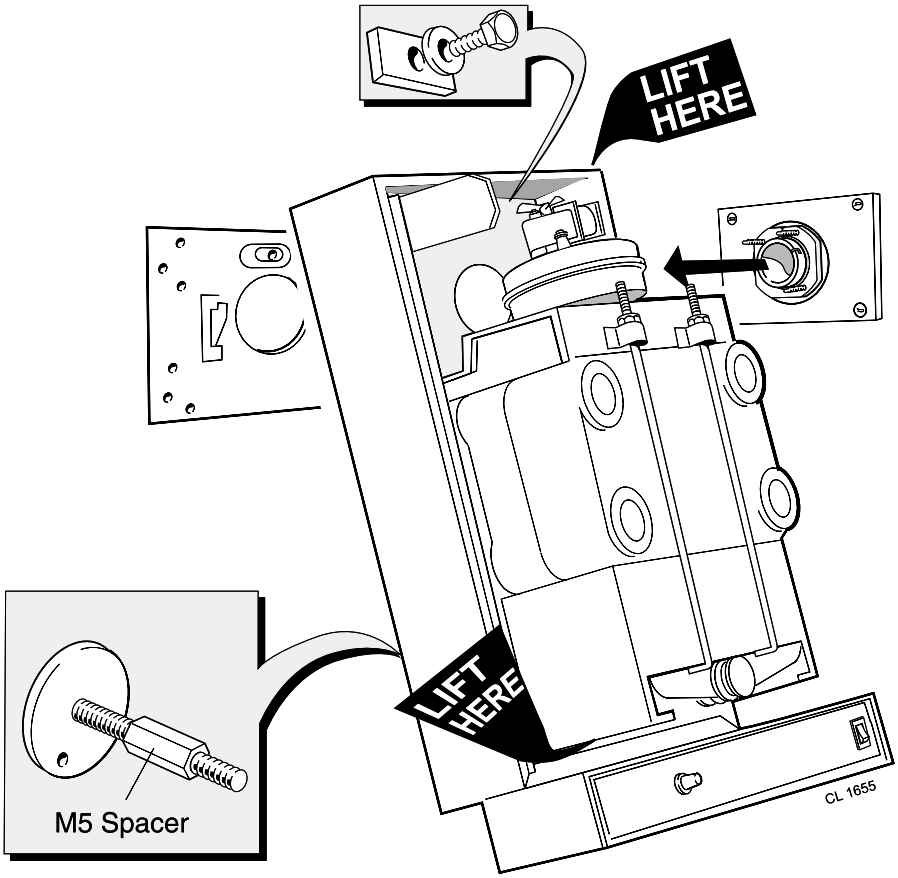
28 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Notes **1.** *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack.*
2. *For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner/ controls for lifting.
3. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

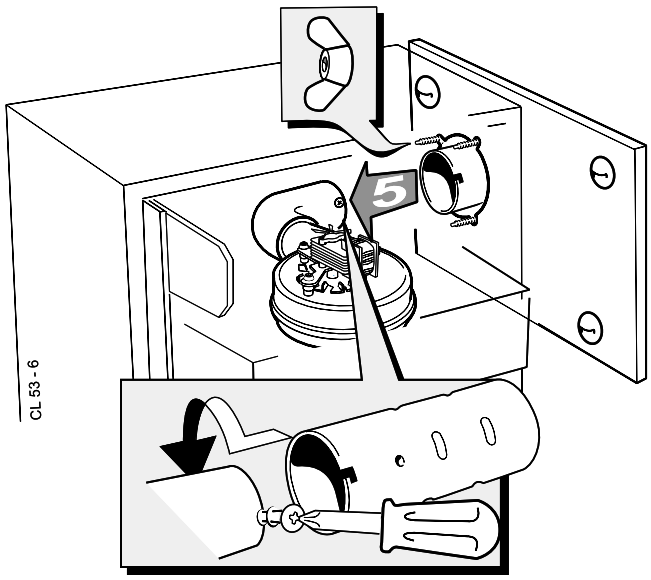
Note. *Before fully tightening the M8 screw check the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



29 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

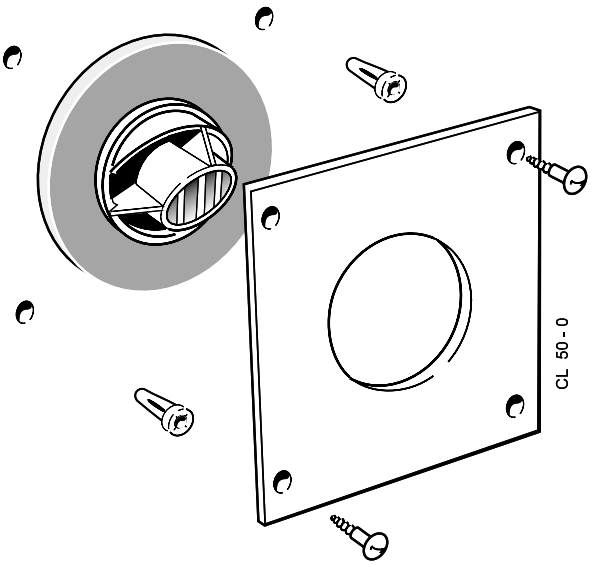


30 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

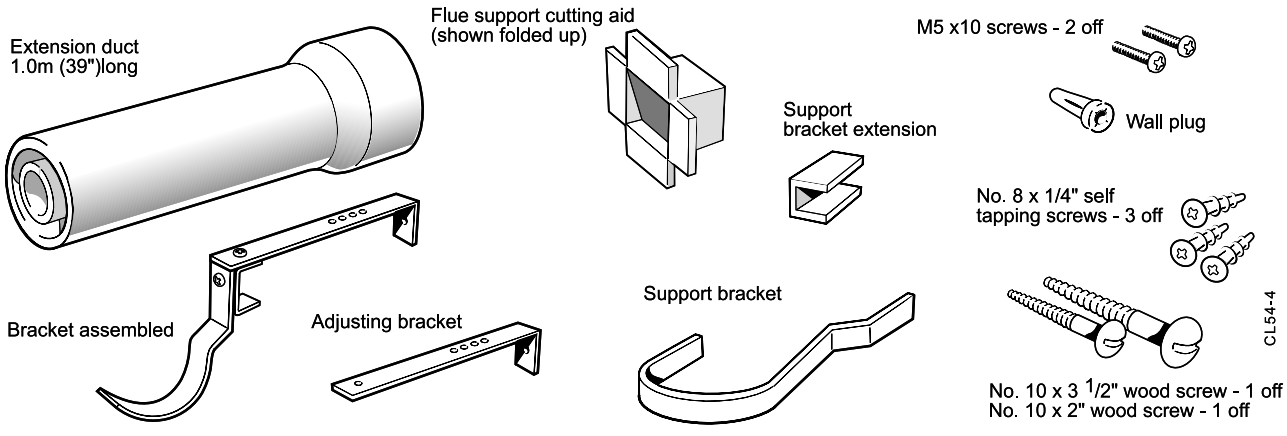
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the contents list on Page 4.*



31 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm (Not for FF 2 100 model)

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents.



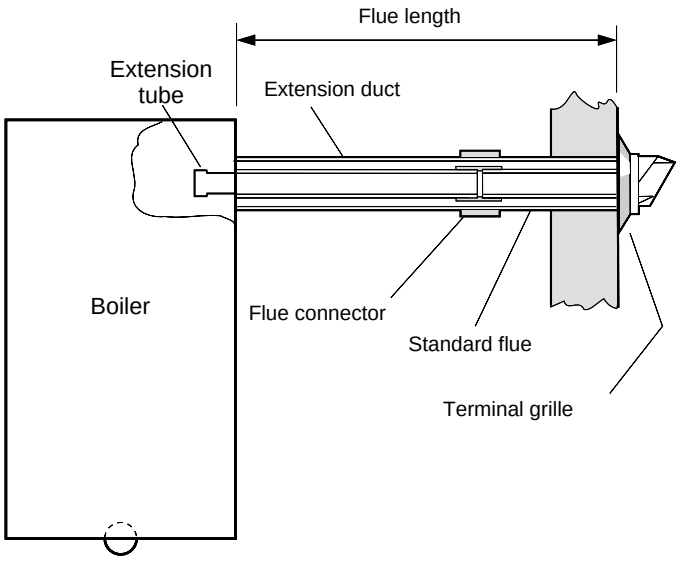
32 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

Note. *Side flue shown.*

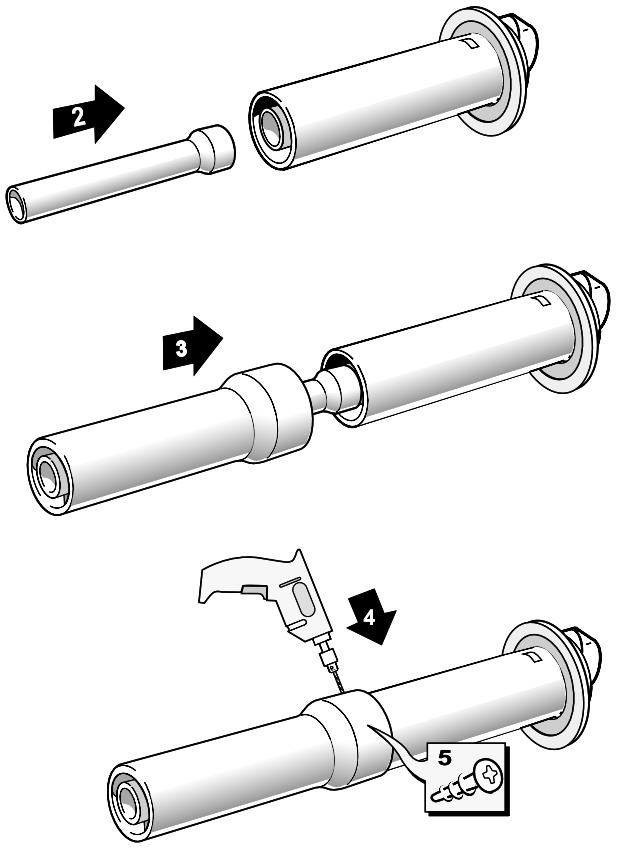
1. A *maximum* of 2 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater length than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 8
600 to 1550*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	see Frame 8
1550 to 2500*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	see Frame 8
2500 to 3000*	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	see Frame 8



* Not for FF 2 100 model

33 FITTING THE KIT



REP932 - 2

1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill 3 - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screws provided to fix the air duct in position.
6. Repeat steps 1-5 if a second flue extension is required.

34 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 6.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

35 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

36 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

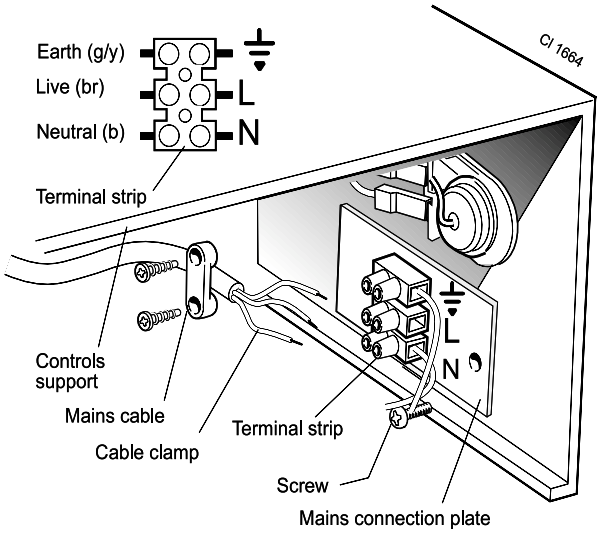
WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

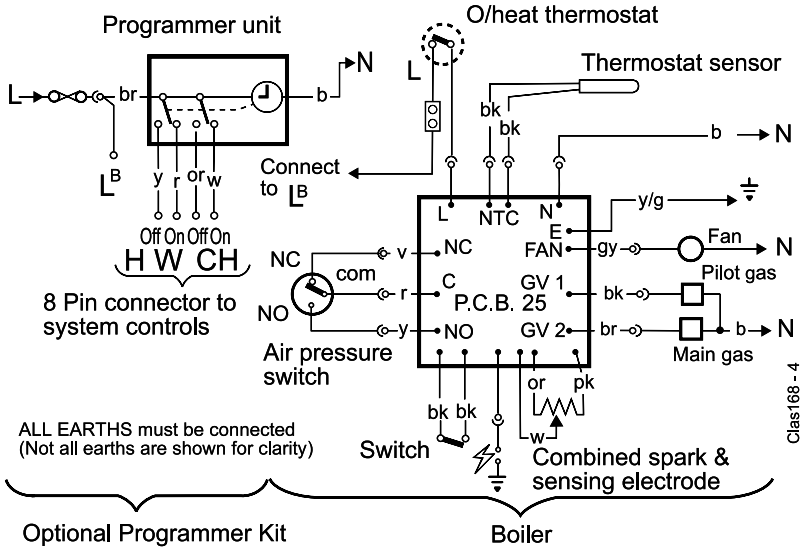
All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulated & sheathed cable, not less than 0.75mm² (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The means of isolation must be accessible to the user after installation.

LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green



Flow wiring diagram



Note. *If the optional Programmer Kit is to be fitted refer to the instructions provided with the kit and Frame 37.*

1. Remove the control box securing screws. Swing the box down into the servicing position. Refer to Frame 44.
2. Route the mains cable into the box from the RHS of the boiler.
3. Connect the live, neutral and earth wires into the terminal strip as shown.
4. Secure the mains lead with the cable clamp.
5. On completion of all wiring connections, relocate the control box and secure.

37 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 39-41 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 39-41.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

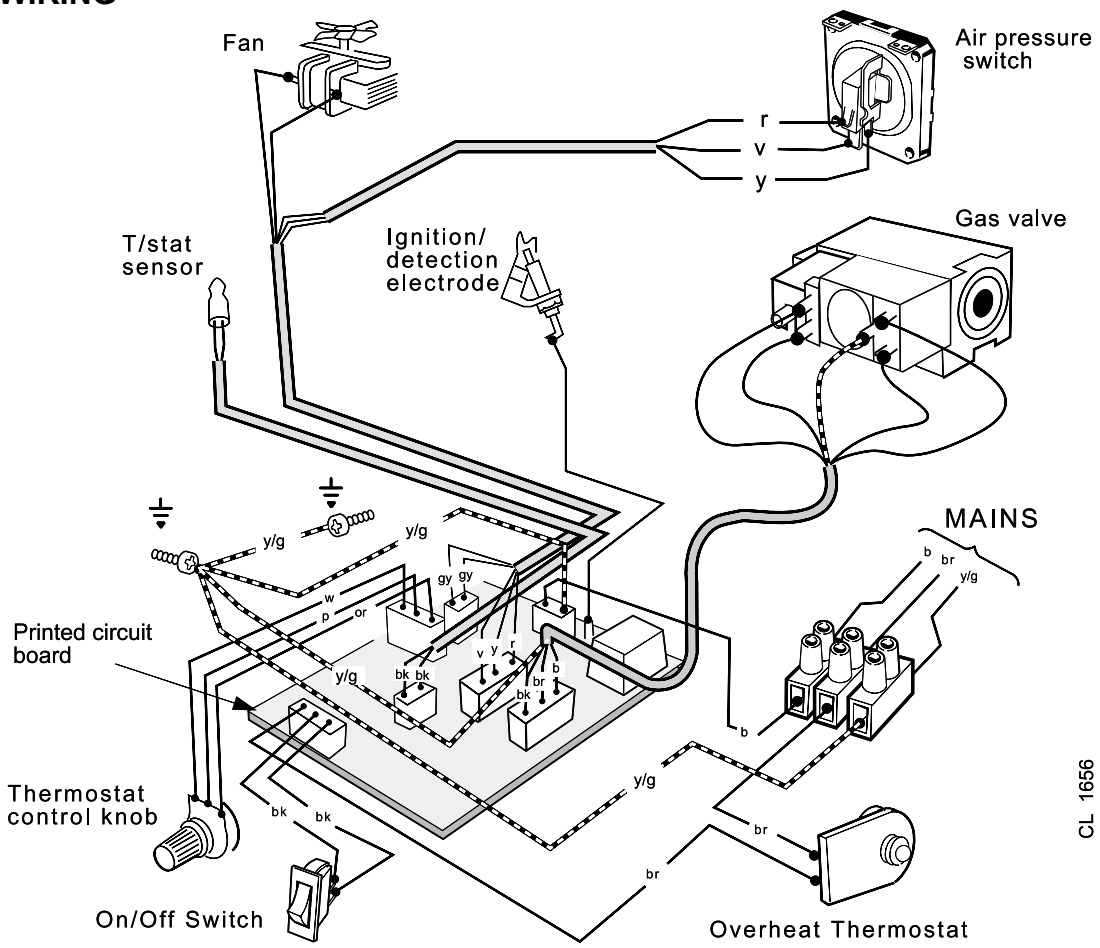
1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 41.
3. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
4. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

38 PICTORIAL WIRING



LEGEND

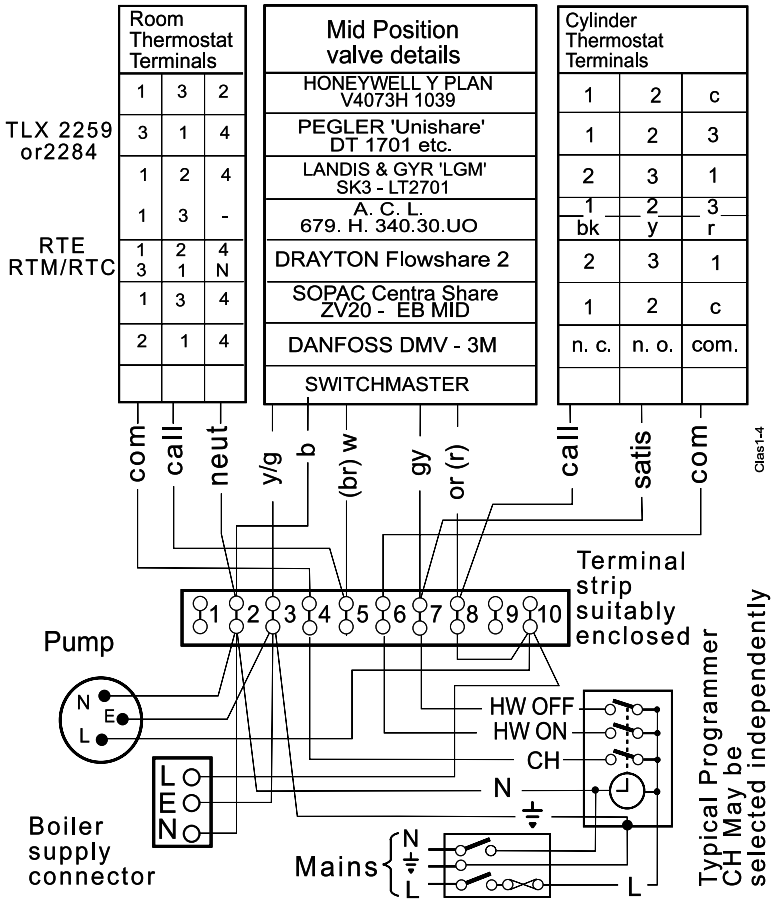
b	blue
bk	black
br	brown
r	red
y	yellow
w	white
or	orange
v	violet
p	pink
gy	grey
y/g	yellow/green

39 MID POSITION VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation but the wiring differs slightly - see the manufacturer's literature.*



LEGEND

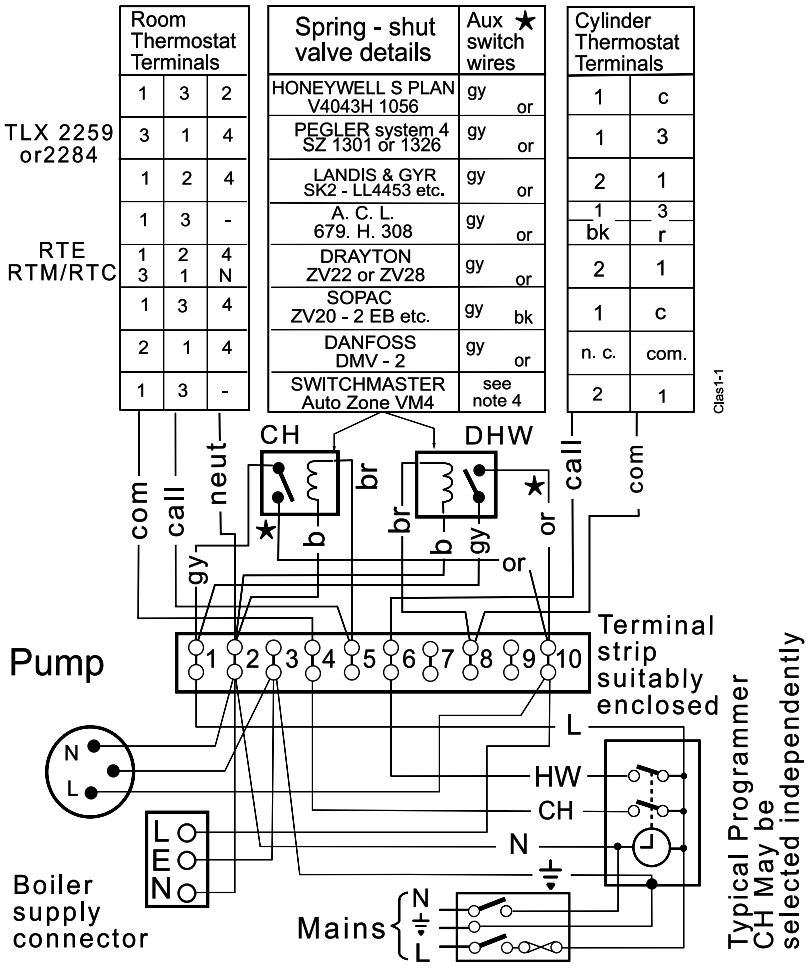
b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**gy**	grey

40 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

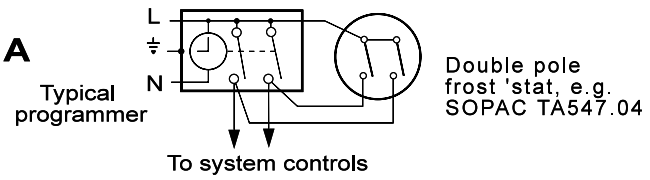
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey and orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

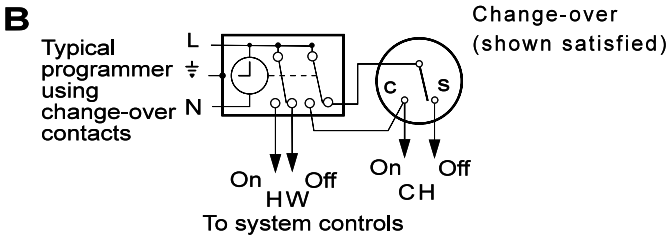


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**gy**	grey
br	brown	**y/g**	yellow/green
r	red	**or**	orange
y	yellow	**v**	violet
		pk	pink

41 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

42 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

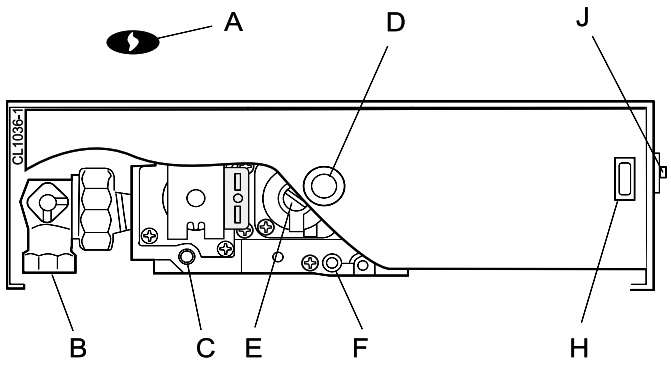
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

43 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

- **A** Sightglass.
- **B** Gas service cock.
- **C** Inlet pressure test point.
- **D** Thermostat knob
- **E** Main burner pressure adjuster.
- **F** Burner pressure test point.
- **H** Boiler mains on/off switch.
- **J** Overheat thermostat reset button.

TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains On/Off switch is OFF.
3. If the boiler output is to be set to minimum or mid, affix the appropriate indicator label supplied in the hardware pack to the data badge, located on the controls support.
4. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**
   The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls support casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws.

   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint.
   Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.

   If the Sealed System Unit is fitted remove the unit casing in order to inspect the top casing seal.

   To gain access to the gas valve:

   a. Remove the controls support casing. Release the controls support front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

   b. Remove the control box securing screws and swing it down into the servicing position. See diagram B.
5. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
6. Swing the control box back into its working position.
7. Press the overheat thermostat reset button (J).
8. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
9. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position 6 and the boiler Mains On/Off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross-light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
10. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
11. Operate the for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
12. The boiler is pre-set at the factory to its highest nominal rating but can be range rated to suit the system design requirements. Refer to Table 2 (page 2):

    a. Set the mains On/Off switch to OFF.

    b. Switch the electricity supply OFF.

    c. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

    d. Remove the main burner adjuster cover.

    e. Turn the adjusting screw *clockwise* to INCREASE the pressure, or *anticlockwise* to DECREASE the pressure.

    f. Swing the control box back into its working position.

    g. Switch the electricity supply ON.

    h. Set the mains On/Off switch to ON and check the new setting pressure.
13. If necessary repeat steps 12a to h until the required pressure is achieved. Record this value in the Benchmark log book.
14. Set the main On/Off switch to OFF.
15. Switch the electricity supply OFF.
16. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
17. Refit the main burner pressure adjuster cover.
18. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test point. Ensure a gas tight seal is made.

44 INITIAL LIGHTING - continued

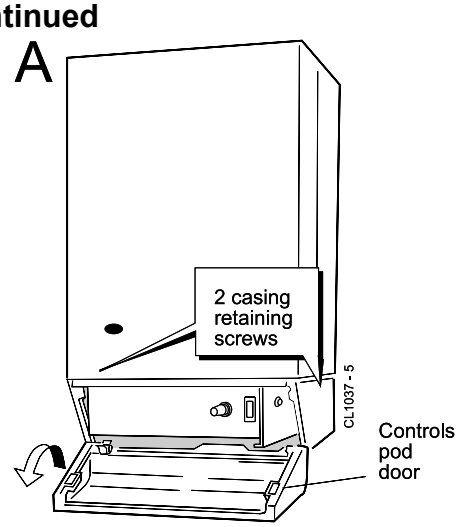
19. Swing the control box back into its working position and secure.

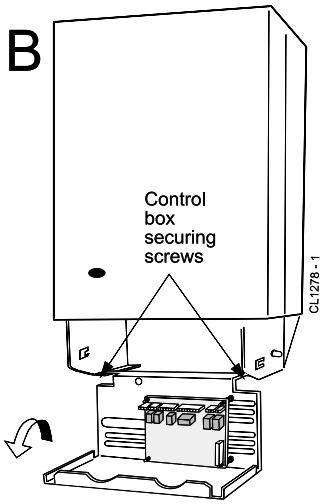
20. Remove the boiler casing.

21. Refit the controls support to the boiler casing and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.

22. Refit the complete casing to the boiler.

23. Close the pod door.





45 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.

2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved.
Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.

3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.

4. Water Circulating System

a. With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.

b. With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down, in order to complete the flushing process.

c. Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.

d. Balance the system.

5. Finally, set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations.

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING. The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

46 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations or rules in force.

2. Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.

3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.

4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.
Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.

5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.

6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and a registered CORGI installer consulted.

7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.

8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.

9. After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the *benchmark* appliance log book and leave this with the customer.

10.. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a CORGI registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

47 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary.
The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually. It is the law that any service work must be carried out by CORGI registered installer**.**

As the installer you may wish to undertake the service contract yourself or alternatively offer to the customer the benefits of the Caradon Ideal Services, details of which are outlined in the household pack supplied with this boiler.

a. Light the boiler and carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults. Operate the boiler for at least 20 minutes. Check the gas consumption.

b. Connect a suitable gas analyser to the sampling point on the top RHS of the back panel. For correct boiler operation the CO/CO_2 content of the flue gas should not be greater than 0.004 ratio. If this is the case and the gas input is at least 90% of the nominal, then no further action need be taken. If not, proceed to paragraph **c**.

c. Clean the main burner. Refer to Frame 51.

d. Clean the heat exchanger. Refer to Frame 50.

e. Clean the main and pilot injectors. Refer to Frame 51.

f. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

g. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

h. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 48 to 52 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING.
Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

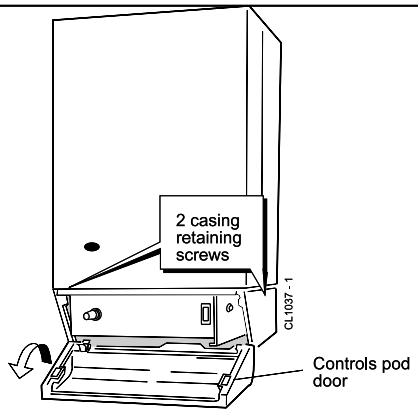
Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed. Refer to Frame 48.*

48 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

1. If the **Classic Sealed System Unit** is fitted lift off the casing.

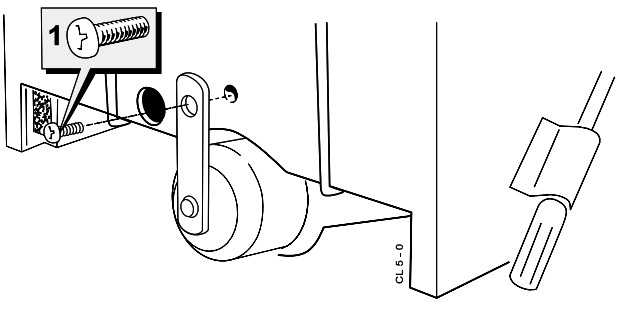
2. Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the pack panel. Retain the casing in a safe place. Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 (page 5) should be followed.

3. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



49 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

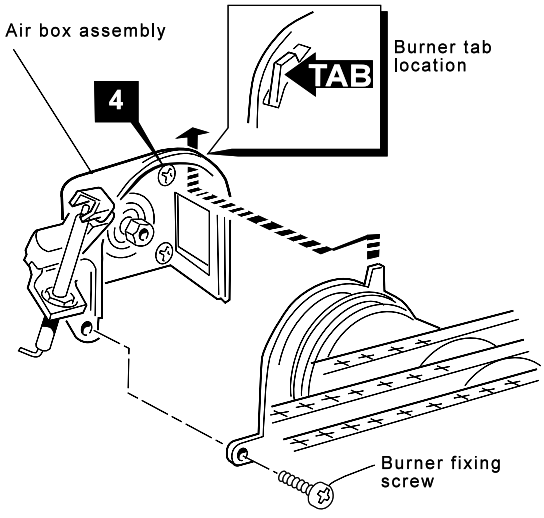
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove the burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.



2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the 4 screws retaining the air box/pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly.



50 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.

2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue
Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side or top flue
Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

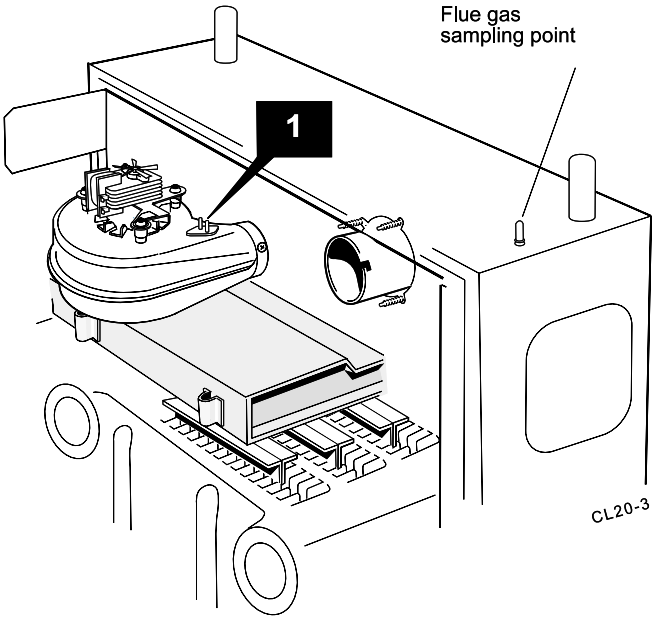
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.

5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.

6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.

7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.

8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.

10. Re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

51 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head (ensuring the flame ports are unobstructed) and remove any debris that may have collected.
Note. *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*

2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.

3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.

4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

a. The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 58 for removal details.

b. The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.

c. The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.

d. The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.

e. The spark gap is correct (Frame 58). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

52 RE-ASSEMBLY

Re-assemble the boiler in the following order.

1. Refit the flue baffles.

2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally on to the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.

3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.

4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.

5. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 34 & 36.

6. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 55.

7. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock and pressure test point.

8. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 43, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.

9. Close the controls pod door.

53 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If, after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 58) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting', Frame 43.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input. Any required adjustments should be made by using the pressure adjustment screw.

Refer to 'initial Lighting', Frame 43.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

54 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.

2. Turn OFF the gas supply.

3. Remove the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 48.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding, the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate ignition operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

55 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

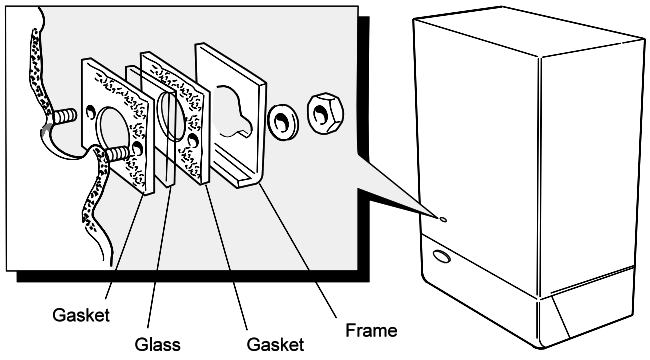
1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Unfasten the 2 nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.

3. When fixing the new assembly ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.

4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.

6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 52.



56 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.

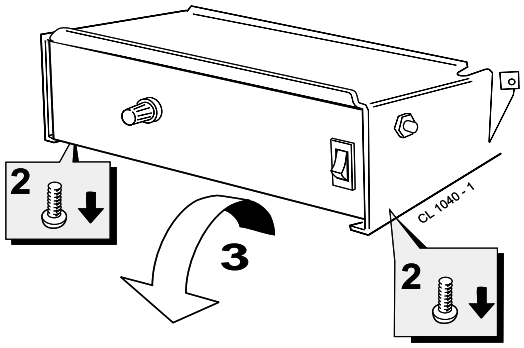
2. Remove the control box fixing screws.

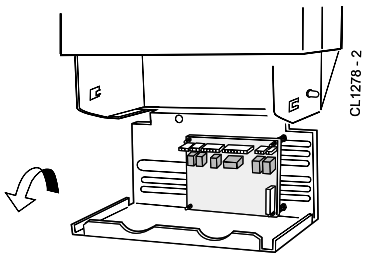
3. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

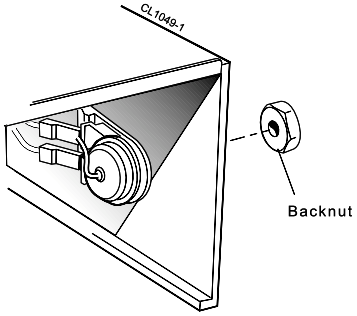
4. Pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Withdraw the thermostat phial from the heat exchanger pocket.

5. Fit the new thermostat and re-assemble in reverse order.

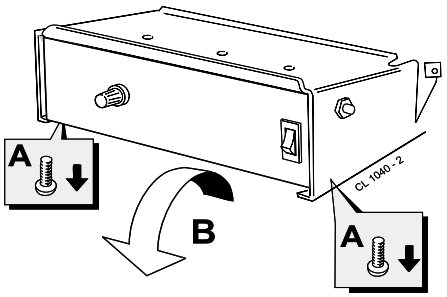
6. Check the operation of the boiler.







57 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD and ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT



Refer also to Frame 54.

A. Remove the fixing screws

B. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

Thermostat control

1. Pull the knob off the shaft.

2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.

3. Pull off the Molex connector from the printed circuit board.

4. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

Thermistor sensor lead

5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.

6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.

7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.

8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.

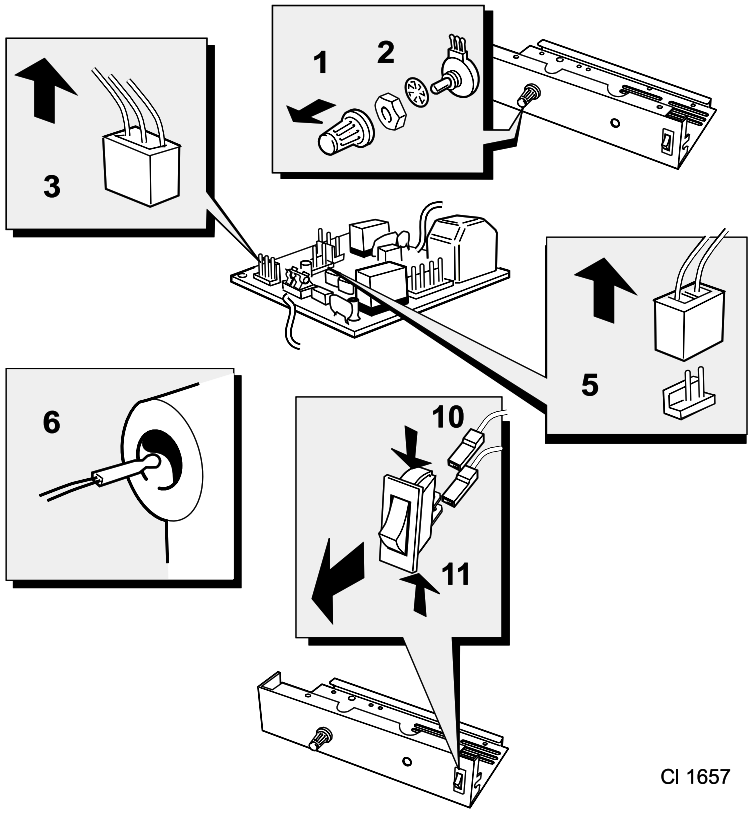
9. Replace and re-assemble in reverse order.

On/off switch

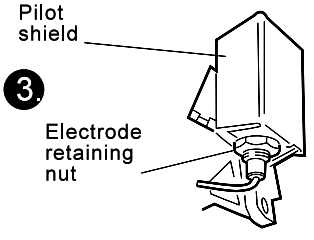
10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.

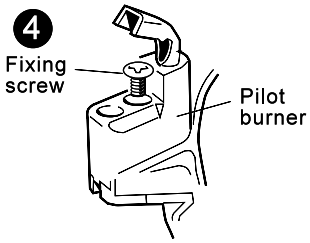
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.

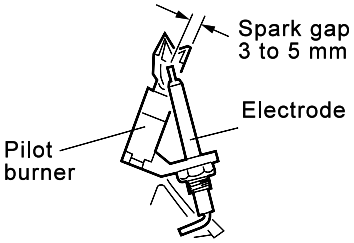
12. Re-assemble in reverse order.

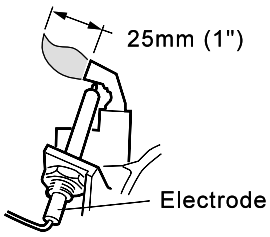


58 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT









1. Refer to Frame 54.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.

3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.

4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.

5. Replace the pilot burner (injector if necessary) and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.

6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.

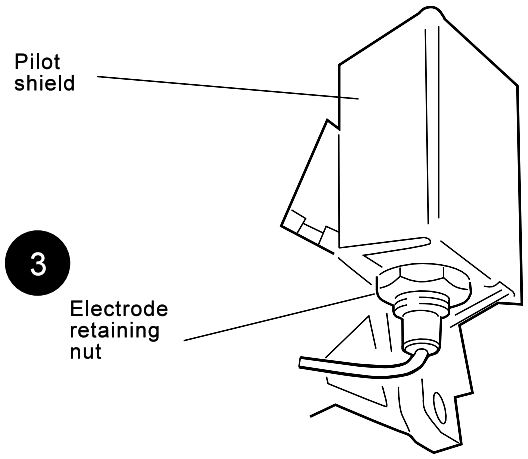
7. Reassemble in reverse order.

8. Check the operation of the boiler.

9. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

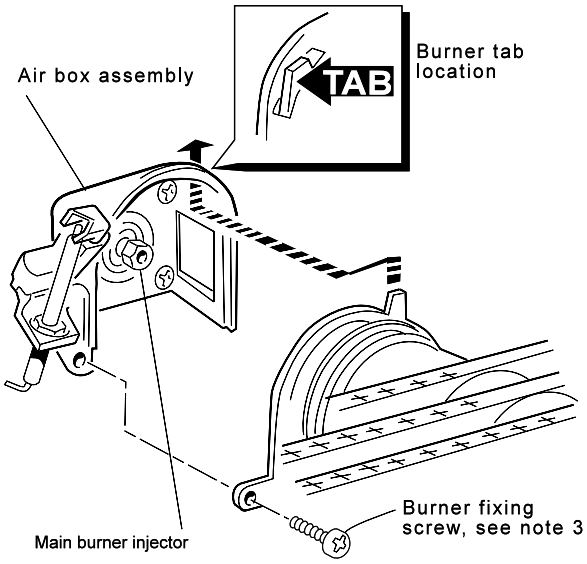
59 IGNITION ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.
4. Remove the pilot shield.
5. Remove the ignition electrode and integral lead.
6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.
7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 58.
8. Reassemble in reverse order.
9. Check the operation of the boiler.



60 MAIN BURNER AND MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.
3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downward to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.
4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that a new copper sealing washer is used.
5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot and reassemble in reverse order.
6. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.

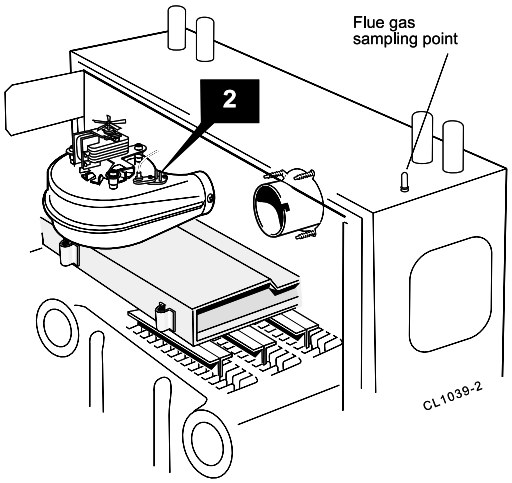


61 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer also to Frame 69 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the fixing screws.
   Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
4. Disconnect the gas control valve electrical leads.
5. Undo the gas cock union .
6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the 2 screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.
7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.
8. Remove the 4 screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on back indicates the direction of flow).
9. Transfer the gas cock union to the new gas control valve, using an approved jointing compound.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order.
11. Check the operation of the boiler.

62 FAN REPLACEMENT



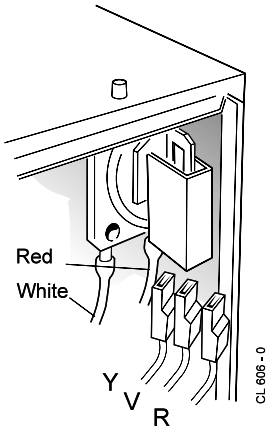
1. Refer to Frame 54
2. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
3. Disconnect the fan leads.

4a. Rear flue. Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

4b. Side or top flue. Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

5. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
6. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
7. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood / fan assembly.
8. Remove the three M4 screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.
9. Fit the new fan and re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads, and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.
10. Check the operation of the boiler.

63 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT



1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the APS fixing screw.
3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.
5. Fit the new APS and reassemble in reverse order.
6. Check the operation of the boiler.

64 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

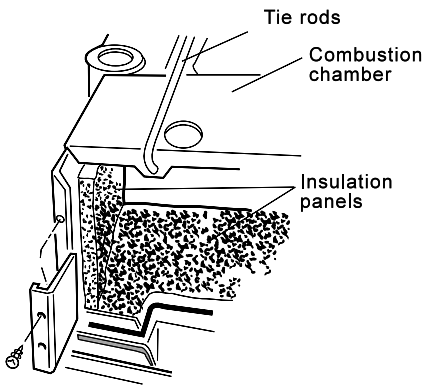
Note. *Refer to Frames 70 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the fixing screws and swing the control box down into the servicing position.
3. Disconnect the detection lead from the PCB.
4. Unplug all the Molex connectors from the PCB.
5. Disengage the PCB from the mounting posts and withdraw from the control box.
6. Fit the new PCB and re-assemble in reverse order.
7. Check the operation of the boiler.

Fuse.

To change the fuse, prise it out of the holder and disengage the fuse. Refer to Frame 70 for fuse location.

65 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT



1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Remove the 4 tie rods.
4. Remove the combustion chamber.
5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.
6. Remove the side insulation panels.
7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.
8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.
9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order.

66 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

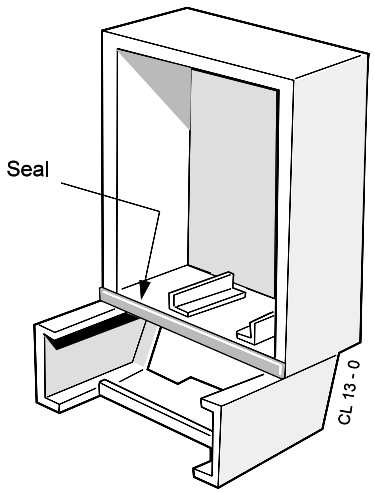
Note. *Refer to Frame 5 (Boiler assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the burner / air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.
3. Drain the system.
4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings in order to allow the heat exchanger assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.
5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.
7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.
8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / inter-panel retaining screws.
9. Lift the heat exchanger / inter-panel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downwards to clear the water pipes from the back panel.
10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.
11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.
12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.
13. Re-assemble in reverse order.
14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.
15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

67 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

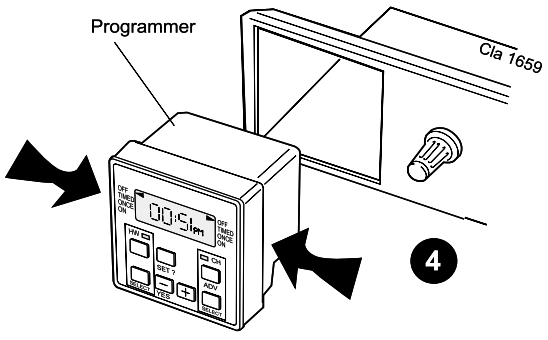
1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the old seal from the casing surround and thoroughly clean the casing surfaces.
3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.
4. Replace the boiler casing.

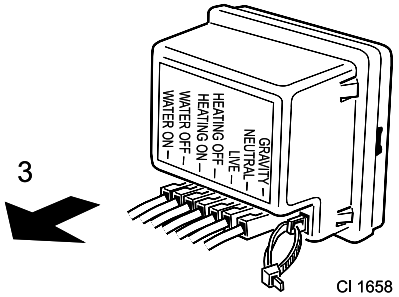
Note.
Model FF 2 100 does not have air deflector baffles fitted to jacket bottom.



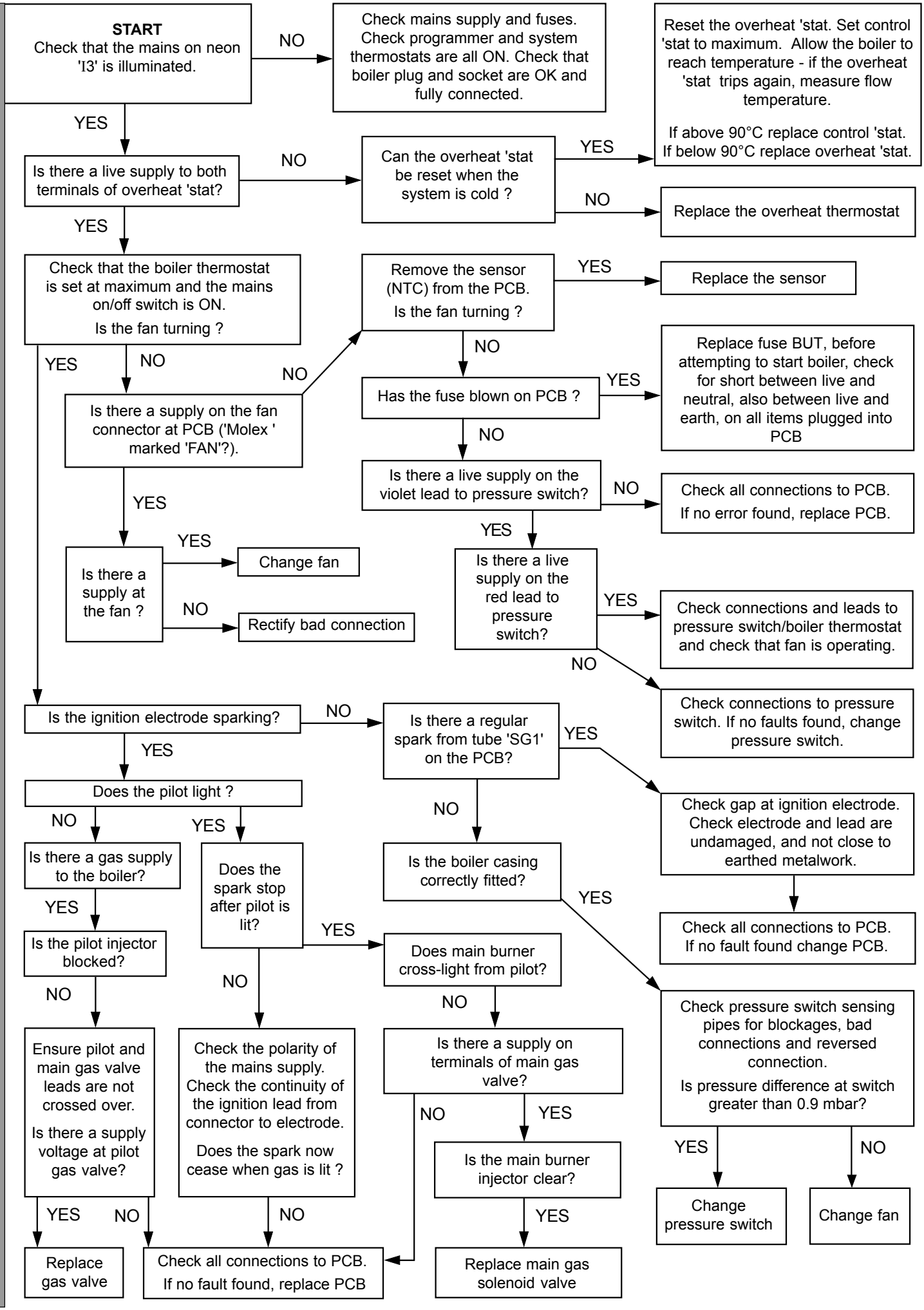
68 PROGRAMMER REPLACEMENT (IF FITTED)

1. Refer to Frame 54.
2. Remove the fixing screws and swing the control box down into the servicing position.
3. Pull off the terminal connections from back of programmer.
4. Compress the lugs at each side of the programmer and withdraw it from the control panel.
5. Fit the new programmer in reverse order.
6. Set the programmer to the desired programme and check the operation of the boiler.





FAULT FINDING



SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

The full lists is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

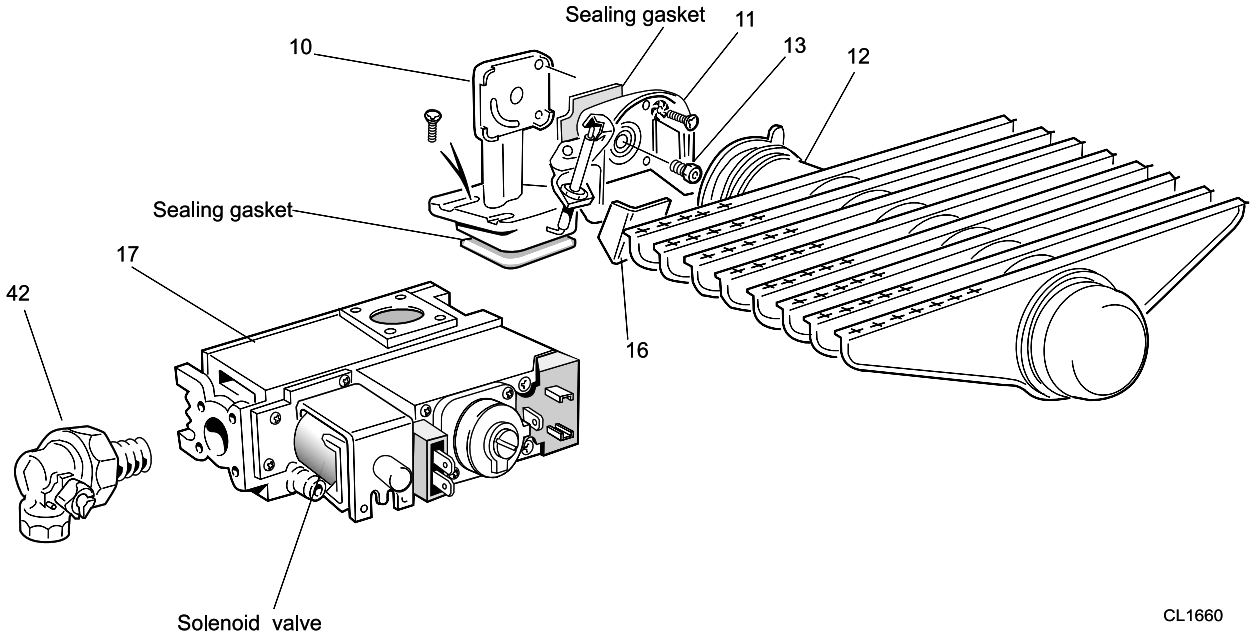
When ordering spares please quote:

1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

When replacing any part on this appliance, use only spare parts that you can be assured conform to the safety and performance specification that we require. Do not use reconditioned or copy parts that have not been clearly authorised by Ideal Boilers

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
12		Main burner		
		AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 306; FF 230 & FF 240	1	155396
		AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 305; FF 250 & FF 260	1	155397
		AEROMATIC No.AC 19/123 292; FF 270, FF 280 & FF 2 100	1	111709
13		Main burner injector		
		Injector 044-01-344 256; FF 230	1	155398
		Injector 044-01-344 300; FF 240	1	155399
		Injector 044-01-344 330; FF 250		155400
		Injector 044-01-344 359; FF 260	1	155401
		Injector 044-01-344 400; FF 270	1	156313
		Injector 044-01-344 420; FF 280	1	156314
		Aeromatic Pt. No. 939021, 4.6mm; FF 2 100	1	152320
13A		Copper washer, Aeromatic 914176(for injector); all models	1	152426
14	397 943	Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075002 ; FF 230-280	1	004982
		Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075001 ; FF 2 100	1	
15	308 358	Pilot burner head Q359A with:		
		Honeywell 4580 1075002 injector FF 230-280	1	079599
		Honeywell 4580 1075001 injector FF 2 100	1	079590
17		Gas valve kit VR 4601AA1036, 230 V	1	075698
18	G308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm lg.	1	111881
19	308 522	Control box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	111973
23	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board :		
		PACTROL PCB 25 B	1	079716
24	385 861	Pressure switch: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 F 1373:2	1	155412
26	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
30	E02-661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No.WFFB 0221-039 FF 230-280	1	151586
		SIFAN No.WFFB 0226-028 FF 2 100	1	
35	E04-503	Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation & M5 x 16 dogpoint pozi pan hd FF 230-280	1	075391
		FF 2 100	1	075523
37	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instructions	1	079941
39	E04-504	Casing seal pack complete with screws	1	075392
45	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 P 8508	1	113200

69 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

10. Burner manifold

11. Air box and pilot assembly.

12. Main burner.

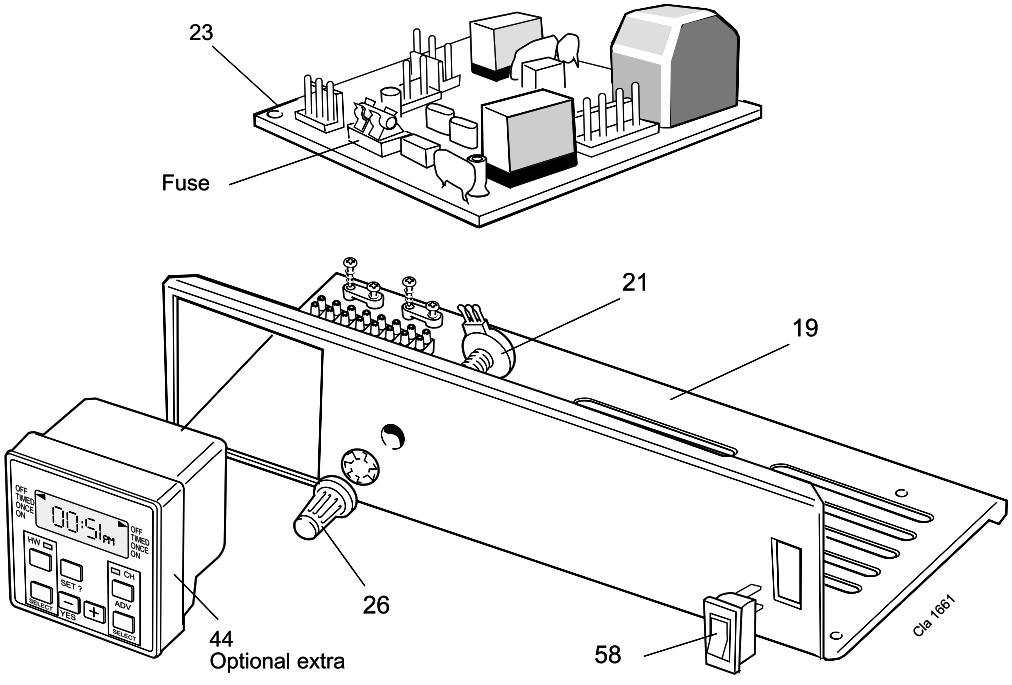
13. Main burner injector.

16. Pilot shield.

17. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

70 CONTROL BOX - Exploded View



LEGEND

19. Control box.

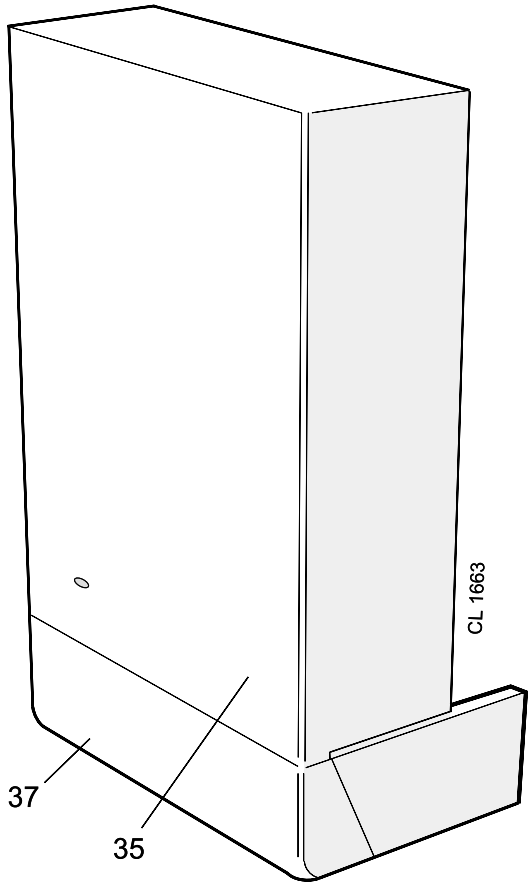
21. Thermostat potentiometer.

23. Printed circuit board.

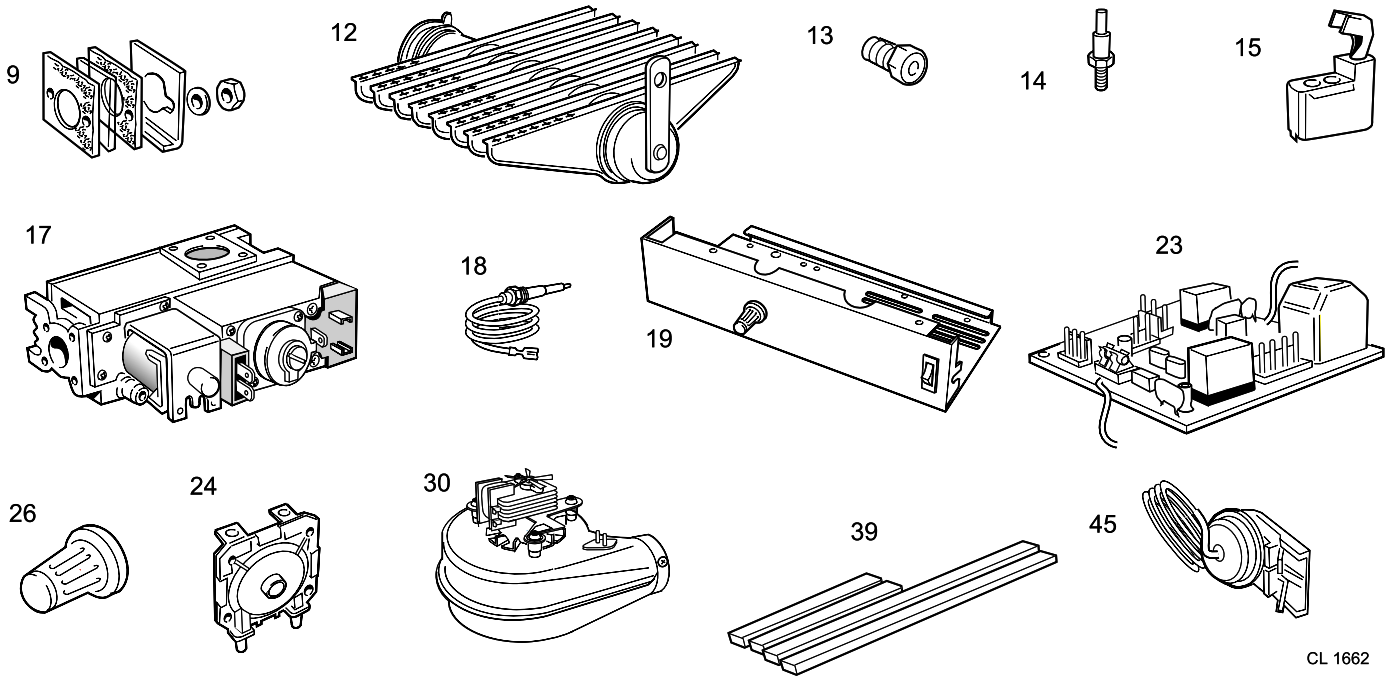
26. Thermostat knob.

58. Mains on/off switch.

71 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY



72 SHORT PARTS LIST



benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01482 498432*

CERTIFIED TO BRITISH STANDARDS BS6332 BS5258

THIS SYMBOL IS YOUR ASSURANCE OF QUALITY

These appliances are designed for use with Natural Gas only. They have been tested and conform with the provisions of BS. 6332 and BS. 5258.

CE

FF.87/AP/107
RS.87/AP/108

Natural Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

Caradon Plumbing Limited, P.O. Box 103, National Ave., Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858.

Caradon Plumbing Limited pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

Ideal BOILERS

April 2001 UIN 156 643 A02

Caradon

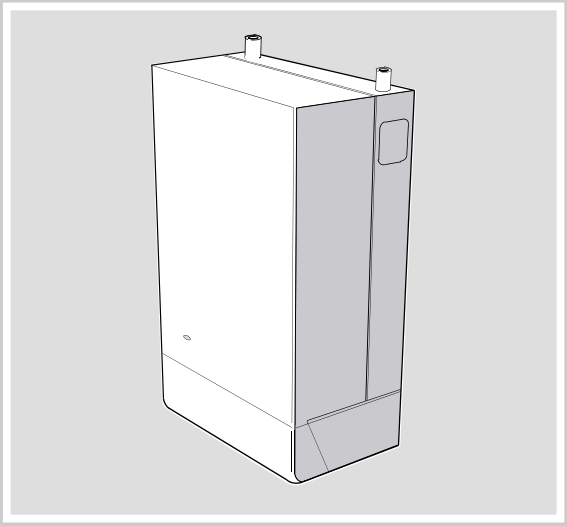
Plumbing Solutions

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

www.idealboilers.com

THE IDEAL

INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



classic

the wall hung boiler

Wall hung, fanned flue, gas fired boiler

Classic FF 250P-275P

iIdeal BOILERS

Installers guide to central heating boilers

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size			FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Gas supply connection			Rc 1/2 (1/2)		
Flow connection			22mm copper		28mm copper (FEMALE)
Return connection			22mm copper		28mm copper (FEMALE)
Maximum static water head		m (ft.)	30.5 (100)		
Minimum static water head		m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)		
Electrical supply			230 V ~ 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W		
Fuse rating			External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265		
Water content		litre (gal.)	3.65 (0.8)		4.65 (1.0)
Dry Weight		kg (lb)	46.6 (102.8)		52.6 (116.0)
Maximum installation weight		kg (lb)	37.4 (82.5)		43.1 (95.0)
Boiler size	Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)		
	Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)		
	Depth	mm (in.)	300 (11.8)		
Flue duct diameter		mm (in.)	100 (4.0)		

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size		FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Boiler input	kW	18.3	20.9	26.7
	(Btu/h)	(62 500)	(71 250)	(91 250)
Gas consumption	l/s (ft^3/h)	0.20 (25.0)	0.22 (28.5)	0.29 (36.5)
Boiler output	kW	14.7	16.7	21.4
	(Btu/h)	(50 000)	(57 000)	(73 000)
Burner Setting	mbar	35.3	35.0	35.0
pressure (HOT)	(in.w.g.)	(14.1)	(14.0)	(14.0)
Inlet pressure	mbar (in.w.g.)	37.0 (14.8)		
Seasonal efficiency (SEDBUK)*		[80.0]%	[76.8]%	[75.7]%

*The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings.
The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BGplc 0087.

To obtain the gas consumption:

a. For l/s divide heat input (kW) by C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)

b. For ft^3/h divide heat input (Btu/h) by C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

Classic FF

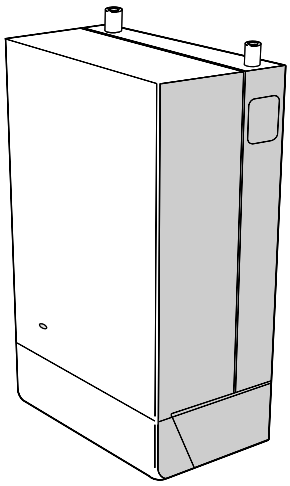
B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 AP 107

Destination Countries: GB and IE

Propane Gas only Appliance type: C_{12} & C_{32}

Data Badge: on top of the controls support

Models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 250 P	41 387 07
Classic FF 260 P	41 387 08
Classic FF 275 P	41 387 09



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} & C_{32} =

A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal or vertical terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is up stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{3P} = An appliance designed for use on 3rd Family gas, Group P only.

CONTENTS

Air Supply 7
Boiler Clearances 5
Boiler Exploded View 11
Burner Exploded View 35
Control Box Exploded View 35
Electrical Connections 22
Electrical Regulations 7
Extension Ducts - Fitting 21
External Control 22
Fault Finding 34
Flue Installation 6
Rear installation 14
Side installation 17
Gas Safety 4
Gas Supply 6
Health & Safety Document 4
Initial lighting 25
Installation 11
Mandatory Requirements 4
Pump 8
Servicing 27
Short List of Parts 36
Spares Replacement 29
System Diagrams 23
Terminal Guards 6
Water and Systems 8
Water Treatment 7

BENCHMARK LOG BOOK DETAILS

Boiler	**Page**
Make and model	3
Appliance Serial No. on Data Badge	11
Controls	as applicable
For all boilers	
Flushing to BS.7593	7
Inhibitor	7
Gas inlet working pressure	6
Burner operating pressure	2
Heat input	to be calculated
Temperature differential	measure and record
For combination boilers only	Not applicable
For domestic hot water mode	Not applicable
For condensing boilers	Not applicable

For all boilers: *complete, sign & hand over to customer*

For assistance see Technical Helpline on the back page

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

INTRODUCTION

The Classic FF250-275 Propane is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

Note.

These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation.
If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Downward Piping Kit

Programmer Kit.

Vertex Flue Kit. For vertical flue connection

Roof Flue Kit.

90° Flue Elbow
Turret Kit

Sealed System Unit. Fits on top of the appliance.

Extension ducts. Up to 3 m (118").

Current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations or rules in force.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority.

Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.5482	Domestic butane and propane burning appliances
BS.6891	Low pressure installation pipes.
BS.6798	Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.5449	Forced circulation hot water systems.
BS.5546	Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd and 3rd Family Gases).
BS.5440.1	Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.5440.2	Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.
BS.7593	Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

Health & Safety Document No. 635.

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the British Standards Institution for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances -unless covered by these 'Installation and Servicing' instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the BSI Certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

SAFE HANDLING OF SUBSTANCES

Care should be taken when handling the boiler insulation panels which can cause irritation to the skin. No asbestos, mercury or CFCs are included in any part of this boiler.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

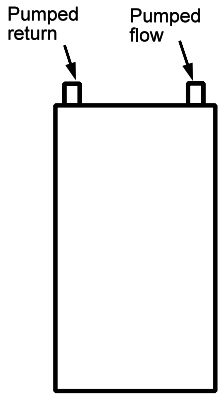
Timber Framed Buildings

If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IG/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland,

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS



This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.

FF 275P boiler ONLY

must be fitted with the 22mm x 28mm copper sockets, provided in the Hardware Pack (or equivalent 22mm x 28mm compression fittings), and the pumped flow and return pipes run in 28mm pipe.

2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing

Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

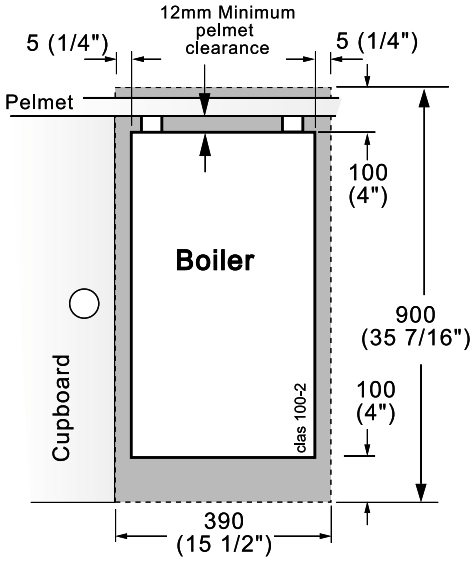
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.

c. If using the Complete Sealed System Unit then refer to the instructions packed with the unit for the necessary clearances.



Front clearance: 533mm (17 3/4") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built in to cupboard is 75 mm (3").

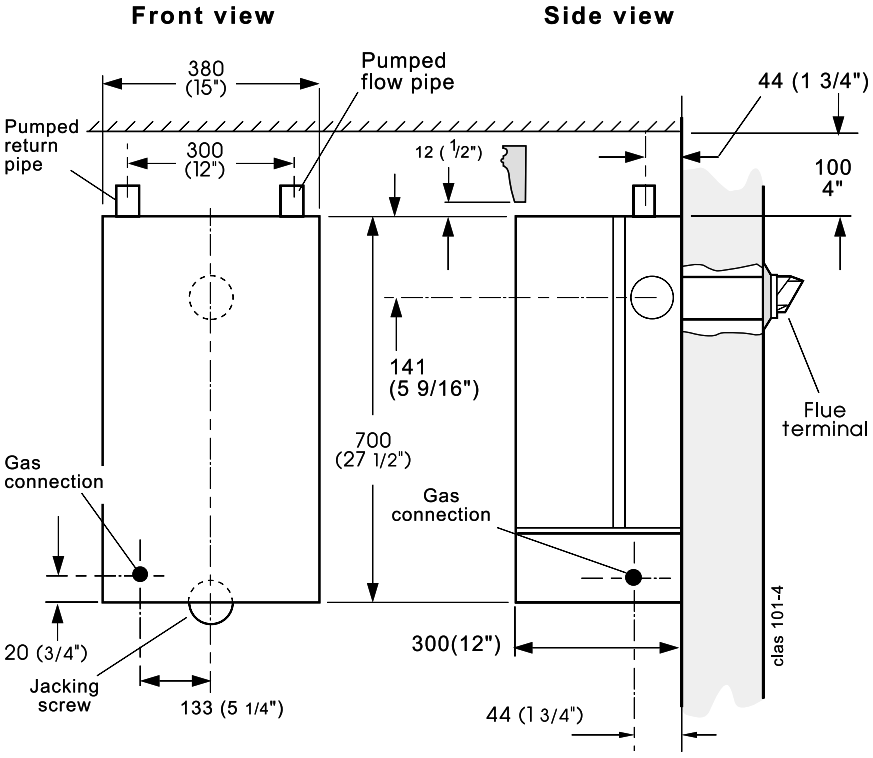
Pelmet restrictions.

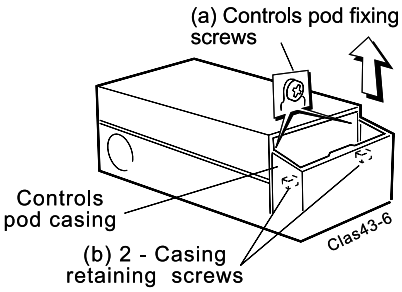
If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.





the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower.

Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler should be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/ compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler, see section on 'Air Supply'.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service, see the Wall mounting diagram, Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

A local propane supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas.

Installation pipes, cylinders and pressure regulators MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 5482.1.

Pipework from the supply to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size.

Bulk tank installations must comply with the Home Office code of practice for the storage of liquefied petroleum gas at fixed installations.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance.

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm. (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm. (1")
3. Below eaves	25 mm. (1")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	25 mm. (1")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	25 mm. (1")
6. From internal or external corners	25 mm. (1")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm. (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm. (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm. (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard. The minimum spacing in Table 3, Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 75mm in order to allow a terminal guard to be fitted.

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers. Ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

7. Where it is essential that the terminal wall plate is fitted, i.e. wall thicknesses over 600mm (23 1/2") or with an inaccurately cut hole, the minimum spacing in Table 3 Nos. 2,3, 4, 5 and 6 would be 60mm (2 1/2") in order to allow the terminal wall plate to be fitted.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses, refer to Frame 10 'Unpacking'.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

   Refer to Table 4 for details of air vent position and sizing.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space cm^2 (in^2)	Air direct outside cm^2 (in^2)
FF 250 P	170 (26)	83 (13)
FF 260 P	198 (31)	102 (16)
FF 275 P	264 (41)	132 (21)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS. 6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

The boiler must be vented (not on sealed system).

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug which is provided to drain the BOILER ONLY in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistances of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.
Maximum boiler operating temperature should be 82 °C (180 °F).

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size		FF 250 P	FF 260 P	FF 275 P
Boiler Output	kW	14.7	16.7	21.4
	Btu/h	50 000	57 000	73 000
Water Flow Rate	l/min	19.0	22.8	30.3
	gal/h	250	300	400
Pressure Loss	mbar	31.5	41.7	77.0
	in w.g.	12.6	16.7	30.9

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-

Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd, Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel 0870 5601 5000 or

Betz Dearborn Ltd, Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

Important: Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators or two port valves without end switches then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

WARNING. The appliance MUST be efficiently earthed.

Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS 7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

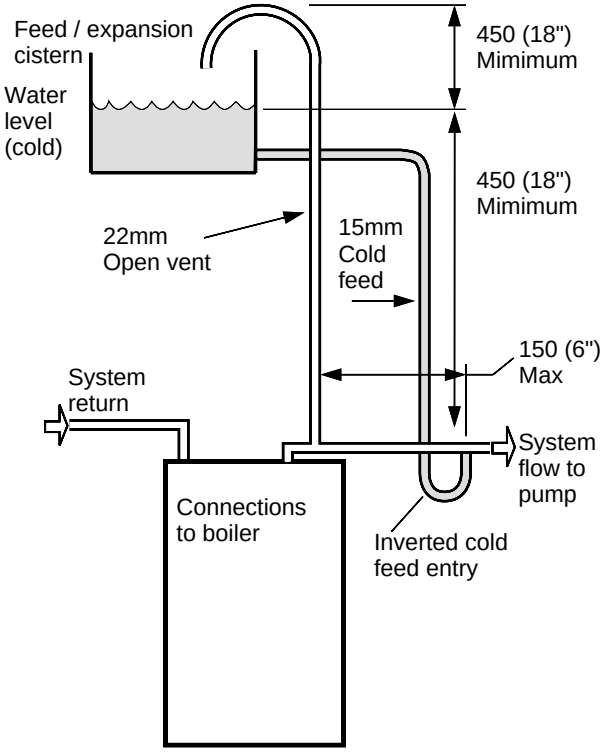
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grundfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note.
A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (Refer BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

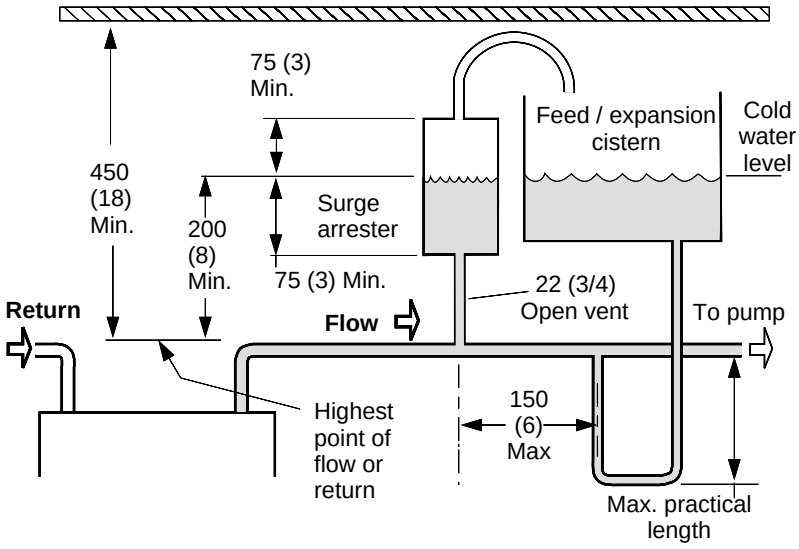
1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.

2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.

3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

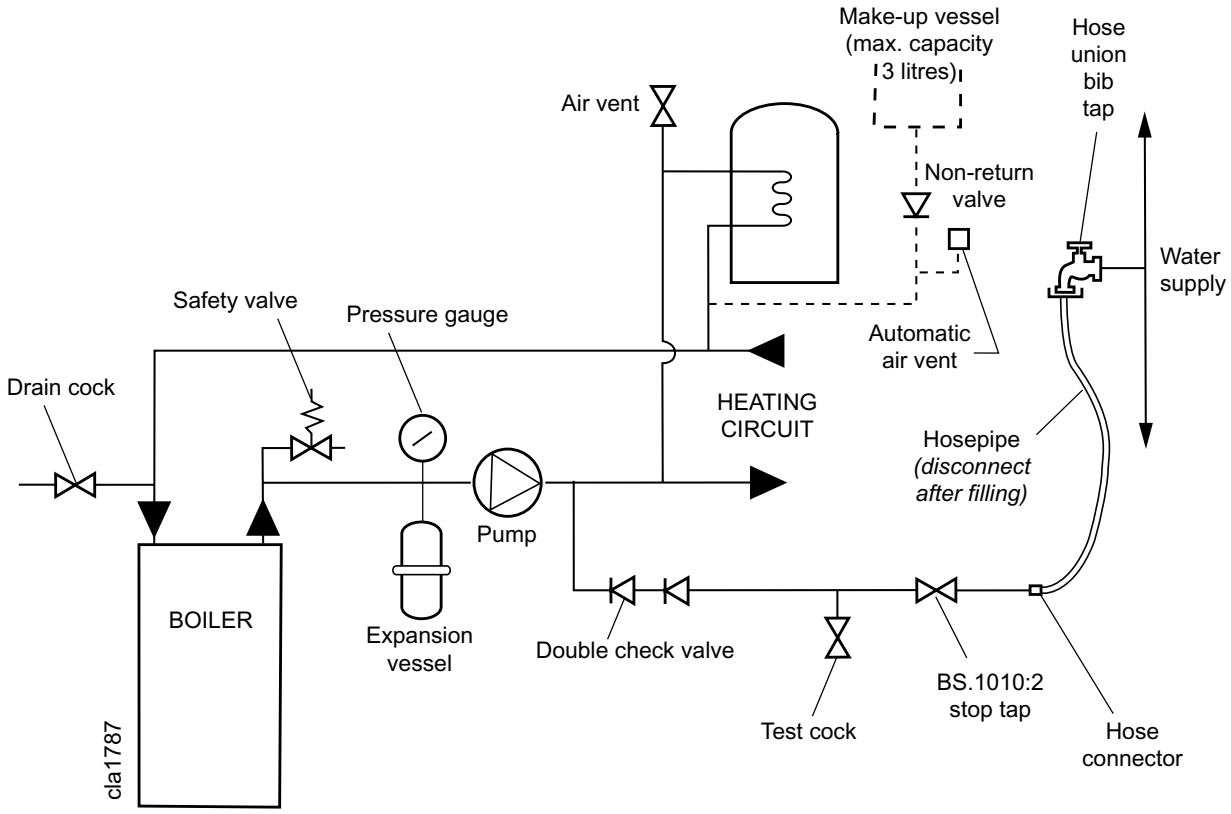
Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with.*

Minimum Requirements



All dimensions in mm (in.). **NB.** Imperial dimensions are approximate.

5 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS



Note.

The method of filling, refilling, topping up or flushing sealed primary hot water circuits from the mains via a temporary hose connection is only allowed if acceptable to the local water authority.

1. General

a. The installation must comply with the requirements of BS.6798 and BS.5449.

b. The installation should be designed to work with flow temperatures of up to 82°C.

c. All components of the system, including the heat exchanger of the indirect cylinder, must be suitable for a working pressure of 3 bar (45 lb/in²) and temperature of 110°C. Care should be taken in making all connections so that the risk of leakage is minimised.

2. Safety Valve

A spring loaded safety valve complying with the relevant requirements of BS.6759 must be fitted in the flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible and with no intervening valve or restriction. The valve should have the following features:

a. A non-adjustable pre-set lift pressure not exceeding 3 bar (45 lb./in²)

b. A manual testing device.

c. Provision for connection of a discharge pipe. *The valve or discharge pipe should be positioned so that the discharge of water or steam cannot create a hazard to the occupants of the premises or cause damage to electrical components and wiring.*

3. Pressure Gauge

A pressure gauge covering at least the range 0-4 bar (0-60 lb./in²) must be fitted to the system. The gauge should be easily seen from the filling point and should preferably be connected at the same point as the expansion vessel.

4. Expansion Vessel

a. A diaphragm type expansion vessel must be connected at a point close to the inlet side of the pump, the connecting pipe being not less than 15mm (1/2" nominal) size and not incorporating valves of any sort.

b. The vessel capacity must be adequate to accept the expansion of the system water when heated to 110°C (230°F)

c. The charge pressure must not be less than the static water head above the vessel The pressure attained in the system when heated to 110°C (230°F) should be at least 0.35 bar (5lb/in²) less than the lift pressure of the safety valve.

For guidance on vessel sizing refer to the table in Frame 6. For further details refer to BS.5449 and the British Gas Corporation publication : Material and Installation Specifications for Domestic Central Heating & Hot Water.

5. Cylinder

The cylinder must be either of the indirect coil type or a direct cylinder fitted with an immersion calorifier which is suitable for operating on a gauge pressure of 0.35 bar (5lb./in²) in excess of the safety valve setting. *Single feed indirect cylinders are not suitable for sealed systems.*

6. Make-up Water

Provision must be made for replacing water loss from the system, either:

a. From a manually fitted make-up vessel with a readily visible water level. The vessel should be mounted at least 150mm (6") above the highest point of the system and be connected through a non-return valve to the system, fitted at least 300mm (12") below the make-up vessel on the return side of the domestic hot water cylinder or radiators.

b. Where access to a make-up vessel would be difficult by pre-pressurisation of the system. Refer to 'Filling.'

6 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - cont.

7. Mains Connection

There must be no direct connection to the mains water supply or to the water storage tank supplying domestic water, even through a non-return valve, without the approval of the local water authority.

8. Filling

The system may be filled by one of the following methods:

a. Through a cistern, used for no other purposes, via a ball valve permanently connected directly to a service pipe and / or a cold water distributing pipe.

The static head available from the cistern should be adequate to provide the desired initial system design pressure. The cold feed pipe from the cistern should include a non-return valve and a stop valve with an automatic air vent connected between them, the stop valve being located between the system and the automatic air vent. The stop valve may remain open during normal operation of the system if automatic water make-up is required.

b. Through a self-contained unit comprising a cistern, pressure booster pump (if required) and, if necessary, an automatic pressure reducing valve and flow restrictor. The cistern should be supplied through a temporary connection from a service pipe or cold water distributing pipe.

This unit may remain permanently connected to the heating system to provide limited automatic water make-up. Where the temporary connection is supplied from a service pipe or distributing pipe which also supplies other draw-off points at a lower level then a double check valve shall be installed upstream of the draw-off point.

c. Through a temporary hose connection from a draw-off tap supplied from a service pipe under mains pressure. Where the mains pressure is excessive a pressure-reducing valve shall be used to facilitate filling.

The following fittings shall form a permanent part of the system and shall be fitted in the order stated:

A stop valve complying with the requirements of BS. 1010, Part 2 (the hose from the draw-off tap shall be connected to this fitting).

A test cock.

A double check valve of an approved type.

- Thoroughly flush out the whole of the system with cold water, without the pump in position.
- With the pump fitted, fill and vent the system until the pressure gauge registers 1.5 bar (21.5lb/in^2).

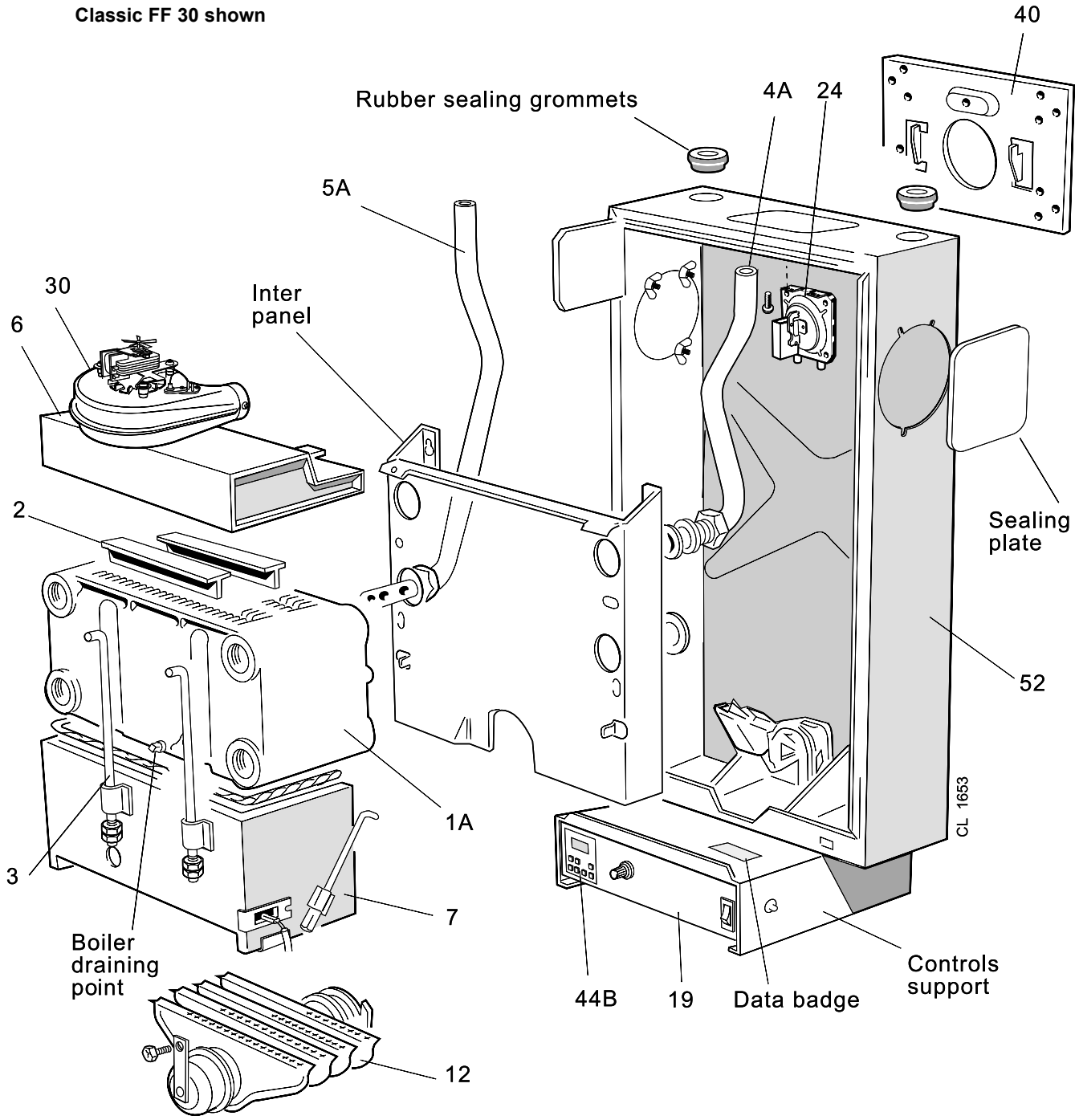
  Examine for leaks.
- Check the operation of the safety valve by manually raising the water pressure until the valve lifts. This should occur within ± 0.3 bar (± 4.3lb/in^2) of the pre-set lift pressure.
- Release water from the system until the initial system design pressure is reached.
- Light the boiler and heat the system to the maximum working temperature. Examine for leaks.
- Turn off the boiler and drain the system while still hot.
- Refill and vent the system.

Sizing procedure for expansion vessels: The volume of the expansion vessel (litres) fitted to a sealed system shall not be less than that given by the table on the following page, multiplied by a factor of 0.8 (for flow temperatures of less than 88 °C).

Safety valve setting	**3.0 bar**			**2.5 bar**			**2.0 bar**	
Vessel charge and initial system pressure	0.5 bar	1.0 bar	1.5 bar	0.5 bar	1.0 bar	1.5 bar	0.5 bar	1.0 bar
Total water content of system (litres)	**Expansion vessel volume (litres)**							
25	2.1	2.7	3.9	2.3	3.3	5.9	2.8	5.0
50	4.2	5.4	7.8	4.7	6.7	11.8	5.6	10.0
75	6.3	8.2	11.7	7.0	10.0	17.7	8.4	15.0
100	8.3	10.9	15.6	9.4	13.4	23.7	11.3	20.0
125	10.4	13.6	19.5	11.7	16.7	29.6	14.1	25.0
150	12.5	16.3	23.4	14.1	20.1	35.5	16.9	30.0
175	14.6	19.1	27.3	16.4	23.4	41.4	19.7	35.0
200	16.7	21.8	31.2	18.8	26.8	47.4	22.6	40.0
225	18.7	24.5	35.1	21.1	30.1	53.3	25.4	45.0
250	20.8	27.2	39.0	23.5	33.5	59.2	28.2	50.0
275	22.9	30.0	42.9	25.8	36.8	65.1	31.0	55.0
300	25.0	32.7	46.8	28.2	40.2	71.1	33.9	60.0
Multiplying factors for other system volumes	0.0833	0.109	0.156	0.094	0.134	0.237	0.113	0.20

7 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 30 shown



LEGEND

1A. Heat exchanger.

2. Flue baffles.

3. Tie rods.

4A. Pumped flow pipe.

5A. Pumped return pipe.

6. Collector hood assembly.

7. Combustion chamber.

12. Main burner.

19. Control box .

24. Pressure switch.

30. Fan.

40. Wall mounting plate.

44B. Programmer (optional).

52. Back panel.

8 UNPACKING

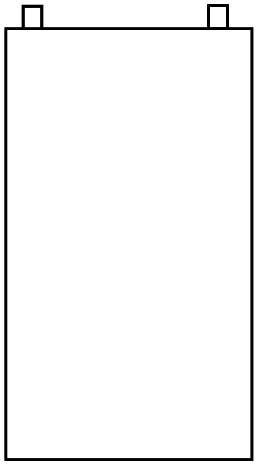
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extras, if ordered (Downward Piping Kit, Programmer Kit, complete Sealed System Unit, Extension Duct Kit D, Vertex Flue Kit G, Roof Flue Kit H and 90° Flue Elbow Kit F) are available in separate boxes.

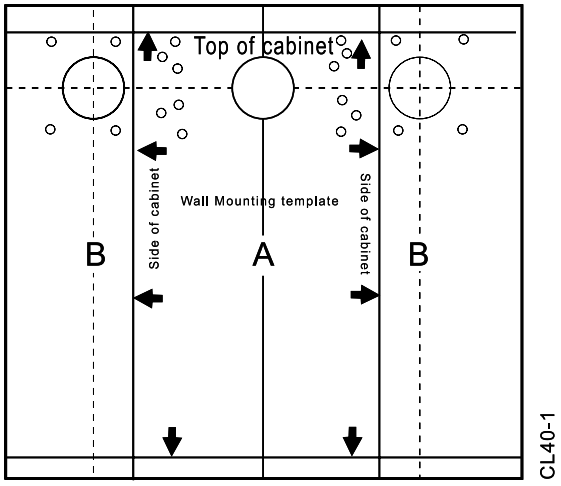
Unpack and check the contents.

Pack A Contents

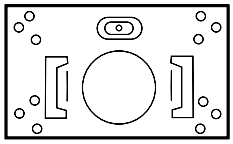
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube, 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring, 1 off



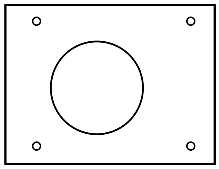
Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



Wall mounting plate



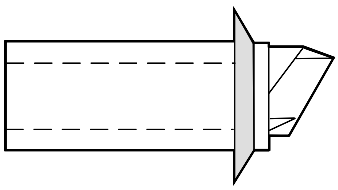
Side outlet terminal mounting plate

Hardware Pack Contents

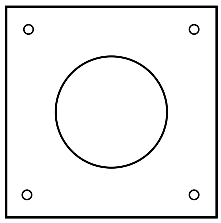
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug , 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- 22mm x 28mm copper reducing socket (FF 275 P ONLY), 2 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 lg. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 1 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy, 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



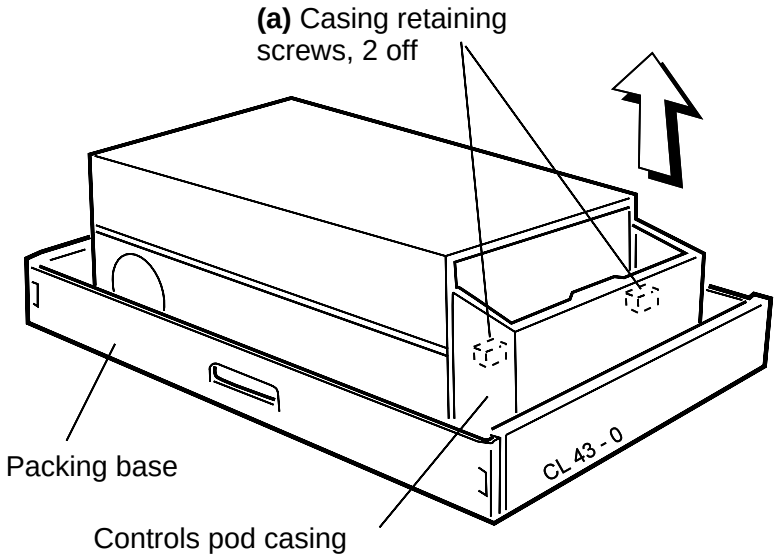
Flue terminal



Terminal wall plate

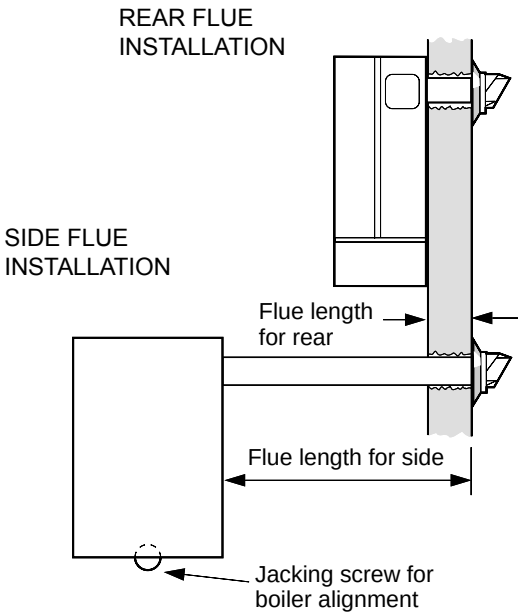
9 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

1. Unpack the boiler
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es)



10 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST important that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.



Note.
Vertex and roof flue kits are available as optional extras for vertical flue installation, supplied with separate fitting instructions.

FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

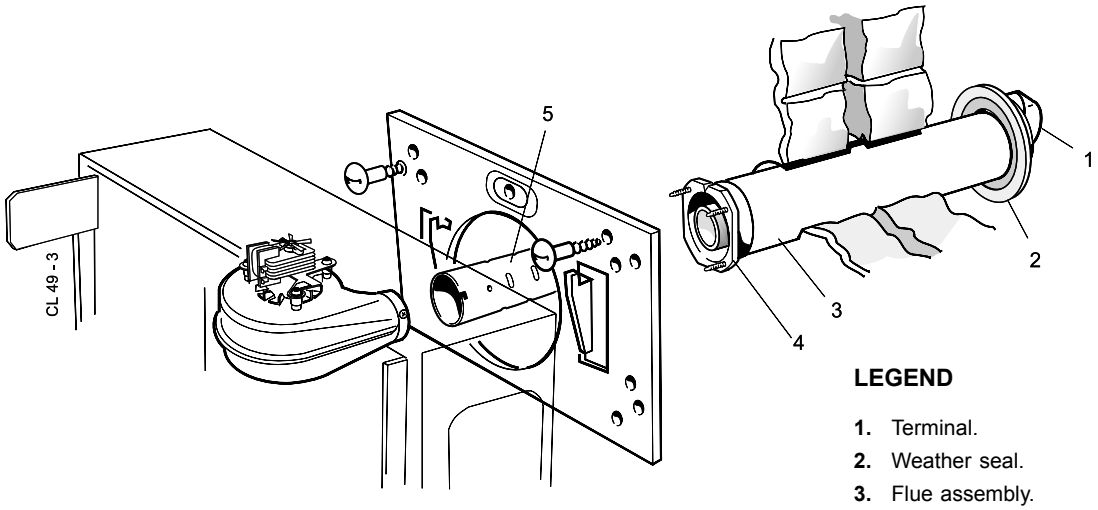
1. A maximum of 3 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand off brackets have been used, it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	150308
600 to 1550	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	150308+153883
1550 to 2500	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	150308+ 153883, 2 off
2500 to 3000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	150308+ 153883, 3 off

11 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.

2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing ring.
5. Flue extension tube.

12 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation. Care must be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.*

1. Separate the templates.

2. Tape the templates into the selected position.

3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.

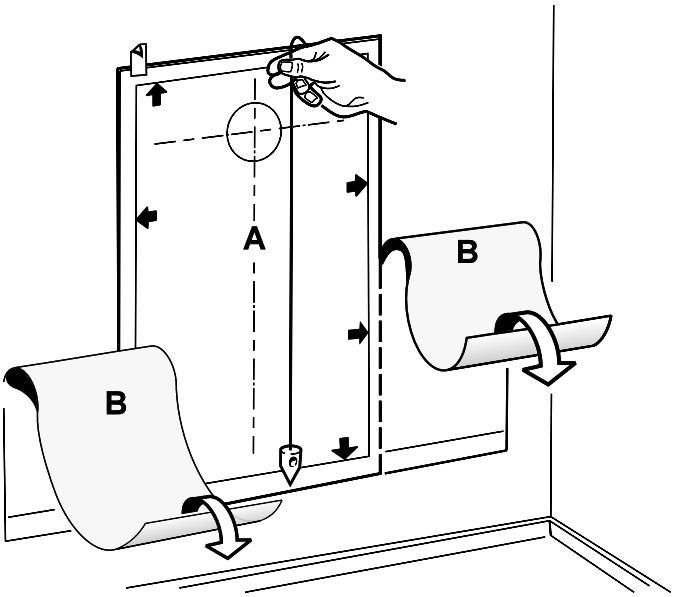
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:

a. The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*

b. The position of the flue duct hole.

c. Downward pipe routing bracket screw positions

5. Remove the templates from the wall.



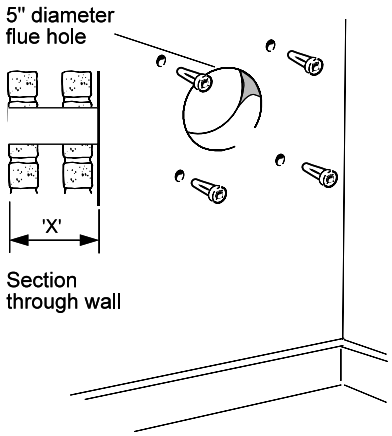
13 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill, then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the two wall faces.

2. Drill 4 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill. If the stand-off brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.

3. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



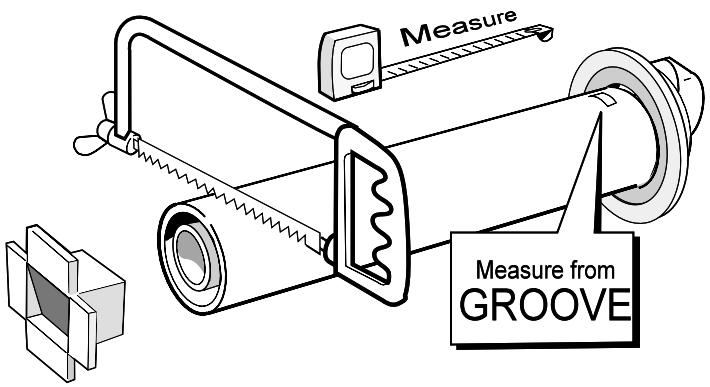
Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

Note. I*f the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

14 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

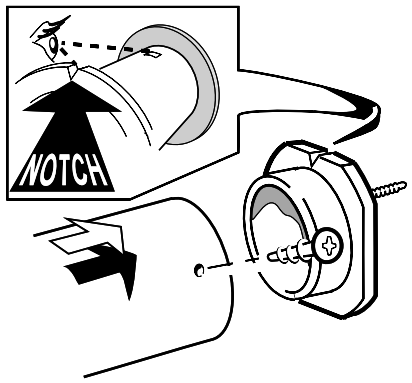
Note. *If the stand-off brackets are used it is essential that 30mm is added to the measured wall thickness when marking the flue, (to allow for the thickness of the brackets).*

1. Measure and note the wall thickness 'X'.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue .
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length 'X', using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.

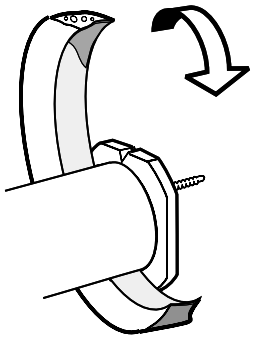


15 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.
   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

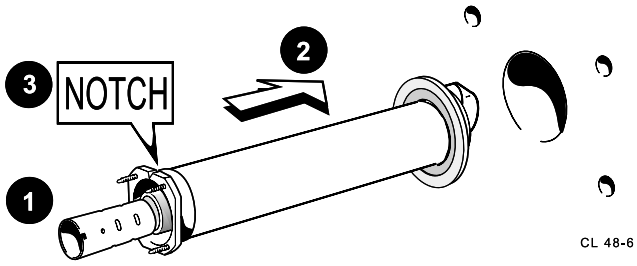


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



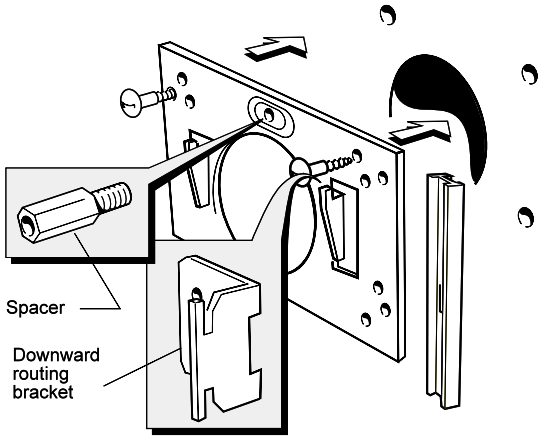
16 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole sufficiently far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



17 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If the down ward routing of pipes is required, then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.
3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
3. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.



REAR FLUE OUTLET

18 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Note. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack. For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

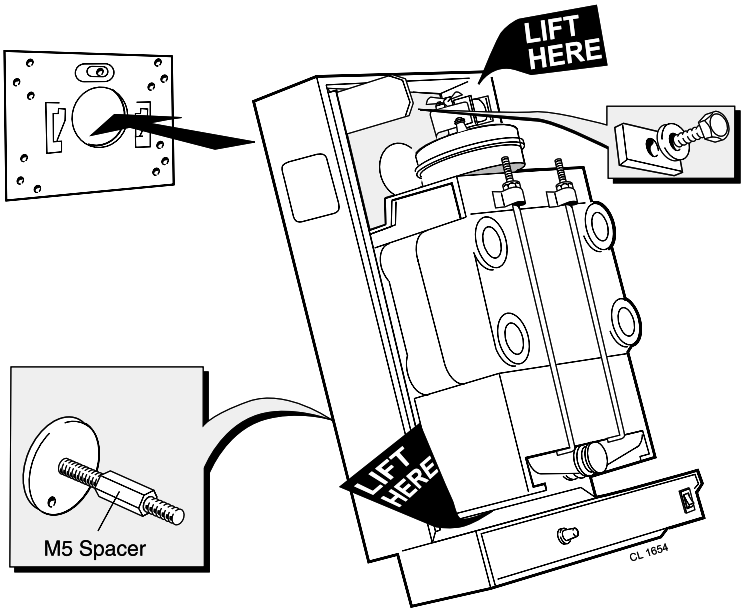
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit the M8 screw washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the M8 screw check, the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.

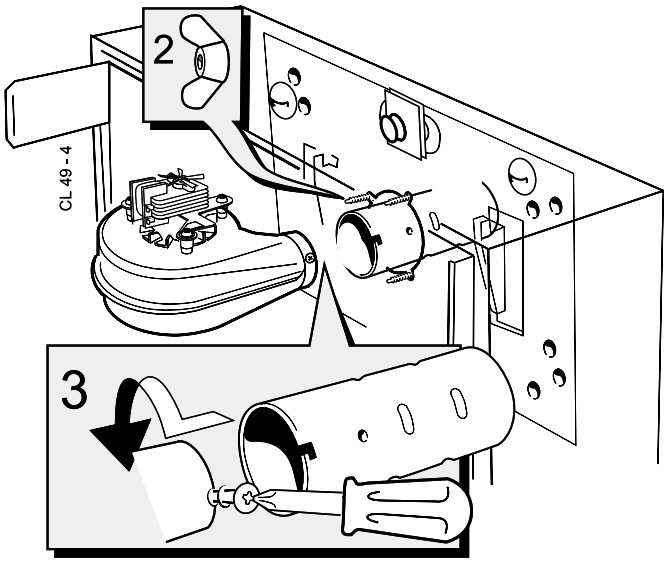


19 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the wall mounting plate and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler, using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto fan, locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

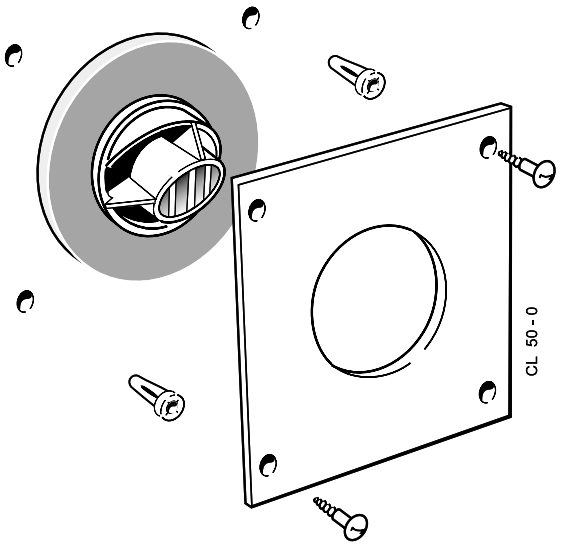


20 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

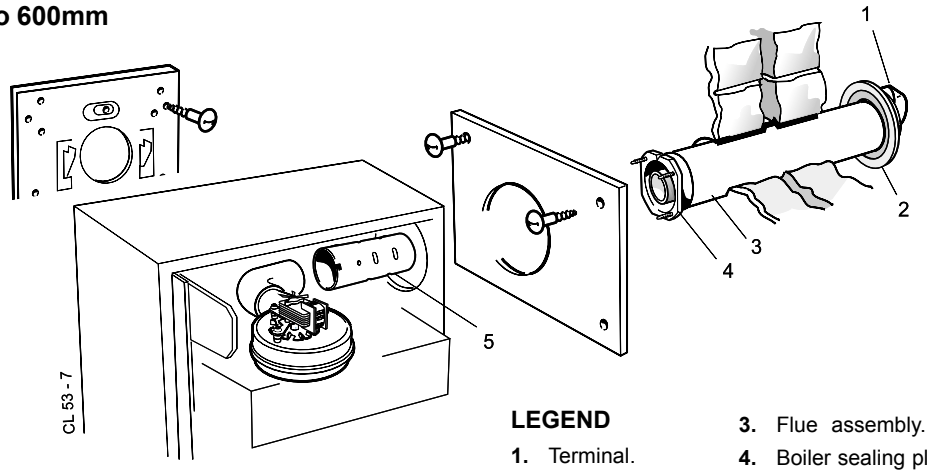
Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 3.*



21 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.
2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.



LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing plate.
5. Flue extension tube.

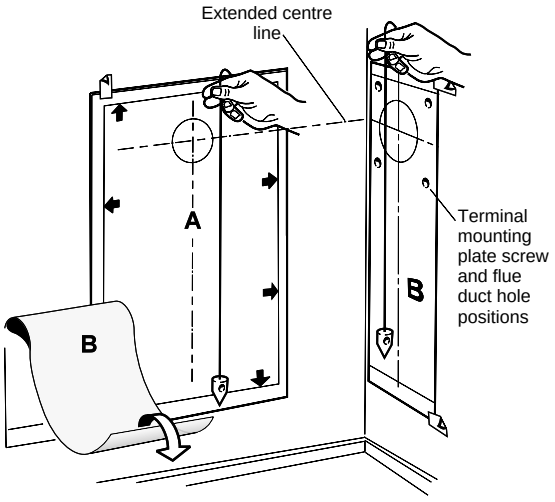
22 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

Note. *The template shows the positions for the fixing holes and the flue hole centres for standard installation.*

If the flow and return pipes are to be routed down behind the boiler, the downward routing pipe brackets (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) must be used. These brackets are secured to the wall mounting plate and it is essential to use only those holes as shown on the wall mounting template.

Care MUST be taken to ensure the correct holes are drilled.

1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The four wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). If the downward routing pipe brackets are used ensure the correct holes are chosen.
   - **b.** The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.
   - **c.** The position of the flue duct hole (ensure that the correct centre is marked depending on whether the downward routing pipe brackets are used or not).



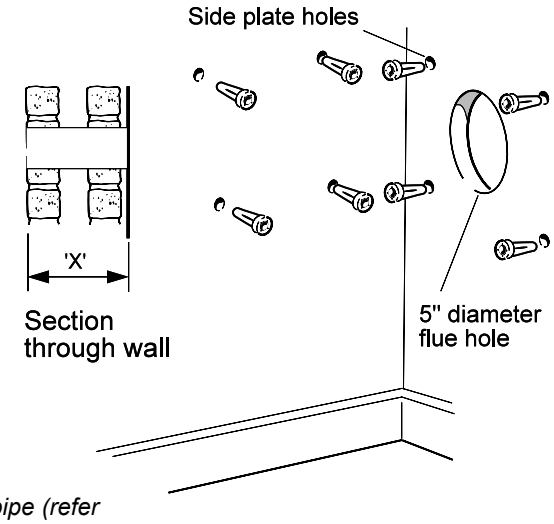
Note. *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*

   - **d.** The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.
5. Remove both templates from the wall.

23 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

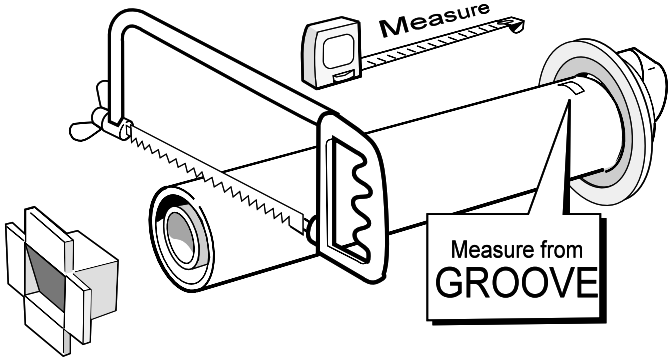
1. Cut the flue hole preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill, then making good the wall faces is not essential - as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 4 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.
3. Drill 4 holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate .



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

24 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

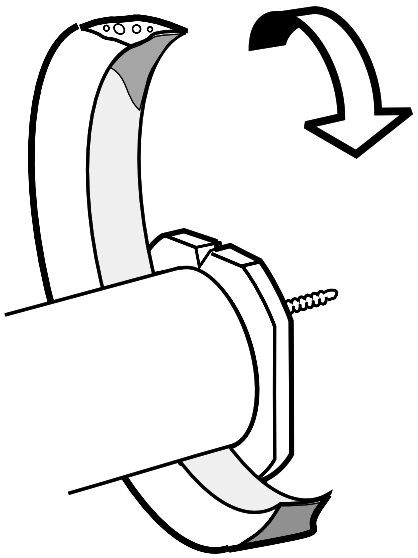
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall) - Refer to Frame 11.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard support , and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard support and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm refer to Frames 34 & 35 - Flue extension ducts.

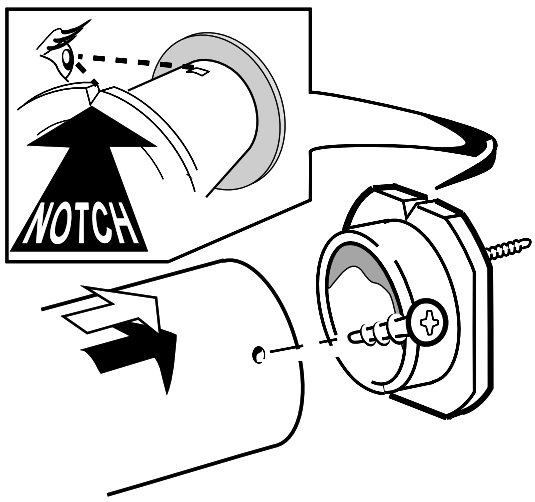
25 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



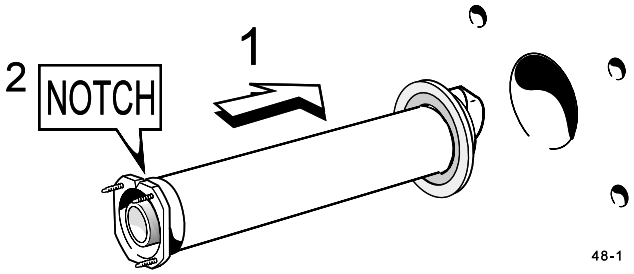
26 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



27 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole sufficiently far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

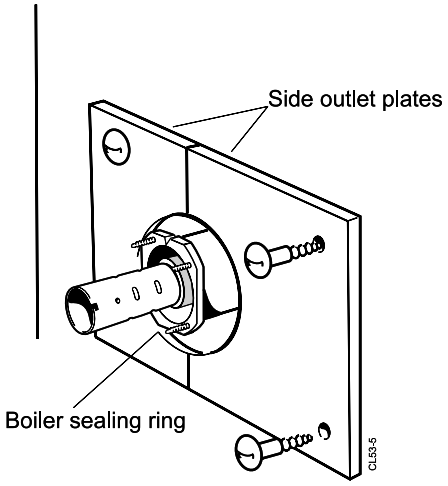


Flue assembly

28 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

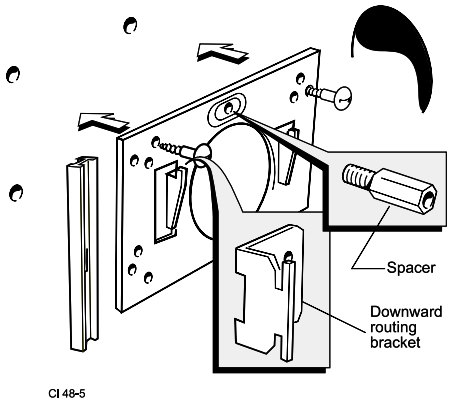
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



29 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. If the downward routing of pipes is required, then the downward routing pipe brackets and M8 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should be fitted to the wall mounting plate now.



3. Fit the bottom 2 screws to secure the bracket(s) to the wall, through the wall mounting plate.
4. Check with a spirit level that the plate is vertical.

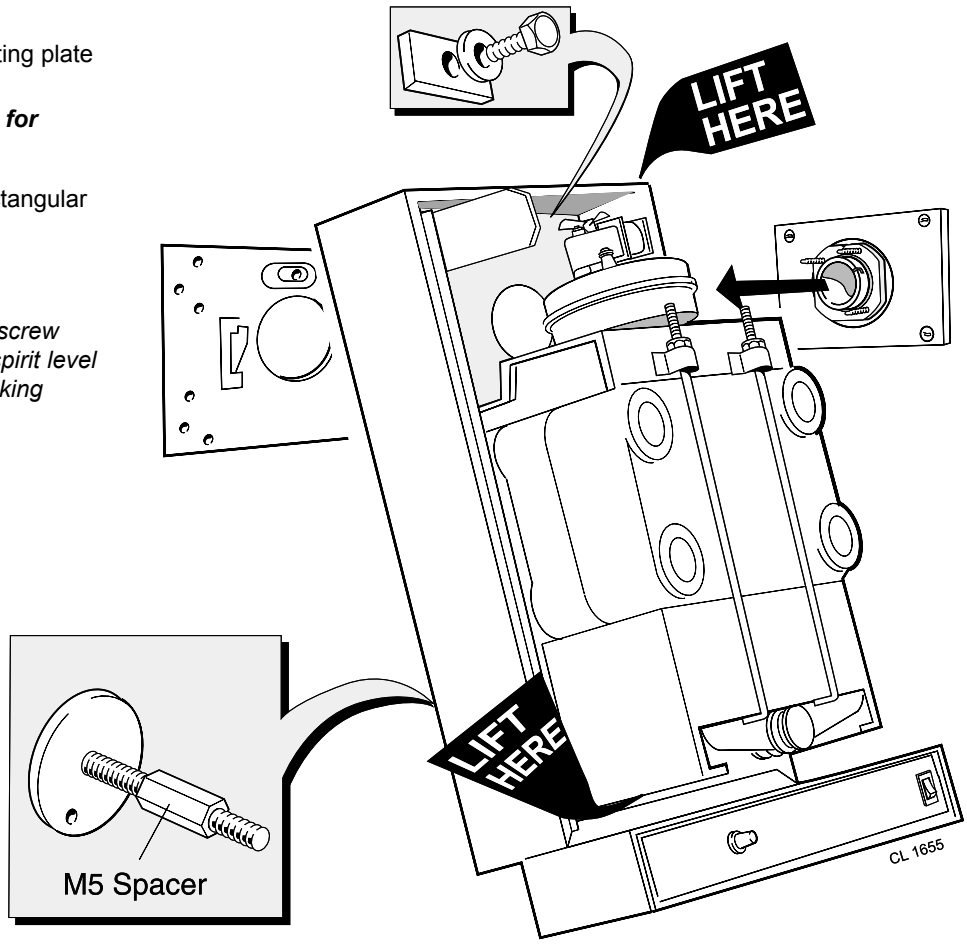
30 MOUNTING THE BOILER

Notes
1. *Have ready to hand the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate supplied in the hardware pack.*
2. *For downward routing of pipes the M5 spacer (supplied in the Downward Piping Kit) should now be fitted to the back of the boiler.*

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate hooks as shown.

   Do not use the burner/controls for lifting.
3. Fit the M8 screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

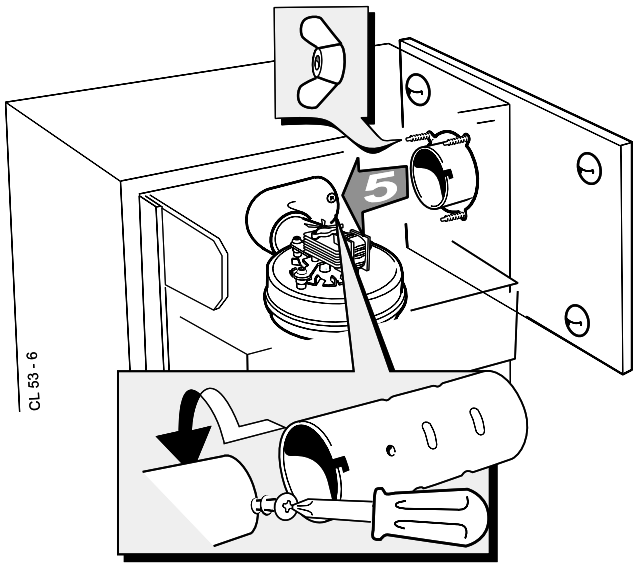
Note. *Before fully tightening the M8 screw check, the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



31 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

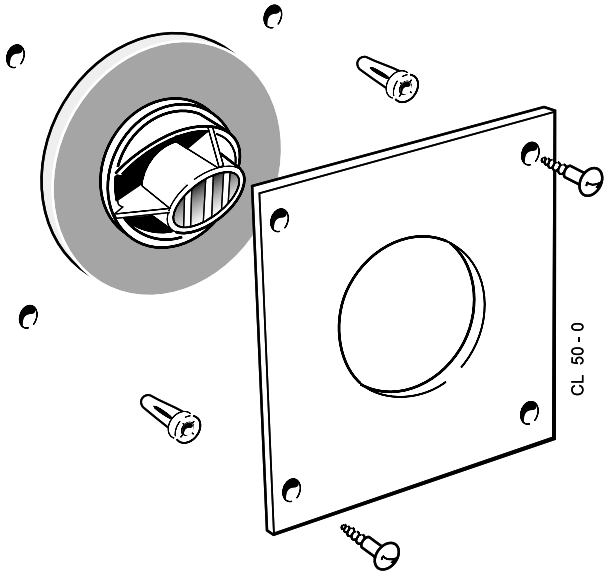


32 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

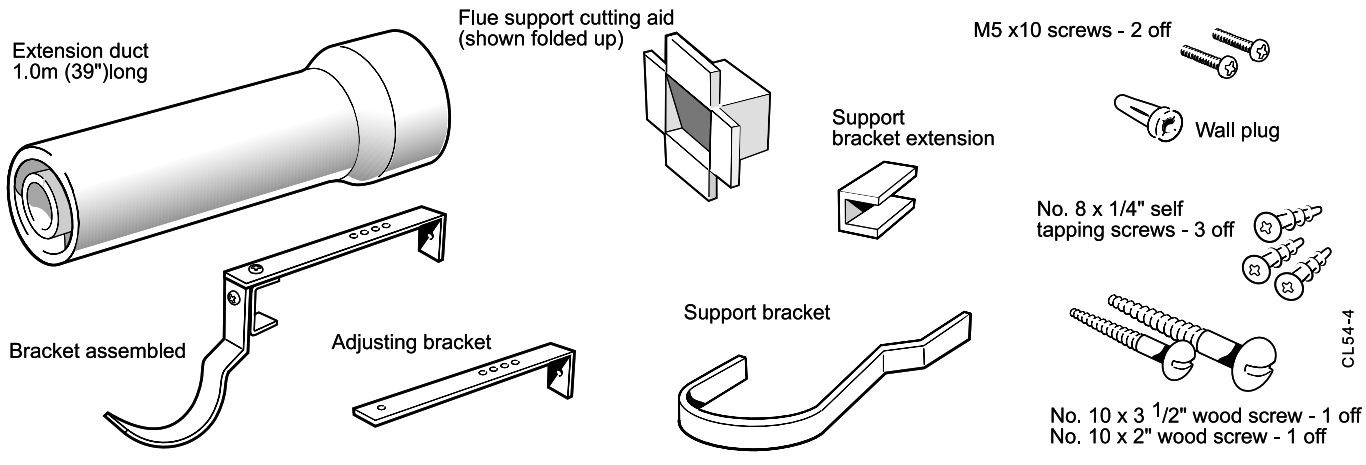
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 3.*



33 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents



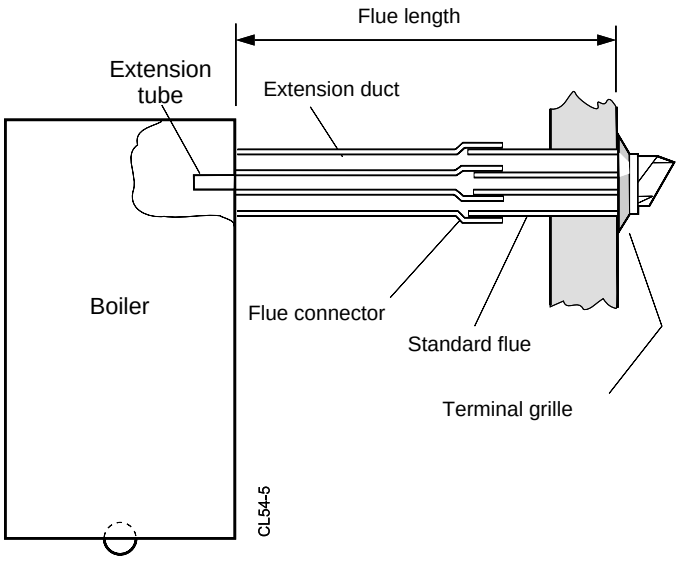
34 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

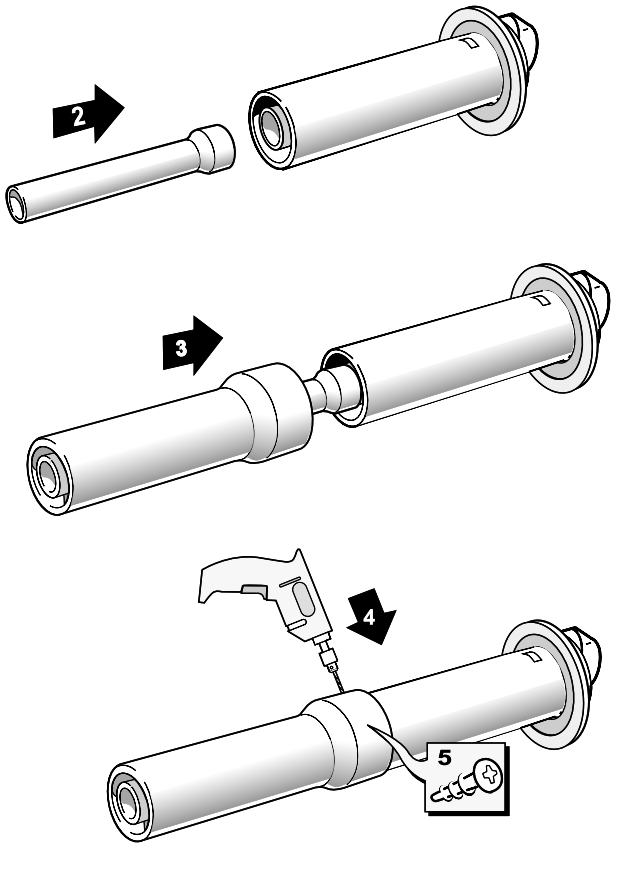
Note. *Side flue shown.*

1. A *maximum* of 3 extension ducts (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.
2. Flue extensions of greater length than 1m (39") should be supported with the bracket provided. If the stand-off brackets have been used it is necessary, in order to keep the flue aligned, to use the spacer bracket with the support bracket.

Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 8
600 to 1550	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 1 off	see Frame 8
1550 to 2500	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 2 off	see Frame 8
2500 to 3000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack, 3 off	see Frame 8



35 FITTING THE KIT



1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill one - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screw provided to fix the air duct in position.
6. Repeat steps 1-5 if a second flue extension is required.

36 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 7.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 37 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

37 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

38 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

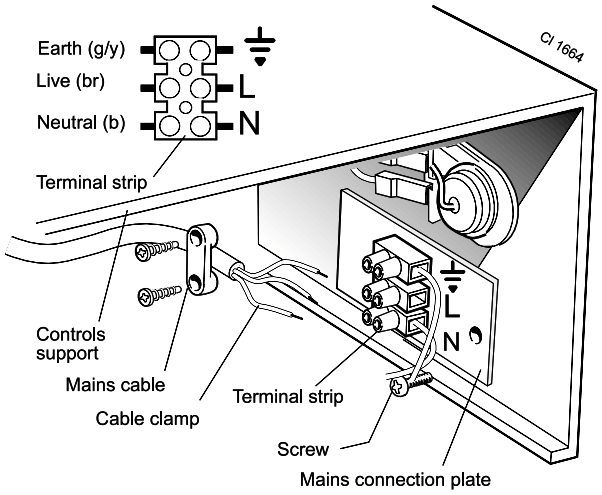
WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

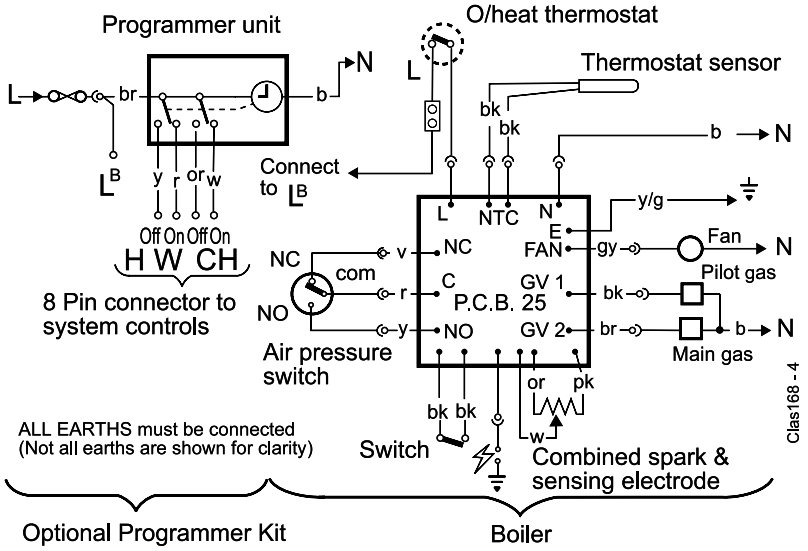
All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulating cable, not less than 0.75mm² (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible.

LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green



Flow wiring diagram



Note. *If the optional Programmer Kit is to be fitted refer to the instructions provided with the kit and Frame 39.*

1. Remove the control box securing screws. Swing the box down into the servicing position. Refer to Frame 46.
2. Route the mains cable into the box from the RHS of the boiler.
3. Connect the live, neutral and earth wires into the terminal strip as shown.
4. Secure the mains lead with the cable clamp.
5. On completion of all wiring connections, relocate the control box and secure.

39 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 39-41 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 41-43.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 43.
3. Controls that switch the circulation pump only on and off, e.g. a room thermostat, must be wired, in series, with the pump in the live pump lead.
4. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
5. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

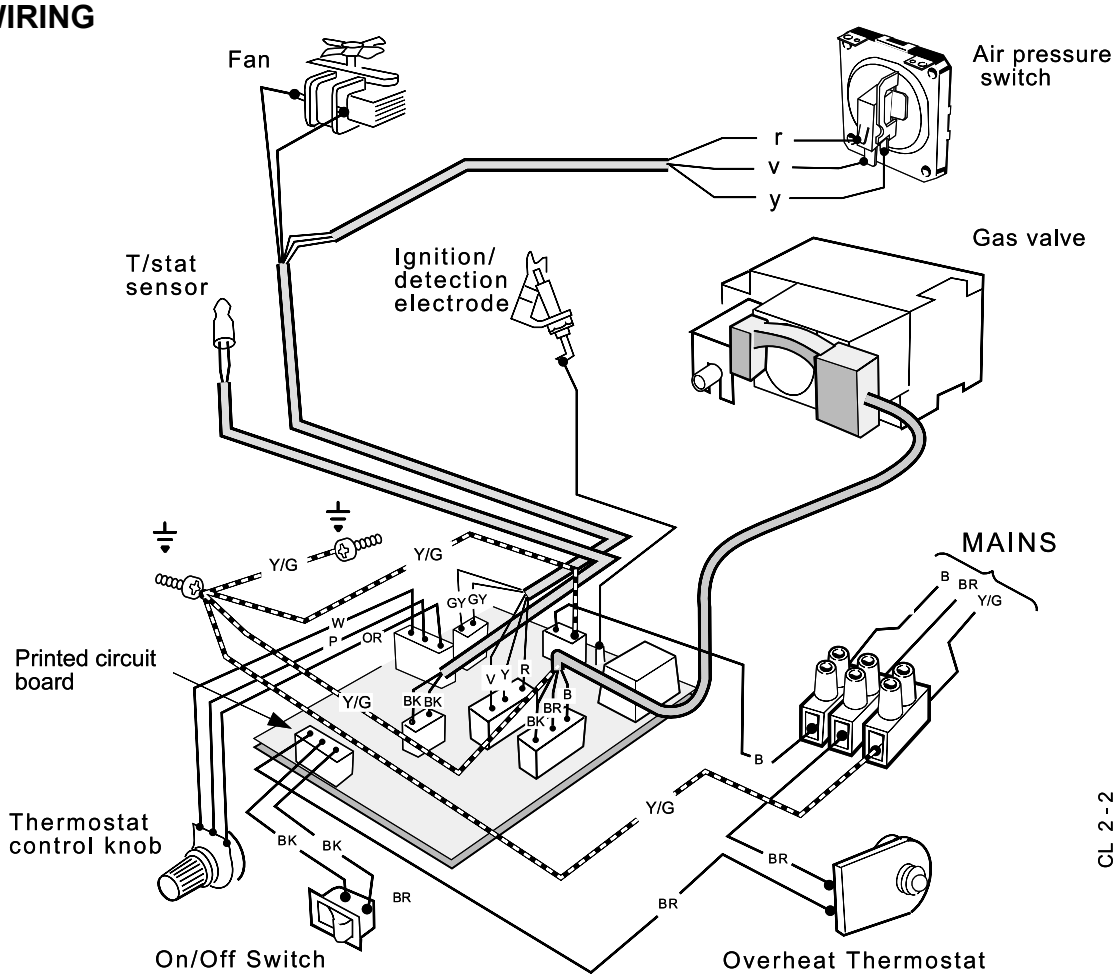
Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

40 PICTORIAL WIRING

LEGEND

gy grey
b blue
bk black
br brown
r red
y yellow
w white
y/g yellow/green
or orange
v violet
p pink



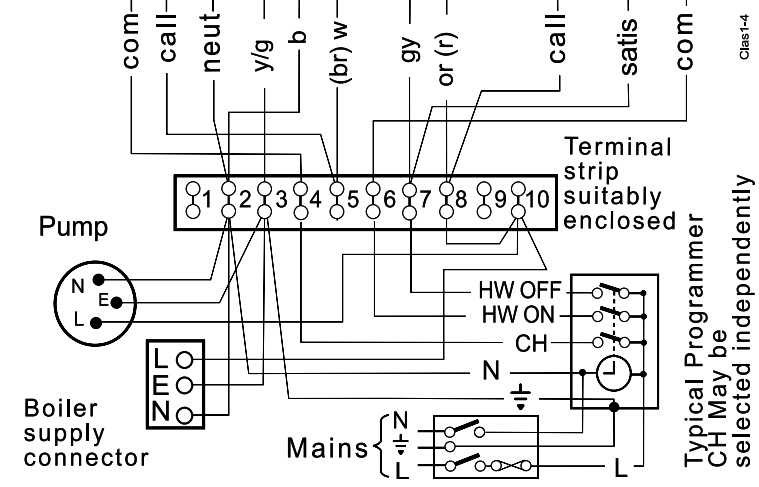
41 MID POSITION VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation, but the wiring differs slightly; see manufacturer's literature.*

	Room Thermostat Terminals			Mid Position valve details	Cylinder Thermostat Terminals		
	1	3	2	HONEYWELL Y PLAN V4073H 1039	1	2	c
TLX 2259 or2284	3	1	4	PEGLER 'Unishare' DT 1701 etc.	1	2	3
	1	2	4	LANDIS & GYR 'LGM' SK3 - LT2701	2	3	1
	1	3	-	A. C. L. 679. H. 340.30.UO	1 bk	2 y	3 r
RTE RTM/RTC	1 3	2 1	4 N	DRAYTON Flowshare 2	2	3	1
	1	3	4	SOPAC Centra Share ZV20 - EB MID	1	2	c
	2	1	4	DANFOSS DMV - 3M	n. c.	n. o.	com.
				SWITCHMASTER			



LEGEND

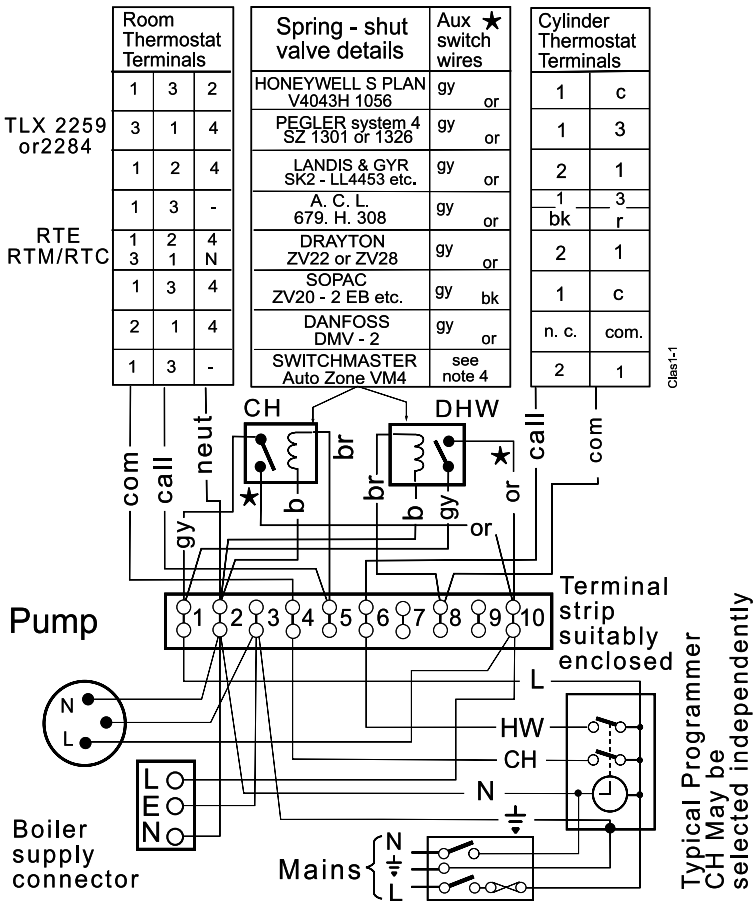
b blue
bk black
br brown
r red
w white
y/g yellow/green
or orange
gy grey

42 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

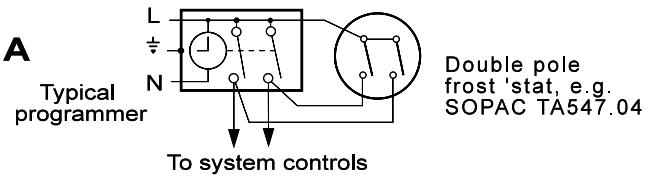
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey & orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

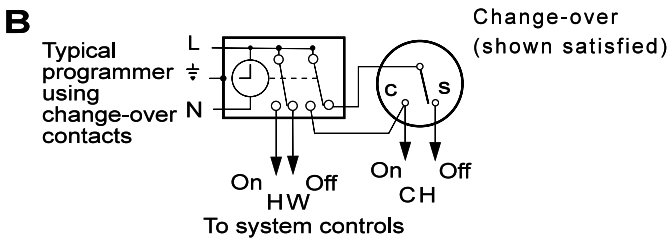


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**v**	violet
y	yellow	**pk**	pink
		gy	grey

43 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost 'thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost 'thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost 'thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

44 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

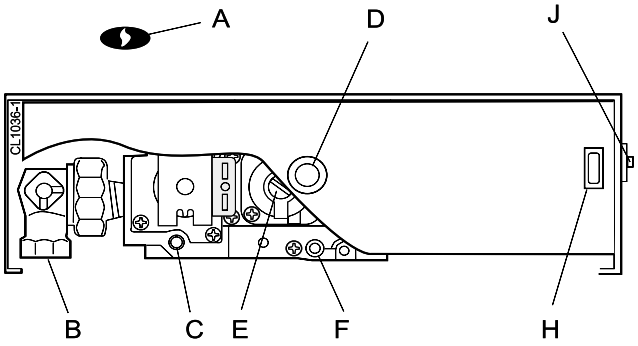
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

45 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

A Sightglass.
B Gas service cock.
C Inlet pressure test point.
D Thermostat knob
E Main burner pressure adjuster.
F Burner pressure test point.
H Boiler mains on/off switch.
J Overheat thermostat reset button.

TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains On/Off switch is OFF.
3. If the boiler output is to be set to minimum or mid, affix the appropriate indicator label supplied in the hardware pack to the data badge, located on the controls support.
4. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**
   The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls support casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws.

   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint.
   Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.

   Note. *If the Sealed System Unit is fitted remove the unit casing in order to inspect the top casing seal.*

   To gain access to the gas valve:

   a. Remove the controls support casing. Release the controls support front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

   b. Remove the control box securing screws and swing it down into the servicing position. See diag. **B** Frame 46.
5. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
6. Swing the control box back into its working position.
7. Press the overheat thermostat reset button (J).
8. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
9. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position 6 and the boiler Mains On/Off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross-light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
10. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
11. Operate the for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
12. The boiler is pre-set at the factory to its highest nominal rating but can be range- rated to suit the system design requirements. Refer to Table 2 (page 2):
    a. Set the mains On/Off switch to OFF.
    b. Switch the electricity supply OFF.
    c. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
    d. Remove the main burner adjuster cover.
    e. Turn the adjusting screw *clockwise* to INCREASE the pressure, or *anticlockwise* to DECREASE the pressure.
    f. Swing the control box back into its working position.
    g. Switch the electricity supply ON.
    h. Set the mains On/Off switch to ON and check the new setting pressure.
13. If necessary repeat steps 12a to h until the required pressure is achieved. Record this value in the Benchmark log book.
14. Set the main On/Off switch to OFF.
15. Switch the electricity supply OFF.
16. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
17. Refit the main burner pressure adjuster cover.
18. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test point. Ensure a gas tight seal is made.

46 INITIAL LIGHTING - continued

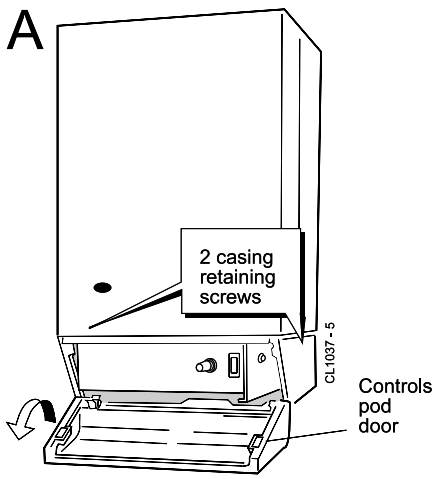
19. Swing the control box back into its working position and secure.

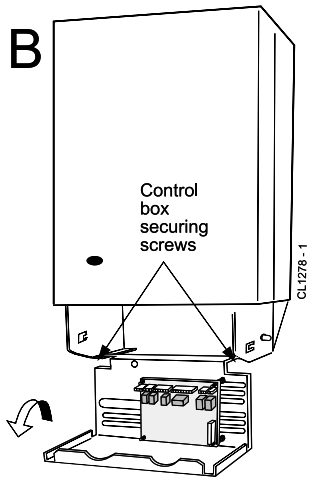
20. Remove the boiler casing.

21. Refit the controls support to the boiler casing and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.

22. Refit the complete casing to the boiler.

23. Close the pod door.





47 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the Mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.

2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved. Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.

3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.

4. Water Circulating System

a. With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.

b. With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down in order to complete the flushing process.

c. Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.

d. Balance the system.

5. Finally set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations:

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING. The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

48 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) or rules in force.

2. Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.

3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.

4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.
Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.

5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.

6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and the local heating installer consulted.

7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.

8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted, then draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.

9. After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the benchmark appliance log book and leave this with the customer.

10. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a Corgi registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

49 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary.
The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually. It is the law that any service work must be carried out by CORGI registered installer**.**

As the installer you may wish to undertake the service contract yourself or alternatively offer to the customer the benefits of the Caradon Ideal Services, details of which are outlined in the household pack supplied with this boiler.

a. Light the boiler and carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults. Operate the boiler for at least 20 minutes. Check the gas consumption.

b. Connect a suitable gas analyser to the sampling point on the top RHS of the back panel. For correct boiler operation the CO/CO_2 content of the flue gas should not be greater than 0.004 ratio. If this is the case and the gas input is at least 90% of the nominal, then no further action need be taken. If not, proceed to paragraph **c**.

c. Clean the main burner. Refer to Frame 53.

d. Clean the heat exchanger. Refer to Frame 52.

e. Clean the main and pilot injectors. Refer to Frame 53.

f. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

g. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

h. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 50 to 54 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING.
Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

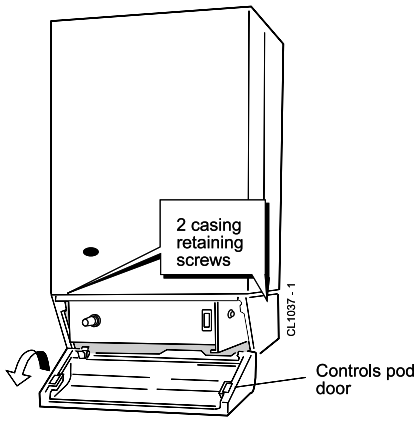
Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed (Frame 50).*

50 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

1. If the **Classic Sealed System Unit** is fitted lift off the casing.

2. Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the back panel. Retain the casing in a safe place. Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 should should be followed.

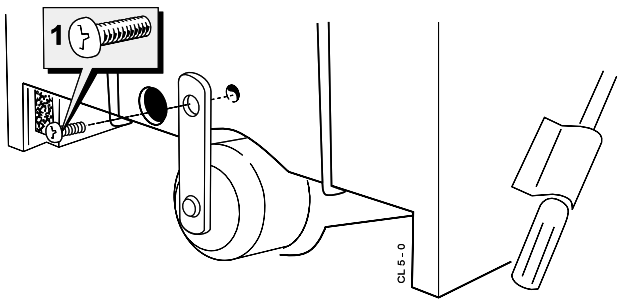
3. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



51 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

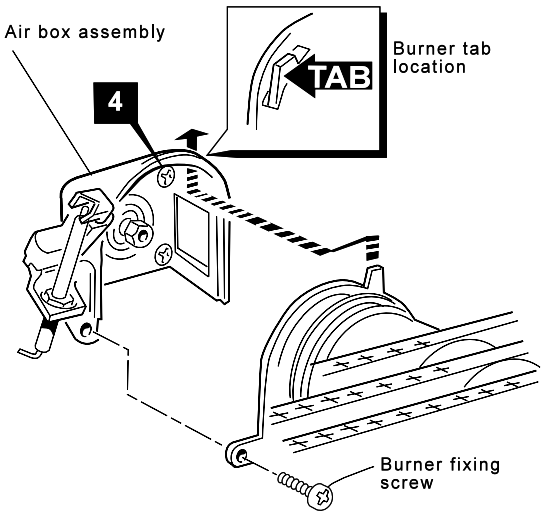
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support bracket to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.

2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.



3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the four screws retaining the air box /pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly



52 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.

2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue

Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side or top flue

Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

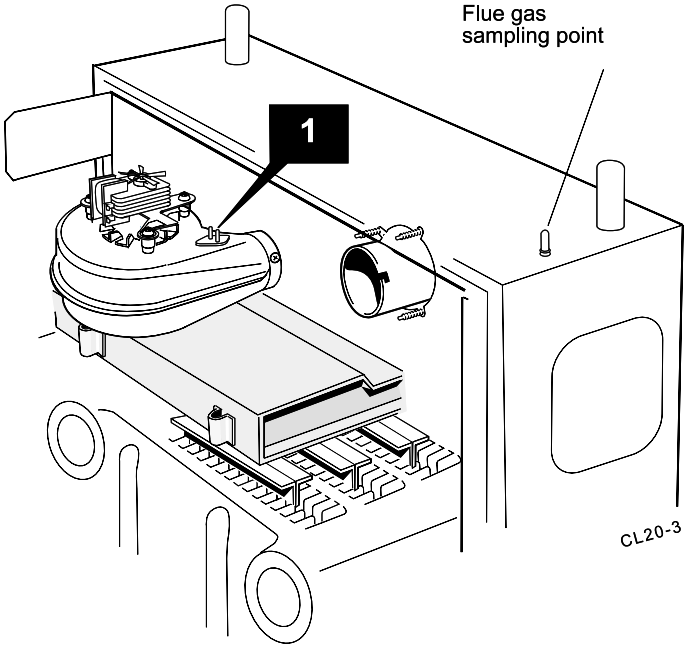
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.

5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.

6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.

7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.

8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.

10. Reassemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

53 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head, ensuring that the flame ports are unobstructed, and remove any debris that may have collected. **Note.** *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*

2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure that there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.

3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.

4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

a. The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 60 for removal details.

b. The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.

c. The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.

d. The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.

e. The spark gap is correct (Frame 60). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

54 REASSEMBLY

Reassemble the boiler in the following order:

1. Refit the flue baffles.

2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally onto the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.

3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.

4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.

5. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 36 & 38.

6. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 57.

7. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock and pressure test point.

8. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 45, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.

9. Close the controls pod door.

55 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 60) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 37 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting' - refer Frame 45.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

56 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.

2. Turn OFF the gas supply.

3. Remove the boiler casing - refer to Frame 50.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate spark operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

57 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

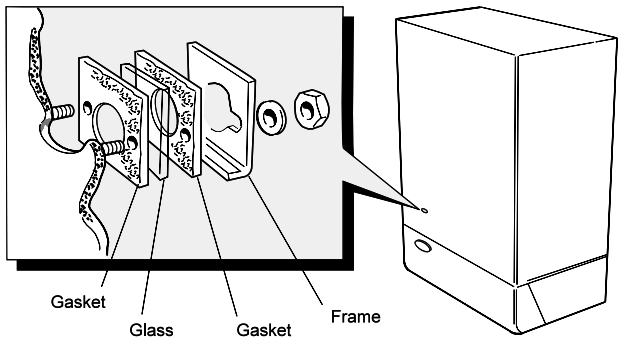
1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Unfasten the two nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.

3. When fixing the new assembly, ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.

4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.

6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 54.



58 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56 & 39.

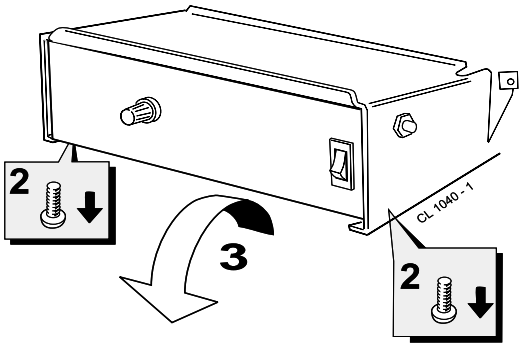
2. Remove the control box fixing screws.

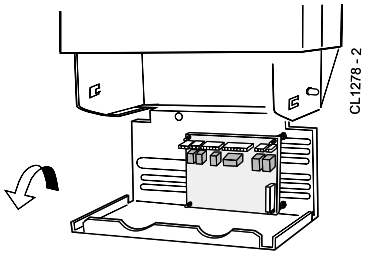
3. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

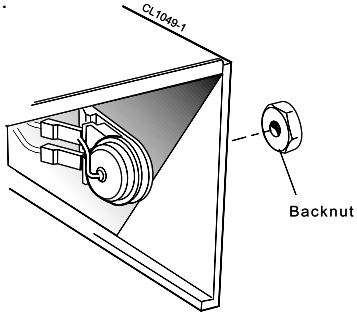
4. Pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Withdraw the thermostat phial from the heat exchanger pocket.

5. Fit the new thermostat and re-assemble in reverse order.

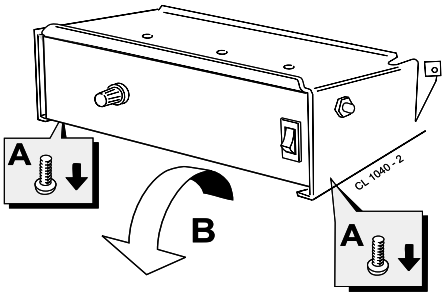
6. Check the operation of the boiler.







59 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD and ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT



Refer also to Frame 56.

A. Remove the fixing screws

B. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

Thermostat control

1. Pull the knob off the shaft.

2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.

3. Pull off the Molex connector from printed circuit board.

4. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

Thermistor sensor lead

5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.

6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.

7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.

8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.

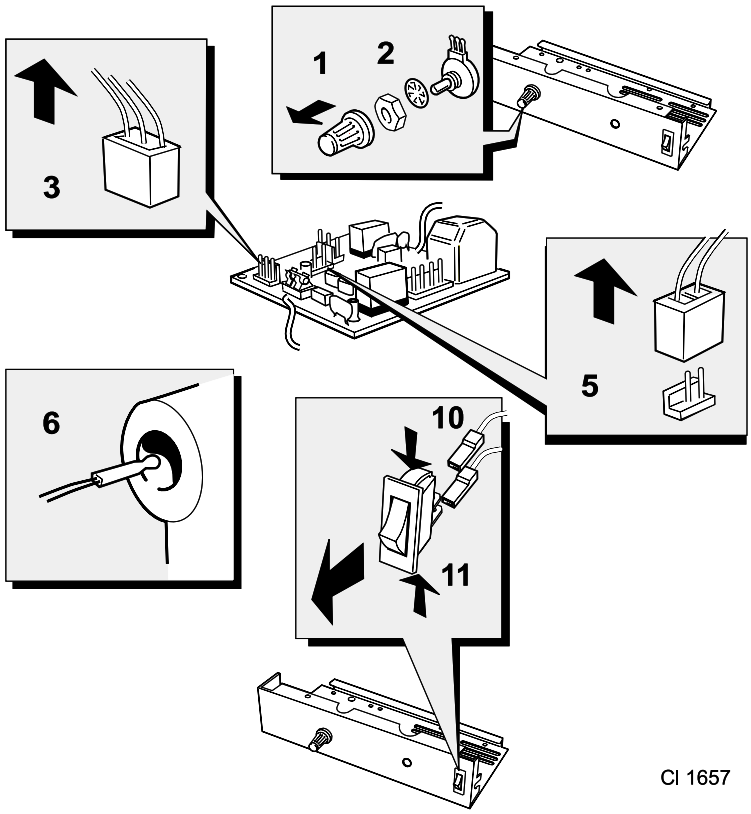
9. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

On/off switch

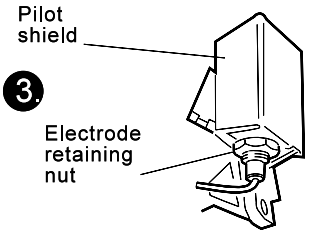
10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.

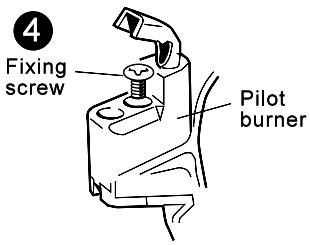
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.

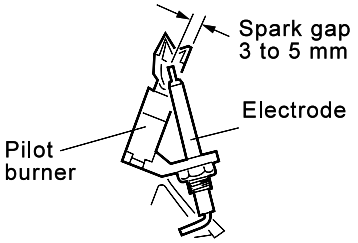
12. Reassemble in reverse order.

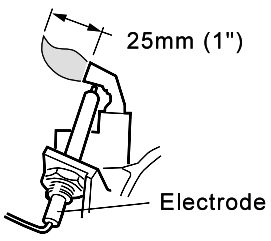


60 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT









1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.

4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.

5. Replace the pilot burner and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.

6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.

7. Reassemble in reverse order.

8. Check the operation of the boiler.

9. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

61 SPARK ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.

4. Remove the pilot shield.

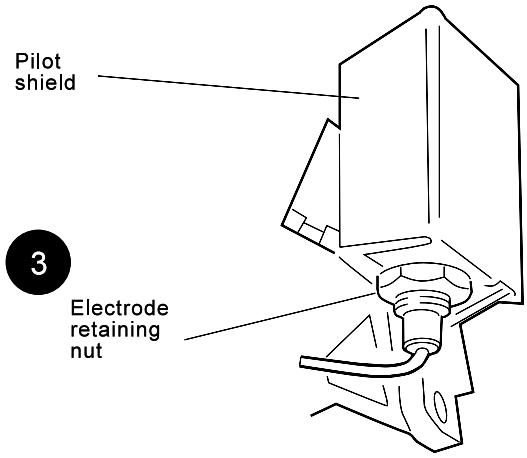
5. Remove the spark electrode and integral lead.

6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.

7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 60.

8. Reassemble in reverse order.

9. Check the operation of the boiler.



62 MAIN BURNER & MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.

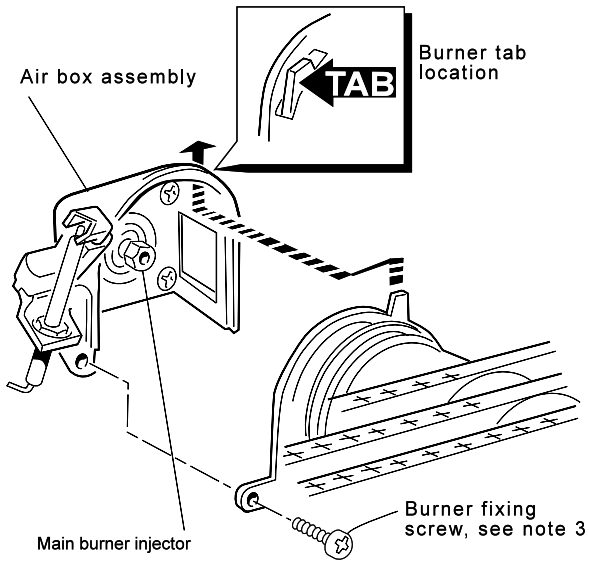
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.

3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.

4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that an approved jointing compound us used sparingly.

5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot and reassemble in reverse order.

6. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.



63 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer also to Frame 71 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

3. Remove the fixing screws.
Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

4. Disconnect the gas control valve electrical leads.

5. Undo the gas cock union .

6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the 2 screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.

7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.

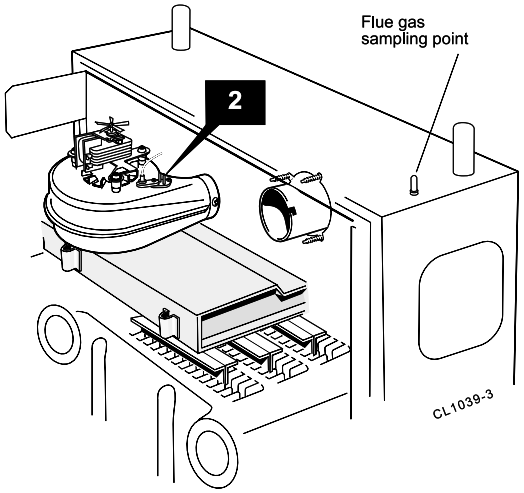
8. Remove the 4 screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on back indicates the direction of flow).

9. Transfer the gas cock union to the new gas control valve, using an approved jointing compound.

10. Re-assemble in reverse order.

11. Check the operation of the boiler.

64 FAN REPLACEMENT



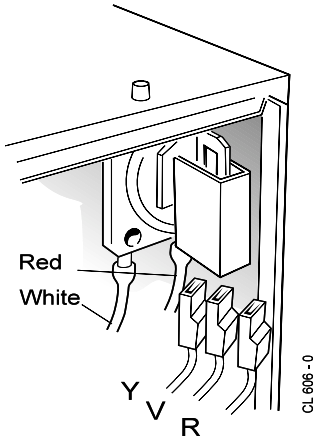
1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
3. Disconnect the fan leads.

4a. **Rear flue.** Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

4b. **Side or top flue.** Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

5. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
6. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
7. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood / fan assembly.
8. Remove the three M4 screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.
9. Fit the new fan and re-assemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads, and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.
10. Check the operation of the boiler.

65 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT



1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the APS fixing screw.
3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.
5. Fit the new APS and reassemble in reverse order.
6. Check the operation of the boiler.

66 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

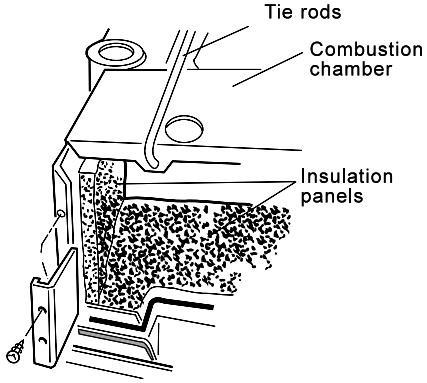
Note. *Refer to Frame 72 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the fixing screws and swing the control box down into the servicing position.
3. Disconnect the detection lead from the PCB.
4. Unplug all the Molex connectors from the PCB.
5. Disengage the PCB from the mounting posts and withdraw from the control box.
6. Fit the new PCB and re-assemble in reverse order.
7. Check the operation of the boiler.

Fuse.

To change the fuse, prise it out of the holder and disengage the fuse. Refer to Frame 72 for fuse location.

67 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT



1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.
3. Remove the 4 tie rods.
4. Remove the combustion chamber.
5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.
6. Remove the side insulation panels.
7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.
8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.
9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.
10. Re-assemble in reverse order.

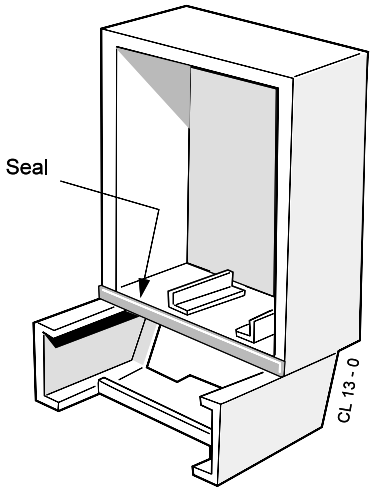
68 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frame 7 (Boiler Assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the burner /air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.
3. Drain the system.
4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings, in order to allow the heat exchange assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.
5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 52.
6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.
7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.
8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / interpanel retaining screws.
9. Lift the heat exchanger / interpanel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downward to clear the water pipes from the back panel.
10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.
11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.
12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.
13. Reassembly in reverse order.
14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.
15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

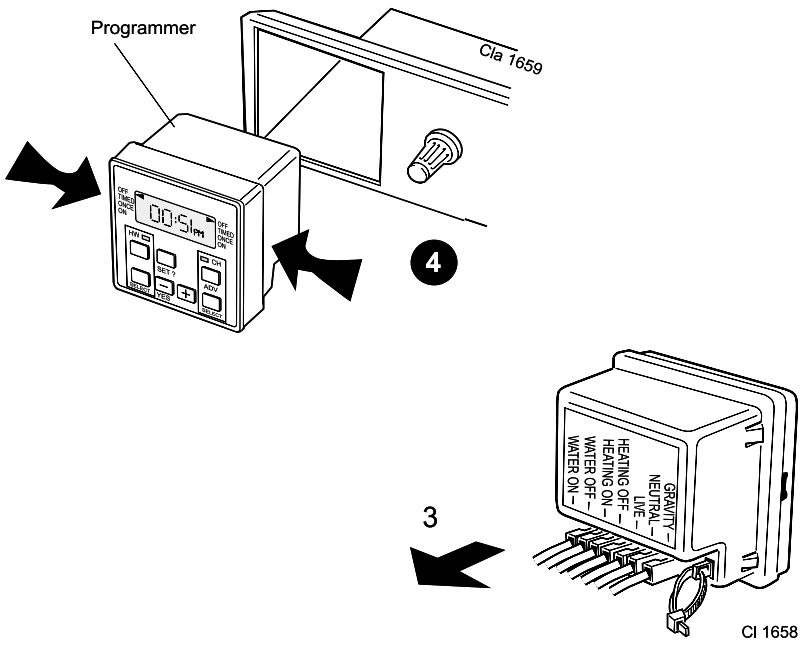
69 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

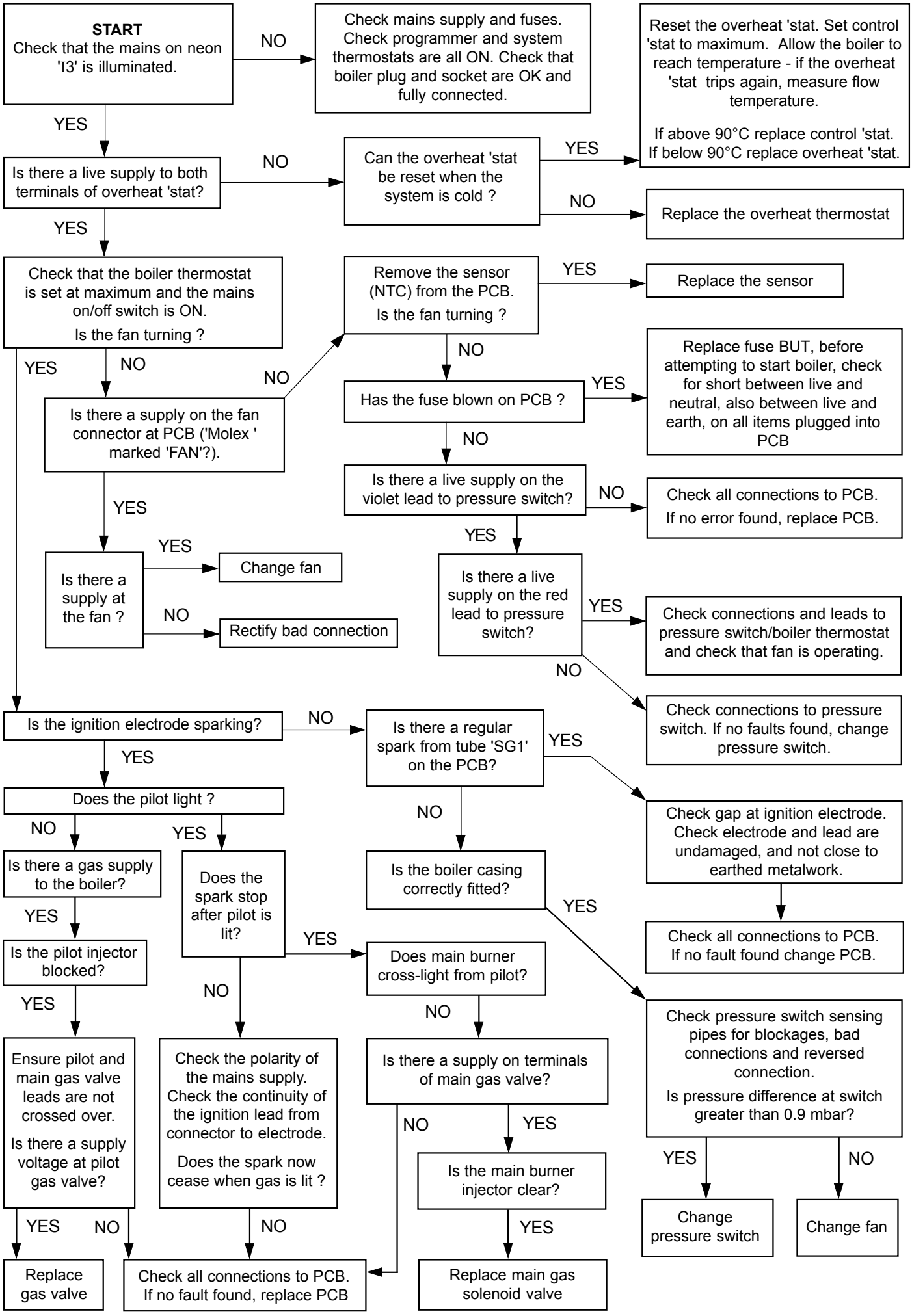
1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the old seal from the bottom edge of the casing and also from the edges of the boiler back panel.
3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.
4. Replace the boiler casing.



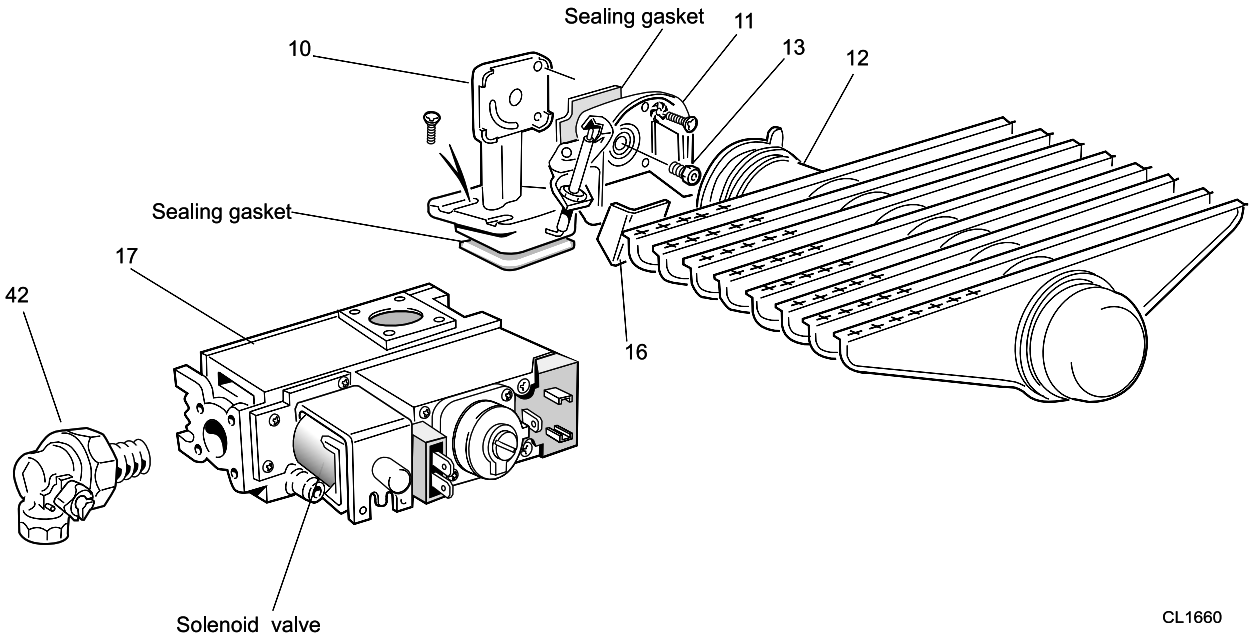
70 PROGRAMMER REPLACEMENT (IF FITTED)

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the fixing screws and swing the control box down into the servicing position.
3. Pull off the terminal connections from back of programmer.
4. Compress the lugs at each side of the programmer and withdraw it from the control panel.
5. Fit the new programmer in reverse order.
6. Set the programmer to the desired programme and check the operation of the boiler.




START
Check that the mains on neon 'I3' is illuminated.
NO
Check mains supply and fuses. Check programmer and system thermostats are all ON. Check that boiler plug and socket are OK and fully connected.
YES
Is there a live supply to both terminals of overheat 'stat?
NO
Can the overheat 'stat be reset when the system is cold ?
YES
Reset the overheat 'stat. Set control 'stat to maximum. Allow the boiler to reach temperature - if the overheat 'stat trips again, measure flow temperature.
If above 90°C replace control 'stat. If below 90°C replace overheat 'stat.
NO
Replace the overheat thermostat
YES
Check that the boiler thermostat is set at maximum and the mains on/off switch is ON.
Is the fan turning ?
YES
NO
Is there a supply on the fan connector at PCB ('Molex ' marked 'FAN'?).
NO
Remove the sensor (NTC) from the PCB.
Is the fan turning ?
YES
Replace the sensor
NO
Has the fuse blown on PCB ?
YES
Replace fuse BUT, before attempting to start boiler, check for short between live and neutral, also between live and earth, on all items plugged into PCB
NO
Is there a live supply on the violet lead to pressure switch?
NO
Check all connections to PCB.
If no error found, replace PCB.
YES
YES
Is there a supply at the fan ?
YES
Change fan
NO
Rectify bad connection
Is there a live supply on the red lead to pressure switch?
YES
Check connections and leads to pressure switch/boiler thermostat and check that fan is operating.
NO
Check connections to pressure switch. If no faults found, change pressure switch.
Is the ignition electrode sparking?
NO
Is there a regular spark from tube 'SG1' on the PCB?
YES
Check gap at ignition electrode. Check electrode and lead are undamaged, and not close to earthed metalwork.
YES
Does the pilot light ?
NO
YES
NO
Is the boiler casing correctly fitted?
YES
Check all connections to PCB. If no fault found change PCB.
Is there a gas supply to the boiler?
YES
Does the spark stop after pilot is lit?
YES
Does main burner cross-light from pilot?
NO
Is the pilot injector blocked?
YES
NO
NO
Check pressure switch sensing pipes for blockages, bad connections and reversed connection.
Is pressure difference at switch greater than 0.9 mbar?
YES
NO
Ensure pilot and main gas valve leads are not crossed over.
Is there a supply voltage at pilot gas valve?
Check the polarity of the mains supply. Check the continuity of the ignition lead from connector to electrode.
Does the spark now cease when gas is lit ?
Is there a supply on terminals of main gas valve?
NO
YES
Is the main burner injector clear?
YES
NO
YES
NO
NO
YES
Change pressure switch
Change fan
Replace gas valve
Check all connections to PCB. If no fault found, replace PCB
Replace main gas solenoid valve

71 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

10. Burner manifold

11. Air box and pilot assembly.

12. Main burner.

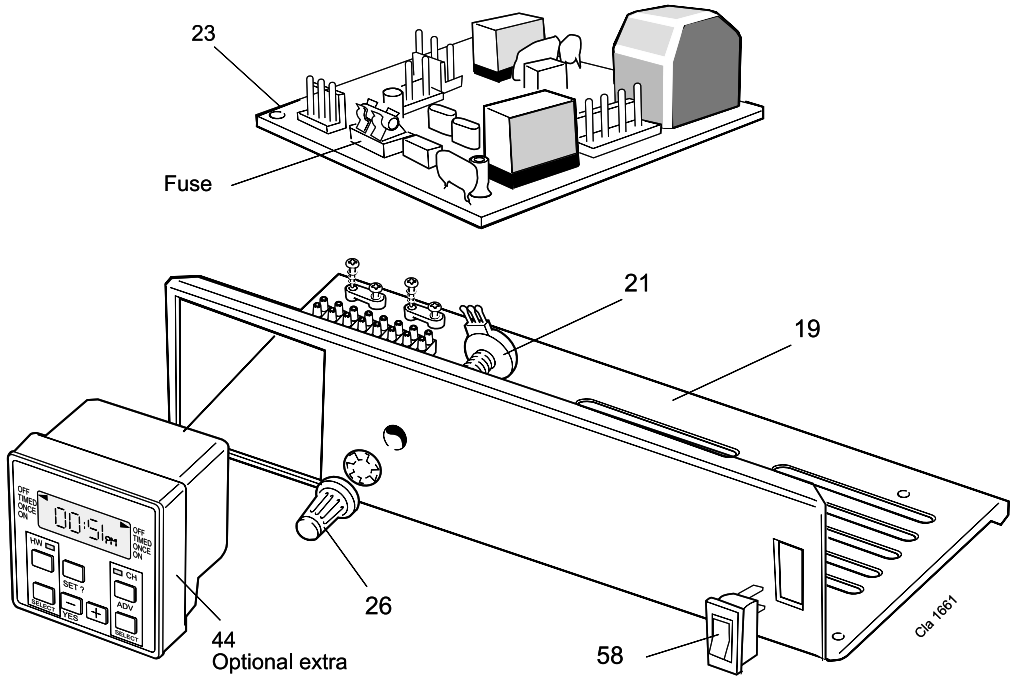
13. Main burner injector.

16. Pilot shield.

17. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

72 CONTROL BOX - Exploded view



LEGEND

19. Control box.

21. Thermostat potentiometer.

23. Printed circuit board.

26. Thermostat knob.

58. Mains on/off switch.

SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

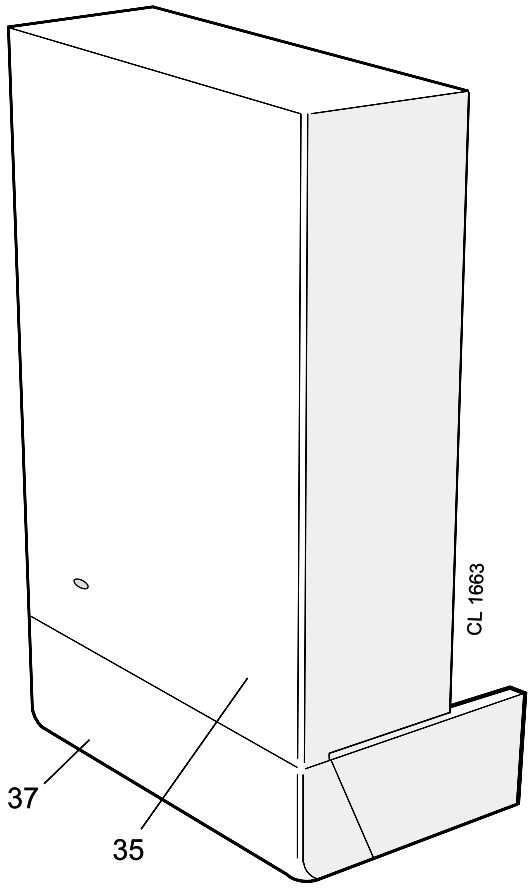
The full list is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

When ordering spares please quote:

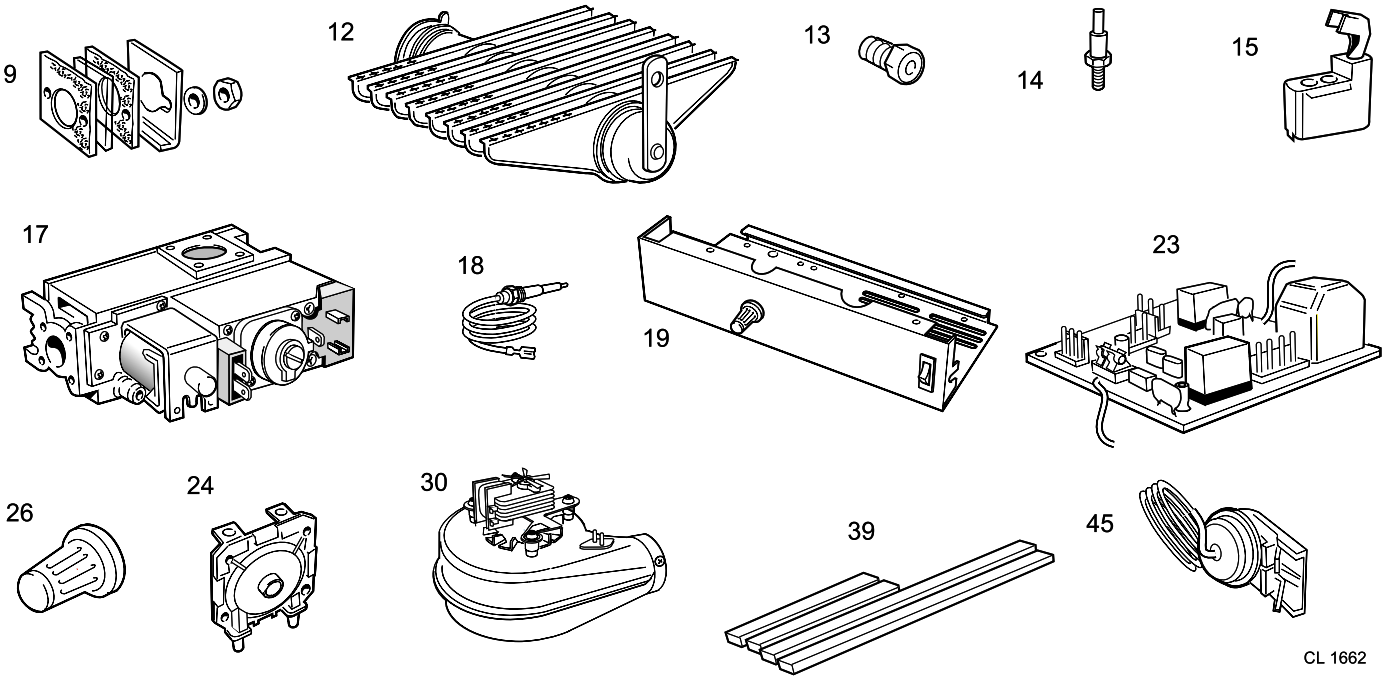
1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
13		Main burner		
	173 115	AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 296; FF 250 P & FF 260 P	1	112699
	173 116	AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 295; FF 275 P	1	112700
14		Main burner injector		
	389 612	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 520; FF 250 P		003 861
	389 540	BRAY Cat. 16 - size 600; FF 260 P	1	112 701
	398 043	BRAY Cat. 10 - size 800; FF 275 P	1	004 858
15	397 925	Pilot burner injector: Propane 459 00421-003 (stamped 20/23P)	1	005 018
16	173 117	Pilot burner head with injector: Propane	1	079 625
18	379 921	Gas control valve HONEYWELL VR 4601 EA, 230 V	1	111 074
19	308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm long	1	111 881
20	E02 653	Controls box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	151 252
24	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
25	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board PACTROL PCB No. 25 B	1	079716
27	385 861	Pressure switch assembly: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 F 1373:2	1	155 412
28	E02 661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No. WFFB 0221-039	1	151 586
33		Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation and M5 x 16 dogpoint pozipan head screws	1	075 391
36	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instr.	1	079 941
37		Casing sealing pack complete with screws	1	075 392
51	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 - P8508	1	113 200
56	-	Controls casing bottom panel	1	138 267

73 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY



74 SHORT PARTS LIST



benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01482 498 432*

CERTIFIED TO BRITISH STANDARDS BS6332 BS5258

THIS SYMBOL IS YOUR ASSURANCE OF QUALITY

FF.87/AP/107
RS.87/AP/108

Propane Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

These appliances are designed for use with Propane Gas only. They have been tested and conform with the provisions of BS. 6332 and BS. 5258.

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd. P.O. Box 103, National Ave., Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137.

Caradon Plumbing Ltd. pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

CE

i Ideal BOILERS

May 2001 UIN 156857 A02

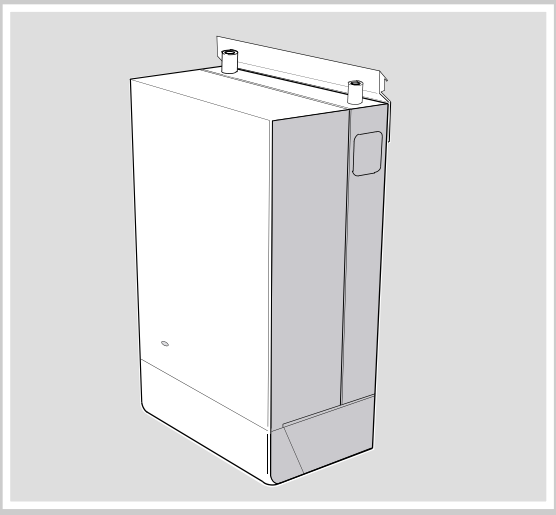
Caradon

Plumbing Solutions

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

www.idealboilers.com

THE IDEAL INSTALLATION & SERVICING MANUAL



Classic Slimline

the wall hung boiler

Wall hung, fanned flue, gas fired boiler

FF 230 - 260

Ideal BOILERS

Installers guide to central heating boilers

Classic Slimline FF

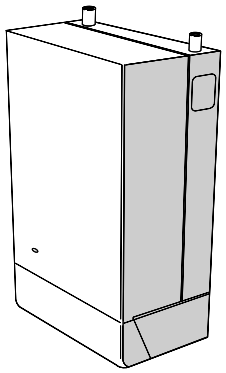
Natural Gas only

Data Badge: on top of the controls support

B.G. Certified - P.I. No. 87 BL 43

Destination Countries: GB & IE Appliance type: C_{12}

Slimline models	G.C. Appliance No.
Classic FF 230	41 387 74
Classic FF 240	41 387 75
Classic FF 250	41 387 76
Classic FF 260	41 387 77



Key to symbols

IE = Ireland

GB = United Kingdom (Countries of destination)

PMS = Maximum operating pressure of water

C_{12} = A room sealed appliance designed for connection via ducts to a horizontal terminal, which admits fresh air to the burner and discharges the products of combustion to the outside through orifices which, in this case, are concentric. The fan is down stream of the combustion chamber.

I_{2H} = An appliance designed for use on 2nd Family gas, Group H only.

BENCHMARK LOG BOOK DETAILS

Boiler	**Page**
Make and model	3
Appliance Serial No. on Data Badge	11
Controls	as applicable
For all boilers	
Flushing to BS.7593	7
Inhibitor	7
Gas inlet working pressure	6
Burner operating pressure	2
Heat input	to be calculated
Temperature differential	measure and record
For combination boilers only	Not applicable
For domestic hot water mode	Not applicable
For condensing boilers	Not applicable

For all boilers: *complete, sign & hand over to customer*

For assistance see Technical Helpline on the back page

CONTENTS

Air Supply 6

Boiler Clearances 5

Boiler Exploded View 11

Burner Exploded View 36

Control Box Exploded View 36

Electrical Connections 21

Electrical Regulations 7

Extension Ducts - Fitting 19

External Control 21

Fault Finding 33

Flue Installation 6
Rear installation 13
Side installation 16

Gas Safety 4

Gas Supply 6

Initial Lighting 24

Installation 10

Mandatory Requirements 4

Pump 8

Servicing 26

Short List of Parts 34

Spares Replacement 28

System Diagrams 22

Terminal Guards 6

Water and Systems 7

Water Treatment 7

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance, care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components.

GENERAL

Table 1 - General Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260
Gas supply connection		(in. BSP)	Rc 1/2 (1/2) 1/2" (BSP Female)			
Flow connection			22mm copper			
Return connection			22mm copper			
Maximum static water head		m (ft.)	30.5 (100)			
Minimum static water head		m (ft.)	0.45 (1.5)			
Electrical supply			230 V 50 Hz Boiler power consumption; 100W			
Fuse rating			External; 3A Internal; F1A to BS.4265			
Water content		litre (gal.)	2.7 (0.6)		3.65 (0.8)	
Dry Weight		kg (lb)	40.9 (90.3)		46.6 (102.8)	
Maximum installation weight kg (lb)		31.4 (69.3)	37.4 (82.5)			
Boiler size	Height	mm (in.)	700 (27.5)			
	Width	mm (in.)	380 (15.0)			
	Depth	mm (in.)	280 (11.0)			
Flue duct diameter		mm (in.)	100 (4.0)			
Flue duct length (max)		m (ft)	1.0 (3.3)			

Table 2 - Performance Data

Boiler Size			FF 230	FF 240	FF 250	FF 260
Boiler input	MINIMUM	kW	5.6	11.3	15.0	18.5
(Gross)		Btu/h x 1000	19.1	38.5	51.2	63.3
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.15	0.29	0.38	0.49
		ft^3/h	19.4	37.1	48.7	62.9
	MID	kW	8.3	13.0	16.7	20.3
		Btu/h x 1000	28.5	44.3	56.85	69.2
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.22	0.34	0.43	0.53
		ft^3/h	28.1	42.7	54.5	67.6
	MAXIMUM	kW	11.0	14.7	18.3	22.0
		Btu/h x 1000	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0
	Gas consumption	l/s	0.28	0.38	0.47	0.57
		ft^3/h	36.1	48.2	60.2	72.3
Boiler output	MINIMUM	kW	4.4	8.8	11.7	14.7
		Btu/h x 1000	15	30	40	50
	MID	kW	6.6	10.3	13.2	16.1
		Btu/h x 1000	22.5	35	45	55
	MAXIMUM	kW	8.8	11.7	14.7	17.6
		Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60
Burner Setting pressure (HOT)	MINIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	3.3 (1.3)	6.6 (2.6)	8.8(3.5)	10.0 (4.0)
	MID	mbar (in.w.g.)	7.4 (2.9)	9.2 (3.7)	11.5 (4.6)	12.3 (4.9)
	MAXIMUM	mbar (in.w.g.)	13.1 (5.2)	11.7 (4.7)	13.8 (5.5)	14.4 (5.8)
Seasonal Efficiency (SEDBUK) *		[ ] %	Band E 76.2	Band E 75.8	Band E 76.2	Band E 76.7

* The value is used in the UK Government's Standard Assessment Procedure (SAP) for energy rating of dwellings. The test data from which it has been calculated have been certified by BG plc 0087.

Note. *Gas consumption is calculated using a calorific value of 38.7 MJ/m^3 (1038 Btu/ft^3) gross or 34.9 MJ/m^3 (935 Btu/ft^3) nett*

To obtain the gas consumption at a different calorific value:-

a. ***FOR L/S*** *- divide the gross heat input (kW) by the gross C.V. of the gas (MJ/m^3)*

b. ***FOR FT^3/H*** *- divide the gross heat input (Btu/h) by the gross C.V. of the gas (Btu/ft^3)*

INTRODUCTION

The Classic Slimline FF230-260 is a range of automatically fully controlled, wall mounted, balanced flue, fanned gas boilers.

The heat exchanger is cast iron. The boiler casing is of white enamelled mild steel.

The boiler casing has a removable controls pod containing a drop-down door. The boiler thermostat is located behind the drop- down door.

Note. *These boilers cannot be used on systems which include gravity circulation.* If gravity circulation is required the **Classic RS** range of boilers is suitable.

See Frame 1 for details of the correct boiler tappings to use.

The boilers are supplied with a standard flue kit suitable for rear or side outlet applications from 114 mm (4 1/2") to 600 mm (23 1/2").

The boilers are suitable for connection to the following open vented or sealed systems:

- Fully pumped CH and indirect DHW
- Pumped heating only.
- Pumped indirect DHW only.

OPTIONAL EXTRA KITS

Extension duct - up to 1m (39").

Cupboard installation - multi-pack Product No.156663

CURRENT GAS SAFETY (INSTALLATION AND USE) REGULATIONS OR RULES IN FORCE.

It is law that **all** gas appliances are installed by a CORGI registered installer in accordance with the above regulations. Failure to install appliances correctly could lead to prosecution. It is in your own interest, and that of safety, to ensure the law is complied with.

The installation of the boiler MUST also be in accordance with the latest I.E.E (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations, local building regulations, bylaws of the local water authority, the Building Regulations and Building Standards (Scotland) and any relevant requirements of the local authority.

Detailed recommendations are contained in the following British Standard Codes of Practice:

BS.6891 Low pressure installation pipes.

BS.6798 Installation of gas fired hot water boilers of rated input not exceeding 60 kW.

BS.5449 Forced circulation hot water systems.

BS.5546 Installation of gas hot water supplies for domestic purposes (2nd Family Gases).

BS.7593 Treatment of water in domestic hot water central heating systems.

BS.5440.1 Flues for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 70 kW.

BS.5440.2 Ventilation for gas appliances of rated input not exceeding 70 kW.

Health & Safety Document No. 635

The Electricity at Work Regulations, 1989.

Manufacturer's notes must NOT be taken in any way as overriding statutory obligations.

IMPORTANT. These appliances are certificated by the BG Technology Certification Services for safety and performance. It is, therefore, important that no external control devices, e.g. flue dampers, economisers etc., are directly connected to these appliances -unless covered by these Installation and Servicing instructions or otherwise recommended by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** in writing. If in doubt please enquire.

Any direct reconnection of a control device not approved by **Caradon Plumbing Limited** could invalidate the certification and the normal appliance warranty. It could also infringe the Gas Safety Regulations and the above regulations.

SAFE HANDLING OF SUBSTANCES

Care should be taken when handling the boiler insulation panels, which can cause irritation to the skin. No asbestos, mercury or CFCs are included in any part of the boiler.

LOCATION OF BOILER

The boiler must be installed on a flat and vertical wall, capable of adequately supporting the weight of the boiler and any ancillary equipment.

The boiler may be fitted on a combustible wall and insulation between the wall and the boiler is not necessary - unless required by the local authority. **The boiler must not be fitted outside.**

Timber Framed Buildings

If the boiler is to be fitted in a timber framed building it should be fitted in accordance with the Institute of Gas Engineering document IGE/UP/7:1998.

Bathrooms

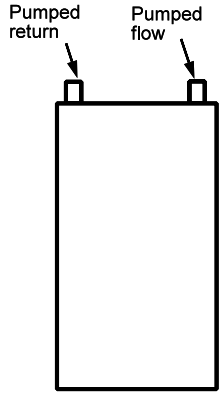
The boiler may be installed in any room or internal space, although particular attention is drawn to the requirements of the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and, in Scotland, the electrical provisions of the building regulations applicable in Scotland with respect to the installation of the boiler in a room or internal space containing a bath or shower.

.....continued on page 6.

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER. ALSO COMPLETE THE BENCHMARK LOG BOOK AND GIVE THIS TO THE CUSTOMER.

1 BOILER WATER CONNECTIONS

This appliance in NOT suitable for use in a direct hot water system or for gravity circulation.



2 BOILER CLEARANCES

The following minimum clearances must be maintained for operation and servicing.

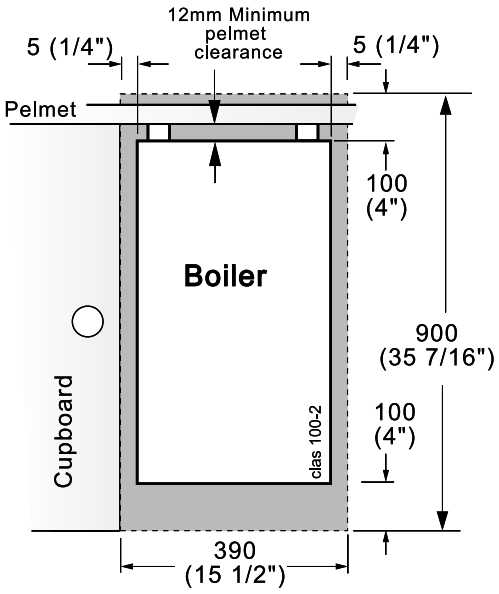
Additional space will be required for installation, depending upon site conditions.

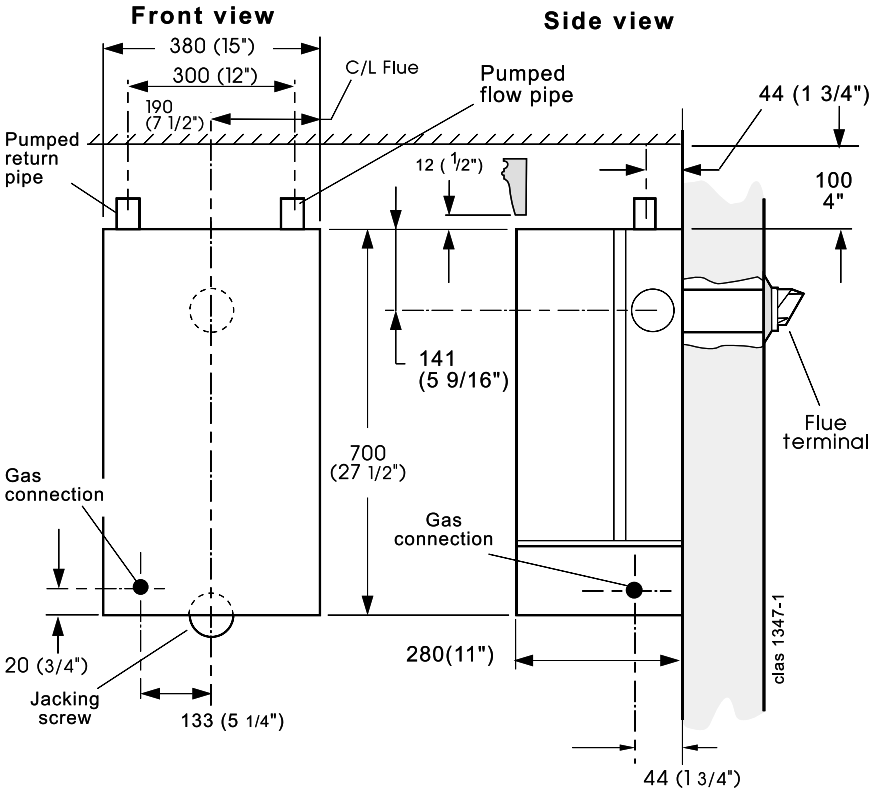
Side and Rear Flue

a. Provided that the flue hole is cut accurately, e.g. with a core drill, the flue can be installed from inside the building.

Installation from inside ONLY

b. If a core boring tool is to be used inside the building; the space in which the boiler is to be installed must be at least wide enough to accommodate the tool.





Front clearance: 533mm (21") from the front of the boiler casing.

Minimum front clearance when built behind a concealing panel is 5mm (1/4") provided that the top and bottom of the casing are *NOT* enclosed.

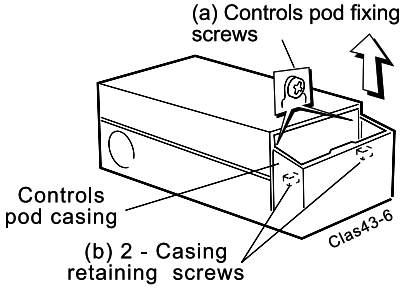
Pelmet restrictions.

If the ability to fit or remove the casing during installation and subsequent servicing is impaired by pelmets etc. this operation can be made easier by first removing the controls pod casing in line with the following instructions:

a. Release the controls pod casing fixing screws (a) 3 full turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

b. Undo the 2 screws (b) retaining casing to the back panel.

c. The casing can now be removed in the direction of the arrow, first lifting the casing slightly to disengage the casing top return from the back panel. (For this purpose a minimum clearance of 12mm is required between the top of the boiler and pelmet or other similar obstruction.



Where a room-sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower.

Where installation will be in an unusual location, special procedures may be necessary and BS.6798 gives detailed guidance on this aspect.

Compartment Installations

A compartment used to enclose the boiler MUST be designed and constructed specially for this purpose.
An existing cupboard or compartment may be used, provided it is modified for the purpose.

In both cases details of essential features of cupboards/compartment design, including airing cupboard installation, are to conform to the following :

- BS. 6798.
- The position selected for installation MUST allow adequate space for servicing in front of the boiler and for air circulation around the boiler. Refer to 'Air Supply'.
- For the minimum clearances required for safety and subsequent service refer to Frame 2. In addition, sufficient space may be required to allow lifting access to the wall mounting plate.

GAS SUPPLY

The local gas supplier should be consulted, at the installation planning stage, in order to establish the availability of an adequate supply of gas. An existing service pipe must NOT be used without prior consultation with the local gas supplier.

The boiler is to be installed only on gas supply with a governed meter.

A gas meter can only be connected by the local gas supplier or by a local regional contractor.

An existing meter should be checked, preferably by the gas supplier, to ensure that the meter is adequate to deal with the rate of gas supply required. A MINIMUM pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating.

Installation pipes MUST be fitted in accordance with BS. 6891. Pipework from the meter to the boiler MUST be of an adequate size.

The complete installation MUST be tested for gas soundness and purged as described in the above code.

FLUE INSTALLATION

The flue must be installed in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 5440:1.

The following notes are intended for general guidance:-

1. The boiler MUST be installed so that the terminal is exposed to external air.

2. It is important that the position of the terminal allows the free passage of air across it at all times.

3. Minimum acceptable spacing from the terminal to obstructions and ventilation openings are specified in Table 3.

4. Where the lowest part of the terminal is fitted less than 2m (6'6") above a balcony, above ground or above a flat roof to which people have access then the terminal MUST be protected by a purpose designed guard.

Table 3 - Balanced flue terminal position

Terminal Position	Minimum Spacing
1. Directly below or alongside an opening window, air vent or other ventilation opening	300 mm (12")
2. Below guttering, drain pipes or soil pipes	75 mm (3")
3. Below eaves	200 mm (8")
4. Below balconies or a car port roof	200 mm (8")
5. From vertical drain pipes or soil pipes	75 mm (8")
6. From internal or external corners	300 mm (12")
7. Above adjacent ground, roof or balcony level	300 mm (12")
8. From a surface facing the terminal	600 mm (24")
9. From a terminal facing a terminal	1200 mm (48")
10. From an opening in a car port (e.g. door or window) into dwelling	1200 mm (48")
11. Vertically from a terminal on the same wall	1500 mm (60")
12. Horizontally from a terminal on the wall	300 mm (12")

Terminals guards are available from boiler suppliers - ask for Tower Flue Guard, Model K1. In case of difficulty seek advice from:

Tower Flue Components Ltd.,
Vale Rise, Tonbridge, Kent TN9 1TB (Model K1)
Telephone No. 01732 351 555

Ensure that the guard is fitted centrally.

5. Where the terminal is fitted within 1000mm (39 1/2") of a plastic or painted gutter or 500mm (19 1/2") of painted eaves then an aluminium shield at least 1000mm (39 1/2") long should be fitted to the underside of the gutter or painted surface.

6. The air inlet/products outlet duct and the terminal of the boiler MUST NOT be closer than 25mm (1") to combustible material. Detailed recommendations on the protection of combustible material are given in BS.5440: 1990.

IMPORTANT. It is absolutely ESSENTIAL to ensure, in practice, that products of combustion discharging from the terminal cannot re-enter the building or any other adjacent building through ventilators, windows, doors, other sources of natural air infiltration, or forced ventilation/air conditioning.

If this should occur, the appliance MUST be turned OFF, labelled 'unsafe' and corrective action taken.

TERMINAL

The terminal assembly can be adapted to accommodate various wall thicknesses. Refer to Frame 10.

AIR SUPPLY

Detailed recommendations for air supply are given in BS.5440:2. The following notes are for general guidance:

1. It is NOT necessary to have a purpose provided air vent in the room or internal space in which the boiler is installed.
2. If the boiler is to be installed in a cupboard or compartment, permanent air vents are required (for cooling purposes) in the cupboard/compartment, at both high and low levels. The air vents must either communicate with room/internal space, or be direct to outside air. The minimum effective areas of the permanent air vents, required in the cupboard/compartment, are specified as follows and are related to maximum rated heat input.
3. Both air vents MUST communicate with the same room or internal space or MUST be on the same wall to outside air.
4. In siting the air vents care must be taken to avoid the freezing of pipework.

Table 4 - High and low vent areas

Boiler	Air from room/internal space, cm (in^2)		Air direct from outside, cm (in^2)	
FF 230	102	(16)	51	(8)
FF 240	135	(21)	68	(11)
FF 250	170	(26)	83	(13)
FF 260	198	(31)	102	(16)

WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEM

The boiler must NOT be used for direct hot water supply. For the types of system and correct piping procedure refer to 'Introduction' and Frame 1.

The central heating system should be in accordance with BS.6798 and, in addition, for Smallbore and Microbore systems, BS. 5449.

The domestic hot water system, if applicable, should be in accordance with the relevant recommendations of BS. 5546. Copper tubing to BS. 2871:1 is recommended for water carrying pipework.

The hot water storage cylinder MUST be of the indirect type and should preferably be manufactured of copper.

Single feed, indirect cylinders are not recommended and MUST NOT be used on sealed systems.

The appliances are NOT suitable for gravity central heating, nor are they suitable for the provision of gravity domestic hot water.

The hot water cylinder and ancillary pipework, not forming part of the useful heating surface, should be lagged to prevent heat loss and any possible freezing - particularly where pipes run through roof spaces and ventilated under floor spaces.

Boilers not fitted to a sealed system must be vented.

IMPORTANT

Draining taps MUST be located in accessible positions, which permit the draining of the whole system - including the boiler and hot water storage vessel. They should be at least 1/2" BSP nominal size and be in accordance with BS. 2879.

The boiler is fitted with a special drain plug, which is provided, to drain the BOILER ONLY, in the event of the system drain plug being unable to do so. The hydraulic resistance of the boilers, at MAXIMUM OUTPUT with an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential, are shown in Table 5.

Maximum boiler operating temperature should be 82°C (180°F).

Table 5 - Water flow rate and pressure loss

Boiler Size	FF	230	240	250	260
Boiler Output	kW	8.8	11.7	14.6	17.6
	Btu/h x 1000	30	40	50	60
Water Flow Rate	l/min	11.4	15.2	19.0	22.8
	gal/h	150	200	250	300
Pressure Loss	mbar	22.0	20.4	31.5	41.7
	in wg	8.9	8.3	12.6	16.7

WATER TREATMENT

These boilers incorporate a cast iron heat exchanger. As part of the installation the central heating system should be thoroughly flushed with appropriate water treatment in order to comply with BS7593:1992.

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend the use of Fernox or Betz Dearborn water treatment products which must be used in accordance with the manufacturers instructions. For further information contact :-
Fernox Manufacturing. Co. Ltd, Tandem House, Marlowe Way, Croydon, Surrey CRO 4XS, tel. 0870 5601 5000 or
Betz Dearborn Ltd, Widnes, Cheshire, tel. 0151 424 5351

IMPORTANT. Any other treatment for this product will render the guarantee of Caradon Plumbing Ltd INVALID.

Notes.

1. *If an inhibitor is used, and in hard water areas where treatment to prevent lime deposits is necessary, it is most important that the water treatment MUST be maintained at the correct concentrations recommended by the treatment manufacturer.*
2. *Artificially softened water must not be used in the system, under any circumstances.*

THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR VALVES

Caradon Plumbing Limited recommend that heating systems utilising full thermostatic radiator valve control of temperature in individual rooms should also be fitted with a room thermostat controlling the temperature in a space served by radiators not fitted with such a valve as stated in BS. 5449.

When thermostatic radiator valves are used, the space heating temperature control over a living / dining area or hallway having a heating requirement of at least 10% of the boiler heat output should be achieved using a room thermostat, whilst other rooms are individually controlled by thermostatic radiator valves. However, if the system employs thermostatic radiator valves on all radiators, or two port valves without end switches, then a bypass must be fitted to ensure a flow of water should all valves be in the closed position.

ELECTRICAL SUPPLY

This appliance must be efficiently earthed.

Wiring external to the appliance MUST be in accordance with the current I.E.E. (BS.7671) Wiring Regulations and any local regulations which apply.

The point of connection to the mains should be readily accessible and adjacent to the boiler, except that for bathroom installations; the point of connection to the mains MUST be situated outside of the bathroom.

Note. *Where a room sealed appliance is installed in a room containing a bath or shower then the appliance and any electrical switch or appliance control utilising mains electricity should be so situated that it cannot be touched by a person using the bath or shower. See Frame 38 for details.*

3 OPEN VENT SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - FULLY PUMPED.

The system should be vented directly off the boiler flow pipe, as close to the boiler as possible. The cold feed entry should be inverted and MUST be positioned between the pump and the vent, and not more than 150mm (6") away from the vent connection.

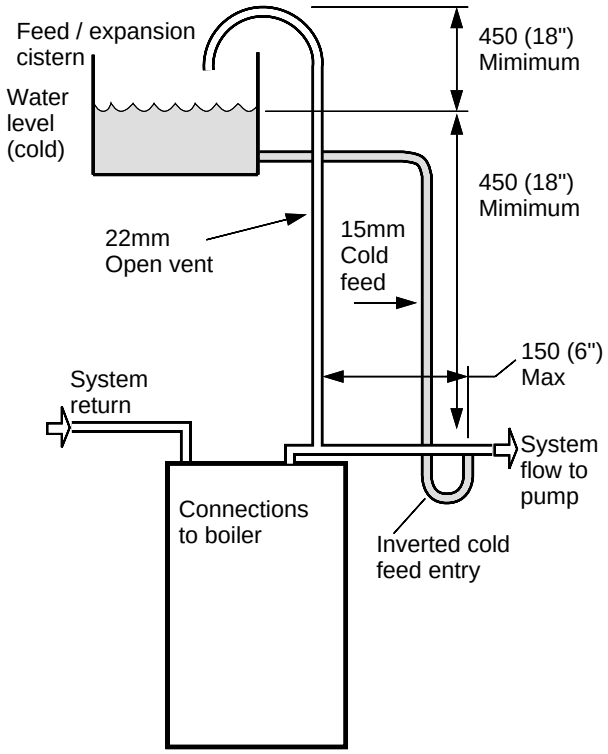
There should be a minimum height - 450mm (18") - of open vent above cistern water level. If this is impossible refer below.

The vertical distance between the highest point of the system and the feed/expansion cistern water level MUST not be less than 450mm (18").

The pump MUST be fitted on the flow side of the boiler.

A suitable pump is a domestic circulator capable of providing an 11°C (20°F) temperature differential (e.g. Grundfos UPS 15/50 or equivalent). The vertical distance between the pump and feed/expansion cistern MUST comply with the pump manufacturers minimum requirements to avoid cavitation. Should these conditions not apply, either lower the pump position or raise the cistern above the minimum requirement specified by **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Note. *A cold water feed must be available back to the boiler, when all automatic valves are in the closed position (refer to BS. 6798) and when close coupled the feed must not be in a vertical leg.*



4 LOW HEAD INSTALLATIONS

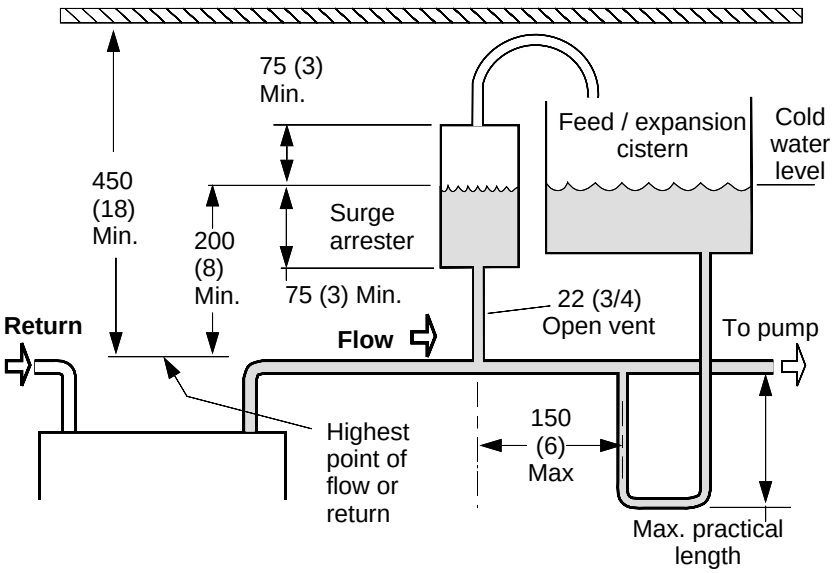
The **Classic** range of boilers can be installed in low head situations by fitting a 'surge arrester' in the expansion pipe as shown.

The following conditions MUST be observed:

1. The surge arrester must be at least 42mm in diameter x 150mm long, thus ensuring a MINIMUM air gap and a MINIMUM depth of water below the static water level (cold) of 75mm.
2. The static water level (cold) must be at least 200mm above the top of the horizontal flow pipe, fitted as shown. The vent connection MUST NOT be made immediately off the top of the boiler, as venting is made less efficient.
3. The maximum practical length of 15mm cold feed pipe should be used in order to reduce the effective volume of system water expanding into the feed/expansion cistern to a minimum.

Note. *The pump manufacturers minimum requirements must be complied with*

Minimum Requirements

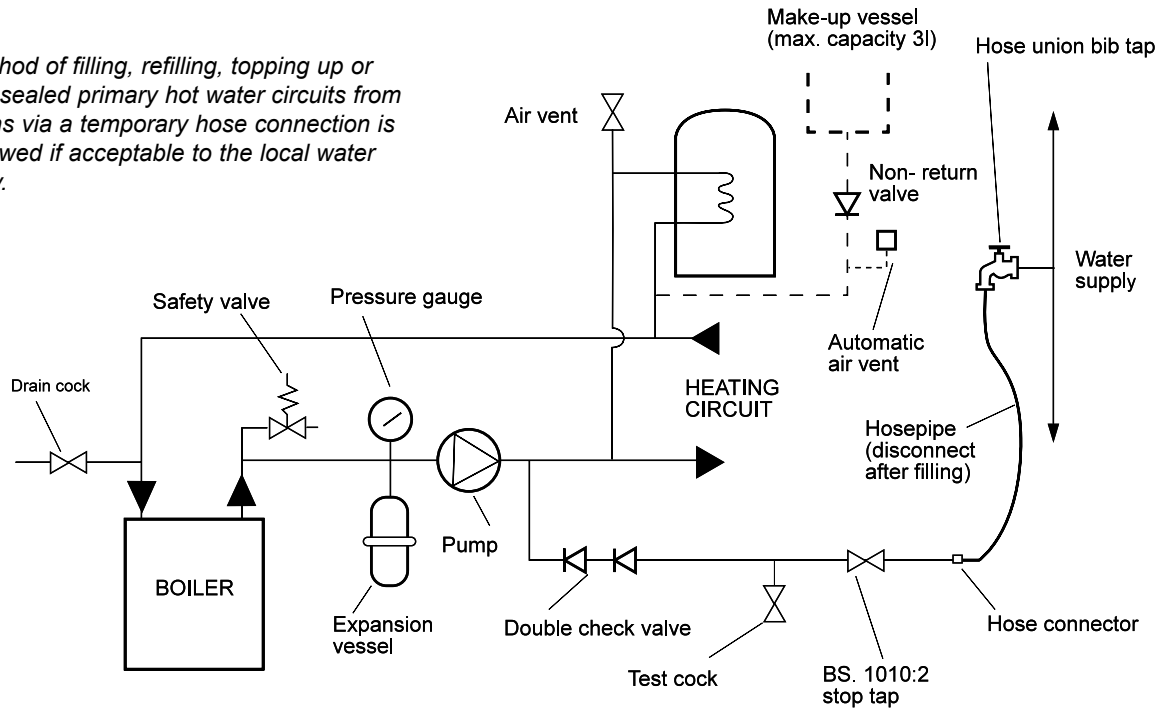


All dimensions in mm (in.). **N.B.** Imperial dimensions are approximate

5 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Note.

The method of filling, refilling, topping up or flushing sealed primary hot water circuits from the mains via a temporary hose connection is only allowed if acceptable to the local water authority.



1. General

a. The installation must comply with the requirements of BS 6798 and BS 5449.

b. The installation should be designed to work with flow temperatures of up to 82°C.

c. All components of the system, including the heat exchanger of the indirect cylinder, must be suitable for a working pressure of 3 bar (45lb/in^2) and temperature of 110°C. Care should be taken in making all connections so that the risk of leakage is minimised.

2. Cylinder

The cylinder must be either of the indirect coil type or a direct cylinder fitted with an immersion calorifier which is suitable for operating on a gauge pressure of 0.35 bar (5 lb/in^2) in excess of the safety valve setting. Single feed indirect cylinders are not suitable for sealed systems.

3. Make-up Water

Provision must be made for replacing water loss from the system, either:

a. From a manually fitted make-up vessel with a readily visible water level. The vessel should be mounted at least 150 mm (6") above the highest point of the system and be connected through a non-return valve to the system, fitted at least 300 mm (12") below the make-up vessel on the return side of the domestic hot water cylinder or radiators.

b. Where access to a make-up vessel would be difficult, by pre-pressurisation of the system. Refer to 'Filling'.

4. Mains Connection

There must be no direct connection to the mains water supply or to the water storage tank supplying domestic water, even through a non-return valve, without the approval of the local water authority.

5. Filling

The system may be filled by one of the following methods:

a. Through a cistern, used for no other purposes, via a ball valve permanently connected directly to a service pipe and/or a cold water distributing pipe. The static head available from the cistern should be adequate to provide the desired initial system design pressure. The cold feed pipe from the cistern should include a non-return valve and a stop valve with an automatic air vent connected between them, the stop valve being located between the system and the automatic air vent. The stop valve may remain open during normal operation of the system if automatic water make-up is required.

b. Through a self-contained unit comprising a cistern, pressure booster pump (if required) and, if necessary, an automatic pressure reducing valve and flow restrictor. The cistern should be supplied through a temporary connection from a service pipe or cold water distributing pipe.

This unit may remain permanently connected to the heating system to provide limited automatic water make-up. Where the temporary connection is supplied from a service pipe or distributing pipe which also supplies other draw-off points at a lower level, then a double-check valve shall be installed upstream of the draw-off point.

c. Through a temporary hose connection from a draw-off tap supplied from a service pipe under mains pressure. Where the mains pressure is excessive, a pressure reducing valve shall be used to facilitate filling.

The following fittings shall form a permanent part of the system and shall be fitted in the order stated.

A stop valve complying with the requirements of BS 1010, Part 2 (the hose from the draw-off tap shall be connected to this fitting).

A test cock.

A double-check valve of an approved type.

- Thoroughly flush out the whole of the system with cold water, without the pump in position.
- With the pump fitted, fill and vent both system and pump until the pressure gauge registers 1.5 bar (21.5lb/in^2). Examine for leaks.
- Check the operation of the safety valve by manually raising the water pressure until the valve lifts. This should occur within ± 0.3 bar (± 4.3lb/in^2) of the pre-set lift pressure.
- Release water from the system until the initial system design pressure is reached.
- Light the boiler and heat the system to the maximum working temperature. Examine for leaks.
- Turn off the boiler and drain the system while still hot.
- Refill and vent both system and pump.
- Adjust the initial pressure to the required value.

6 SEALED SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS *continued*

Sizing procedure for expansion vessels:

The volume of the expansion vessel (litres) fitted to a sealed system shall not be less than that given by the table opposite, multiplied by a factor of 0.8 (for flow temperature of less than 88°C).

If the system volume exceeds the figure given in the opposite table for an 8-litre expansion vessel then an additional vessel may be fitted, provided that it is as close to the appliance on the return to the boiler as is practically possible.

Refer to BS 5449 and BS 7074:1 for detail of expansion vessel application, selection and installation.

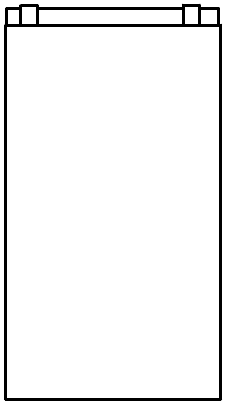
Safety valve setting	3.0 bar		
Vessel charge and initial system pressure	0.5 bar	1.0 bar	1.5 bar
Total water content of system	**Expansion vessel volume (litres)**		
25 litres	2.1	2.7	3.9
50	4.2	5.4	7.8
75	6.3	8.2	11.7
100	8.3	10.9	15.6
125	10.4	13.6	19.5
150	12.5	16.3	23.4
175	14.6	19.1	27.3
200	16.7	21.8	31.2
225	18.7	24.5	35.1
250	20.8	27.2	39.0
275	22.9	30.0	42.9
300	25.0	32.7	46.8
Multiplying factors for other system volumes	0.0833	0.109	0.156

7 UNPACKING

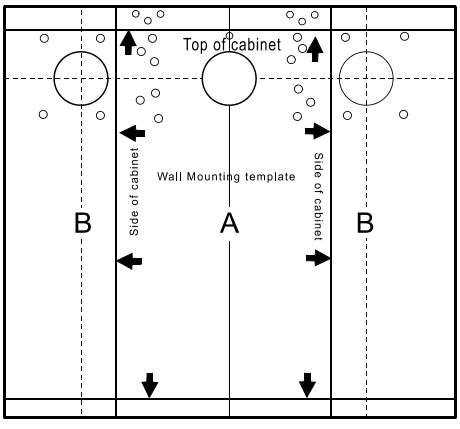
The boiler is supplied fully assembled in **Pack A,** together with a standard flue assembly for lengths up to 600mm (23 1/2"), rear or side flue outlet, in **Pack B.**

Optional extra, if ordered (Extension Duct Kit D) is available in a separate box.

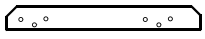
Unpack and check the contents.



Complete boiler



Wall mounting template



Wall mounting plate

CI 1724

Pack A Contents

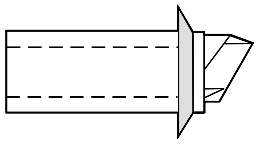
- The complete boiler
- Installation & Servicing Instructions
- User's Instructions
- Hardware Pack (listed below)
- Wall mounting template
- Wall mounting plate
- Side outlet terminal mounting plate
- Flue extension tube - 1 off
- Boiler sealing ring - 1 off
- Flue elbow (for side outlet only)

Hardware Pack Contents

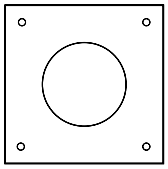
- 50mm x No. 14 wood screw, 4 off
- 50mm x No. 10 wood screw, 8 off
- Wall plug, 12 off
- Data badge indicator arrow, 1 off
- M8 washer, 1 off
- M5 wing nut, 3 off
- Sealing plate, 1 off
- M8 x 12 Hx. Hd. screw, 1 off

Pack B Contents

- Duct cutting support, 2 off (cardboard)
- Terminal wall plate, 1 off.
- Terminal grille assy., 1 off.
- Polyurethane foam seal 400 lg., 1 off.
- No. 8 x 8 lg. Pozi pan hd. screws, 3 off.



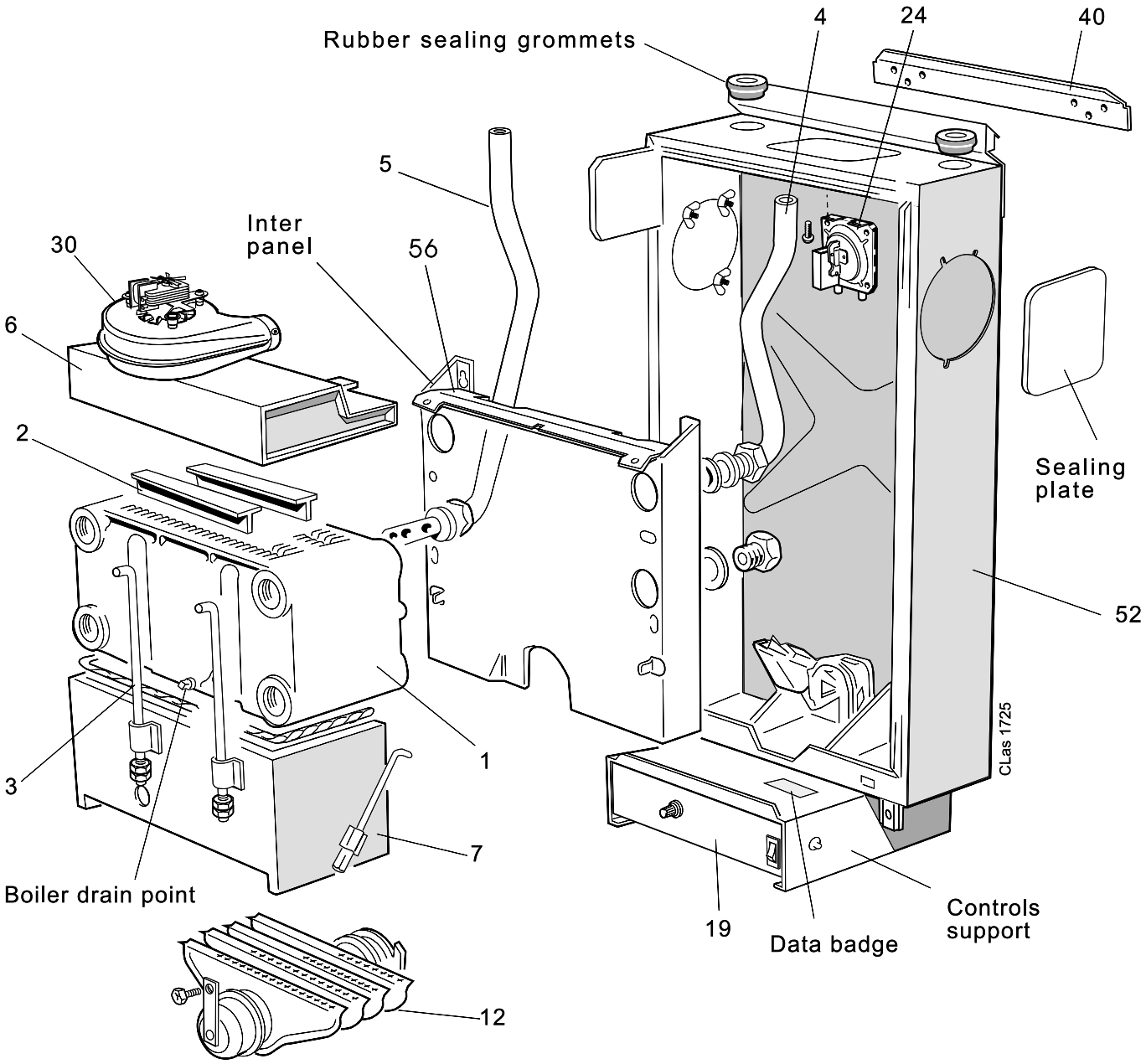
Flue terminal



Terminal wall plate

8 BOILER ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

Classic FF 230 shown

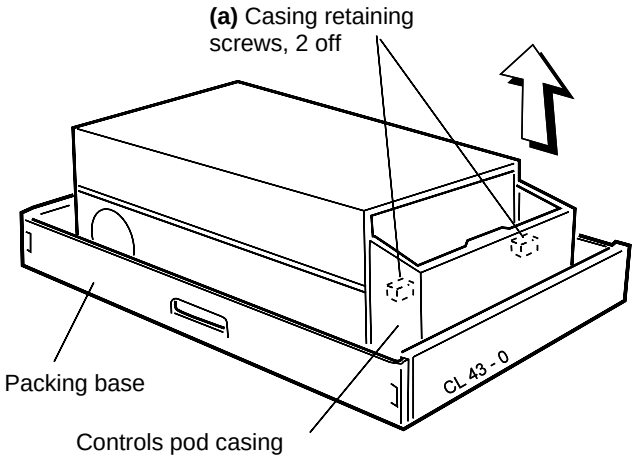


LEGEND

1. Heat exchanger.
2. Flue baffles.
3. Hook bolts
4. Flow pipe assy.
5. Return pipe assy.
6. Collector hood assembly.
7. Combustion chamber.
12. Main burner.
19. Control box .
24. Pressure switch.
30. Fan.
40. Wall mounting plate.
52. Back panel.
56. Baffle plate (250/260 only).

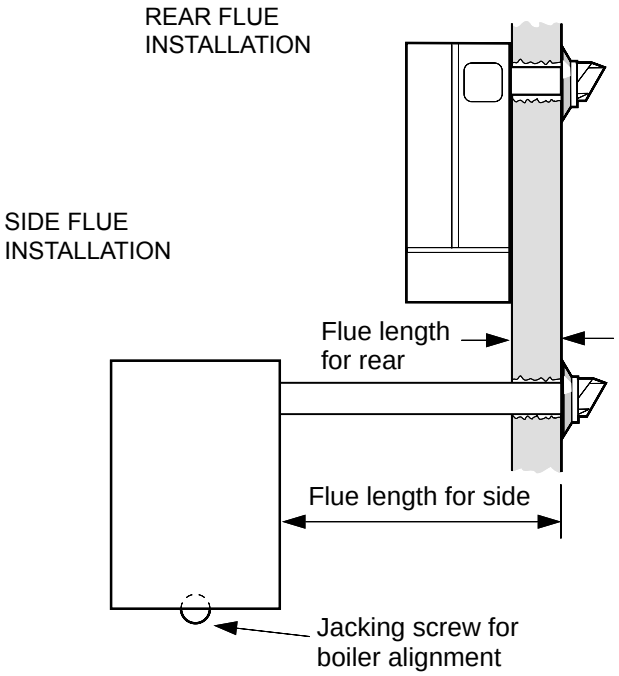
9 PACKAGING AND CASING REMOVAL

1. Unpack the boiler.
2. Remove the casing as follows and place to one side to avoid damage.
   - **a.** Undo the 2 casing retaining screws (a) retaining the casing to the back panel.
   - **b.** Swing the bottom of the boiler casing up until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls then unhook the top from the back panel.
3. Remove the boiler from its packaging base. The boiler may now be stood upright on its controls support protection frame to ease handling and installation.
4. Unpack the boiler terminal box and, if applicable, the extension flue box(es).



10 DETERMINING THE FLUE LENGTH

It is MOST IMPORTANT that the boiler is installed in a vertical position.



FLUE KITS

Pack B: supplied as standard.

Pack D: optional extension kit for side flue or rear flue outlet. Refer to 'Flue Extension Ducts'

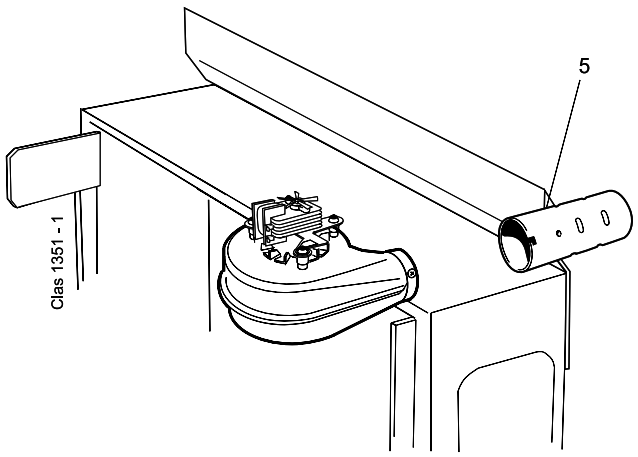
A maximum of 1 extension duct (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.

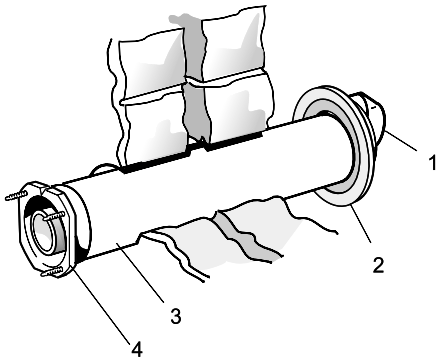
Note: *The total length must not exceed 1 metre.*

Flue length mm	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	150308
600 to 1000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack 1 off	150308 + 153883

11 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded View

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for wall thicknesses greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.
2. When cutting the ducts, always use the cardboard support rings provided.



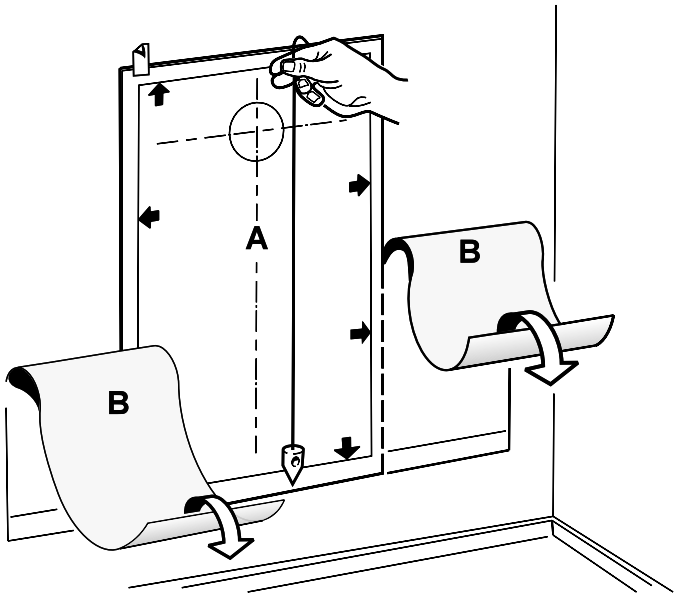


LEGEND

1. Terminal.
2. Weather seal.
3. Flue assembly.
4. Boiler sealing ring.
5. Flue extension tube.

12 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

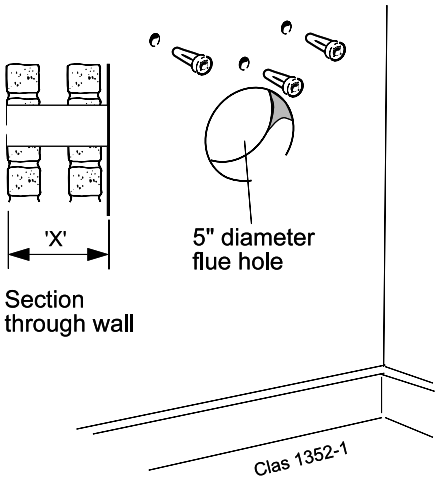
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape the templates into the selected position.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group). **Note.** *Mark the centre of the flue hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **b.** The position of the flue duct hole.
5. Remove the templates from the wall.



13 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been quite accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 2 holes for the wall mounting plate with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill.
3. Drill 1 further hole above the flue hole for boiler fixing with the same 8mm (5/16") drill.
4. Insert the plastic plugs provided.



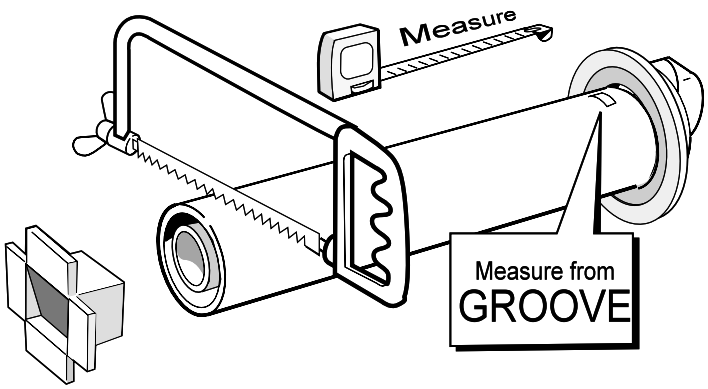
Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

Note. *Check all of the hole positions BEFORE drilling*

REAR FLUE OUTLET

14 CUTTING THE FLUE - wall thicknesses of 114 to 600mm

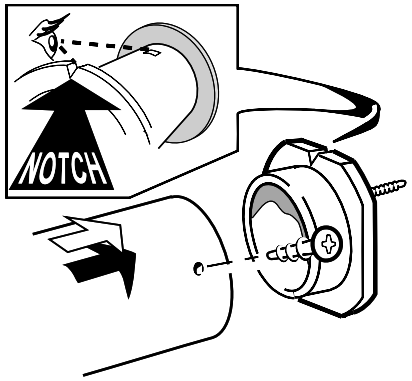
1. Measure and note the wall thickness X.
2. Mark the wall thickness onto the flue.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Cut to length X, using the cardboard ring for support.
5. Remove cardboard ring and remove any burrs.



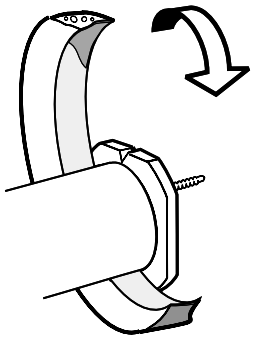
15 FITTING THE BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged.

   Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.

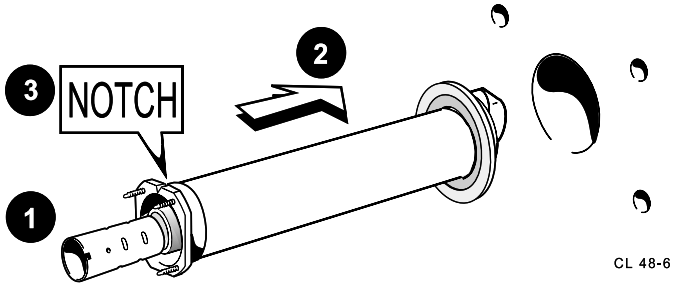


2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. **Do NOT drill the inner flue duct.**
3. Insert the self-tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.
4. Stick the self-adhesive foam strip, provided in the hardware pack, onto the flue immediately behind the boiler sealing ring.



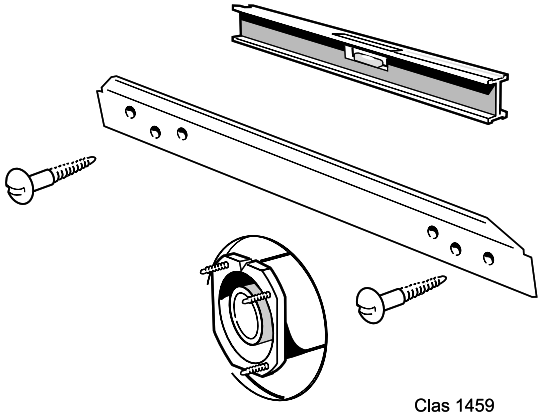
16 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue assembly.
2. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall.
3. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.



17 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. Check with a spirit level that the plate is horizontal.
3. **Cupboard Supports**
   In some applications existing wooden supports my hinder the removal of the casing. Two cupboard supports are provided for the top and bottom of the opening. These should be positioned to allow the casing to be removed in servicing.



18 MOUNTING THE BOILER

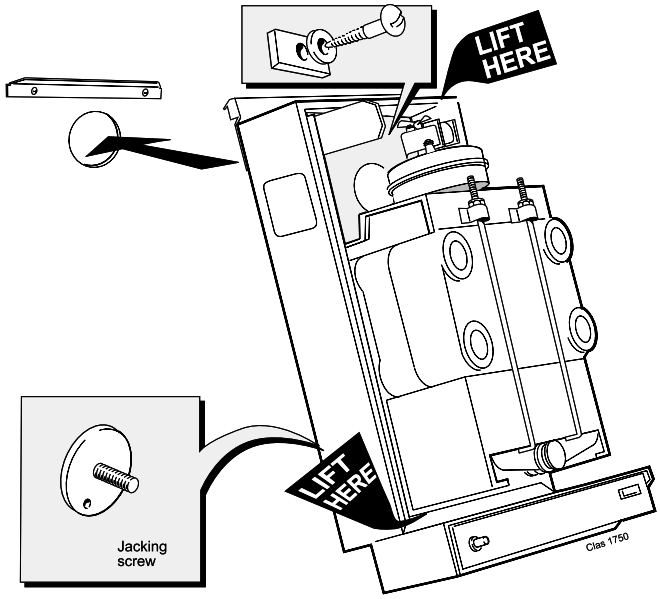
1. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate as shown.

   Do not use the burner / controls for lifting

2. Fit an additional No.14 x 50mm woodscrew through the slot in the boiler back panel above the flue into the wall plug. Use the washer and rectangular sealing plate to seal the slot and retain the boiler.

Note.

Before fully tightening the retaining screw check the boiler alignment, using a spirit level, and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.

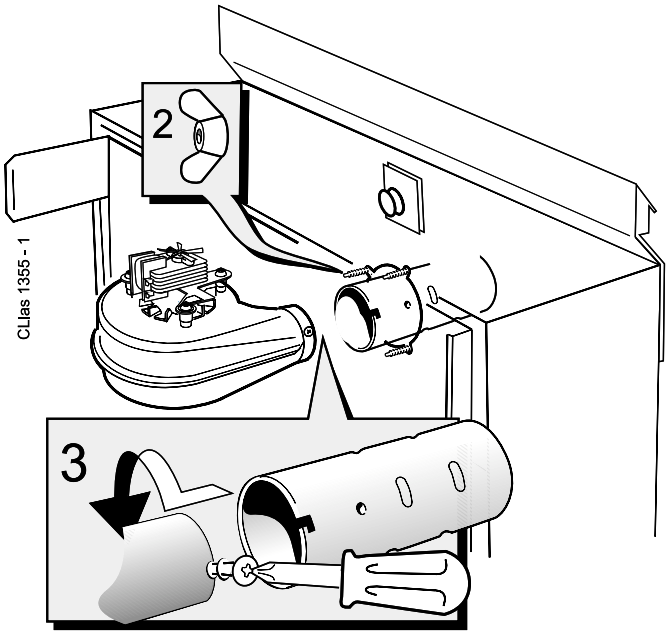


19 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through and locate the 3 studs in the holes in the back panel.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 wing nuts provided.
3. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan. Locate and secure with the M4 screw attached to the fan.

Note.

The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.

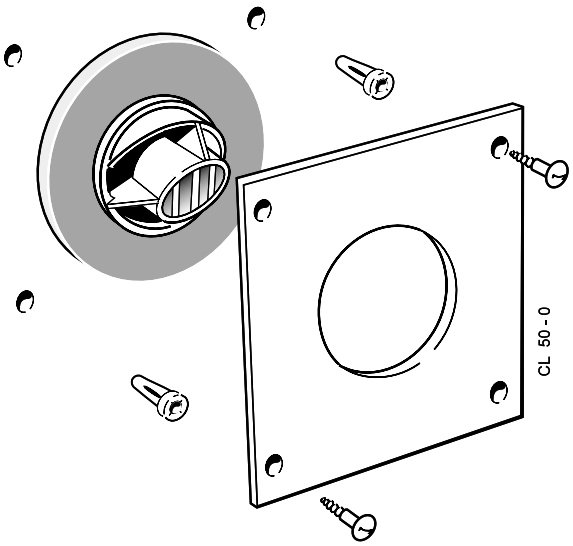


20 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Mark and drill 4 fixing holes with an 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

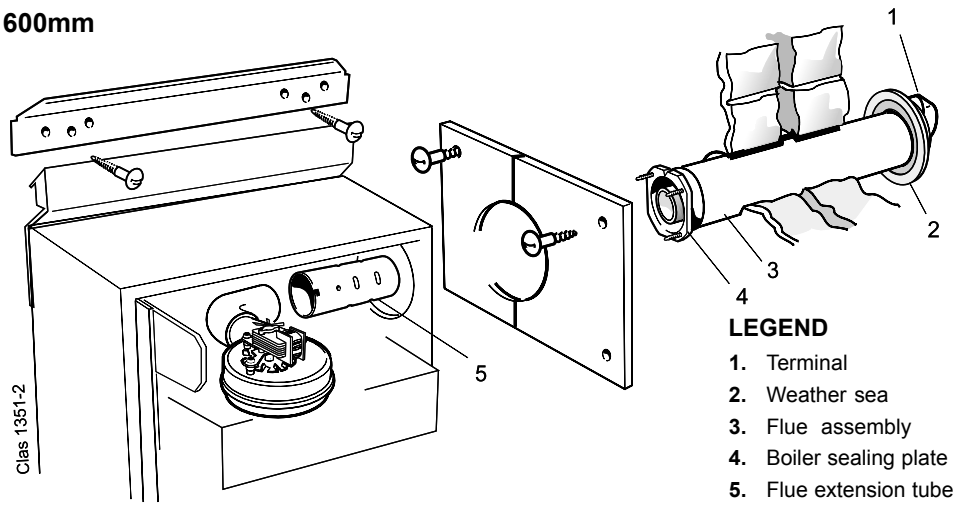
Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the Contents List on Page 2.*



21 FLUE ASSEMBLY - Exploded view

For wall thickness 114mm to 600mm

1. An optional flue duct extension kit is required for lengths (distance from the outside wall to the relevant side of the boiler casing) greater than 600mm (23 1/2") Refer to Frame 10.
2. When cutting the ducts always use the cardboard support provided.

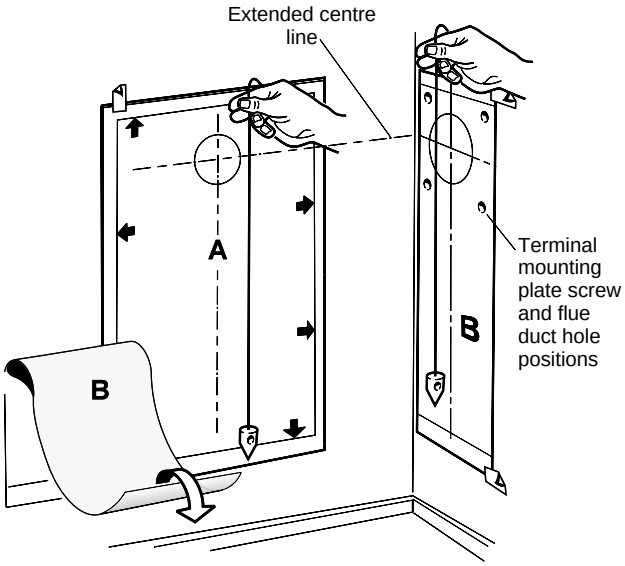


LEGEND

1. Terminal
2. Weather sea
3. Flue assembly
4. Boiler sealing plate
5. Flue extension tube

22 WALL MOUNTING TEMPLATE

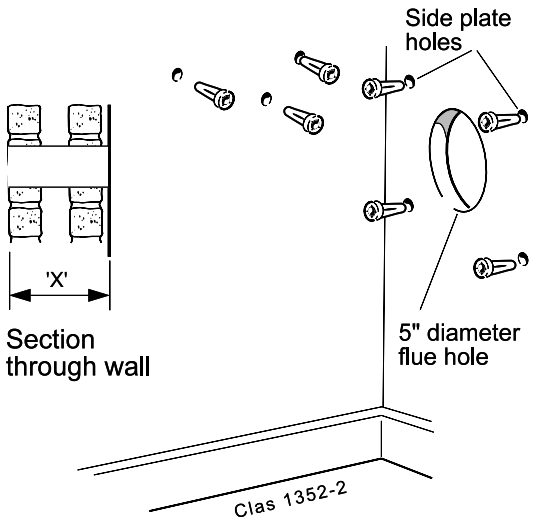
1. Separate the templates.
2. Tape both templates into the selected position locating template B through an extended centre line as shown.
3. Ensure squareness by hanging a plumb line as shown.
4. Mark onto the wall (if required) the following:
   - **a.** The 4 wall mounting plate screw positions (choose one from each group).
   - **b.** The 4 screw positions for the side outlet plate.
   - **c.** The position of the flue duct hole. **Note.** *Mark the centre of the hole as well as the circumference.*
   - **d.** The side of the casing nearest the flue outlet.
5. Remove both templates from the wall.



23 PREPARING THE WALL

IMPORTANT. Ensure that, during the cutting operation, masonry falling outside of the building does not cause damage or personal injury.

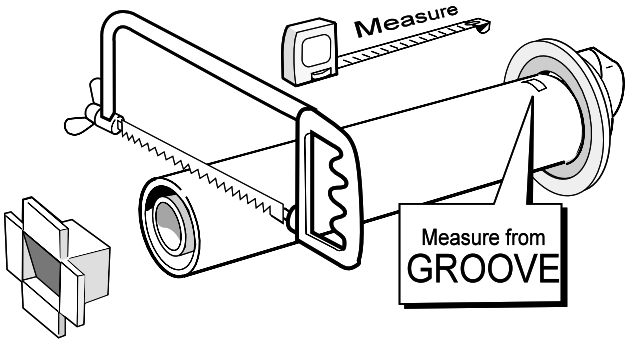
1. Cut the flue hole, preferably with a 125mm (5") core boring tool, ensuring that the hole is square to the wall. If the hole has been accurately cut with a drill then making good the wall faces is not essential as seals are provided at both ends of the flue. However, both wall faces immediately around the cut hole should be flat; make good if necessary. For less accurate holes make good to approximately 125mm (5") diameter at the 2 wall faces.
2. Drill 2 holes with an 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the wall mounting plate.
3. Drill 1 further hole below the wall plate fixing screws, in the position shown on the template, for boiler fixing with the same 8mm (5/16") masonry drill and insert the plastic plug provided.
4. Drill 4 holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill and insert the plastic plugs provided, for the side mounting plate.



Note. *If the terminal is to be sited within 25-40mm of a corner or vertical pipe (refer to Table 3) then the hole MUST be accurately cut and the rubber weather seal trimmed around the groove provided. The terminal wall plate need not be fitted.*

24 CUTTING THE FLUE
For flue lengths 114 to 600mm ONLY

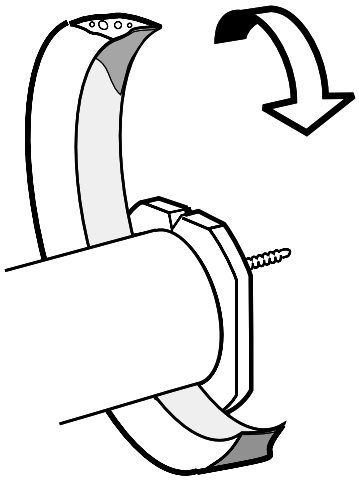
1. Measure the flue length required (i.e. the distance from the side of the boiler to the outside face of the wall). Refer to Frame 11.
2. Mark the flue length required onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
3. To ensure the tube is cut square, mark the flue all the way round.
4. Insert the cardboard duct ring for support and cut to length.
5. Remove cardboard duct ring and remove any burrs.



For flue lengths greater than 600mm, refer to Frames 34 & 35 - Flue extension ducts.

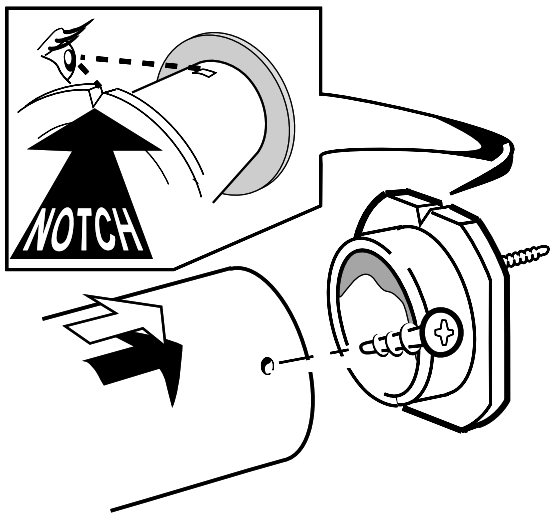
25 FITTING THE FOAM SEAL

1. To determine the position for the foam seal measure the wall thickness and mark it onto the flue, measuring from the groove near the terminal.
2. Wrap the self-adhesive foam strip round the flue, ensuring that the foam is on the terminal side of the line. This seals the gap between the flue and the wall.



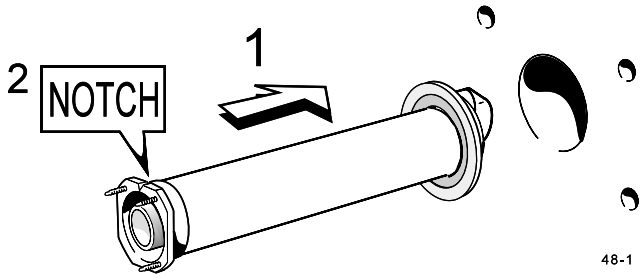
26 FITTING BOILER SEALING RING TO THE FLUE

1. Fit the boiler sealing ring inside the outer flue duct. Ensure the boiler sealing ring is fully engaged. Ensure the notch aligns with the groove on the outer flue duct. This ensures correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Drill 3 holes 3.2mm (1/8") dia. through the outer flue duct and boiler sealing ring. *Do not drill the inner flue duct*.
3. Insert the self tapping screws, provided, in order to fix the boiler sealing ring in position.



27 FITTING THE FLUE ASSEMBLY

1. Insert the flue assembly through the hole far enough to allow the rubber seal to unfold completely and form an adequate seal on the outside wall. This will also ensure the correct alignment of the flue terminal.
2. Ensure the notch is at the top. This will aid the location of the studs into the boiler back panel.

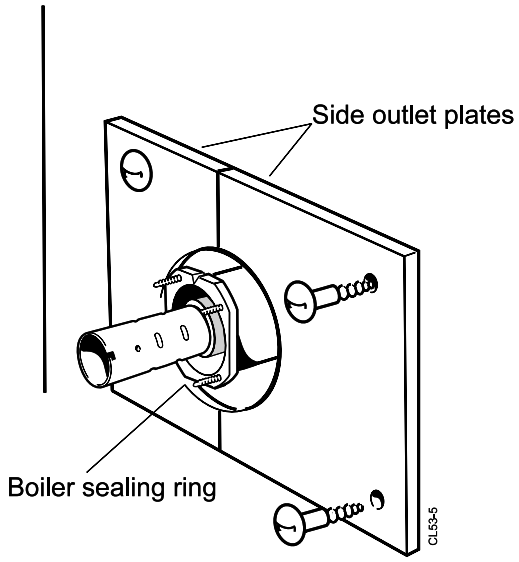


Flue assembly

28 FITTING THE SIDE OUTLET PLATES

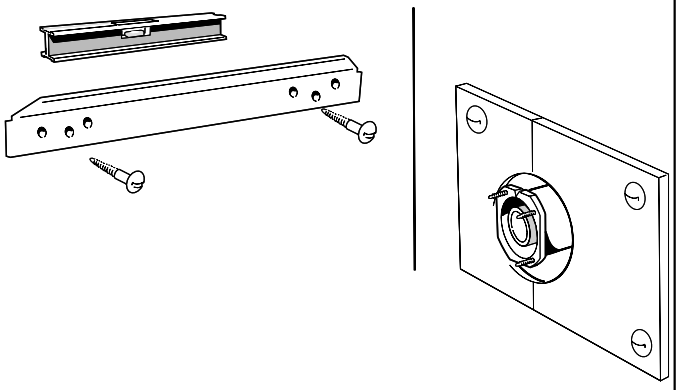
Note. *If the boiler is fitted closer than 25mm to the side wall the side outlet plate must be fitted now.*

1. Split the side outlet plate into 2 down the split line.
2. Fit the 2 halves of the side outlet plate to the wall, ensuring they are behind the boiler sealing ring.



29 WALL MOUNTING PLATE

1. Fix the mounting plate to the wall with the No.14 x 50mm wood screws.
2. Check with a spirit level that the plate is horizontal.



3. **Cupboard Supports**
   In some applications existing wooden supports my hinder the removal of the casing. Two cupboard supports are provided for the top and bottom of the opening. These should be positioned to allow the casing to be removed in servicing.

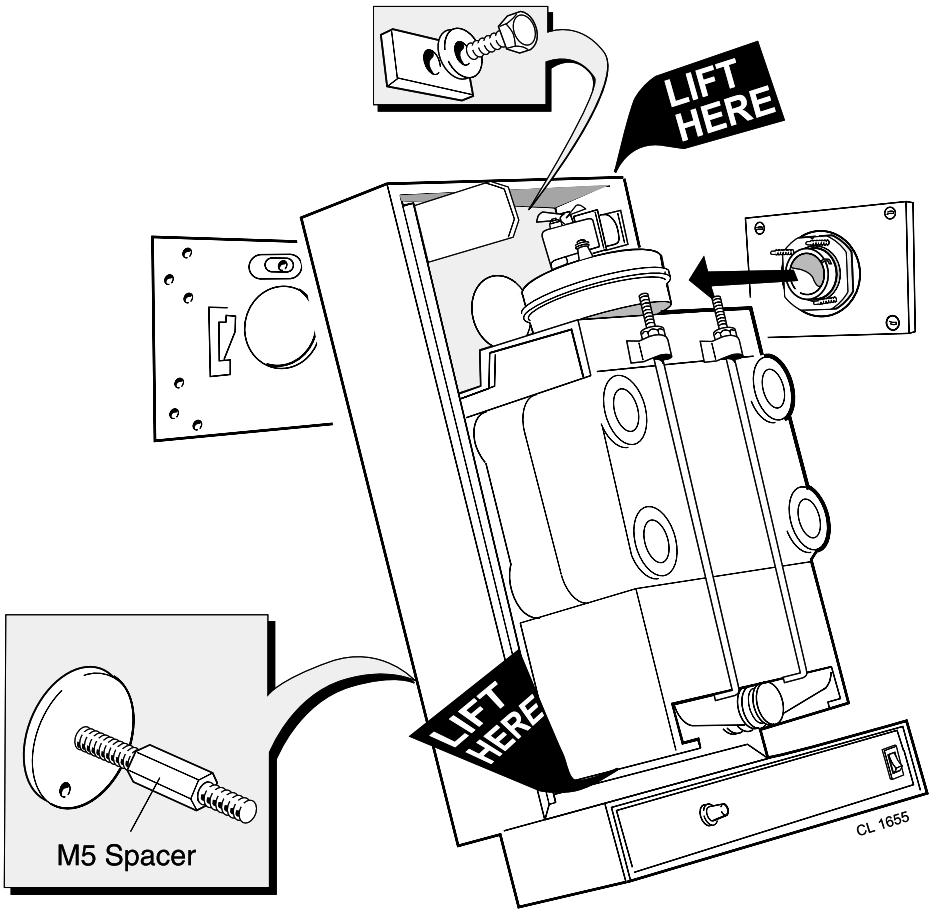
30 MOUNTING THE BOILER

1. The boiler is supplied for rear outlet installation. Remove the blanking plate from the direction required and use this to blank off the rear outlet.
2. Lift the boiler onto the wall mounting plate, as shown.

   Do not use the burner/ controls for lifting.

3. Fit the No. 14 x 50mm wood screw, washer and rectangular plate to retain the boiler.

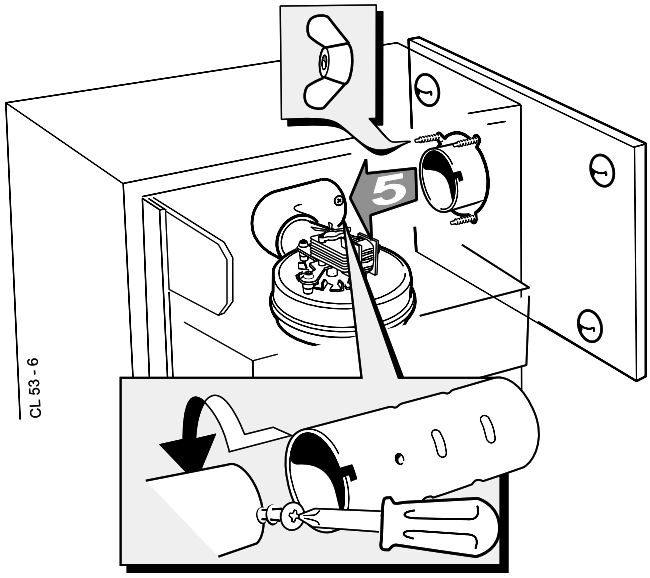
Note. *Before fully tightening the retaining screw check the boiler alignment using a spirit level and adjust as necessary with the jacking screw.*



31 CONNECTING THE FLUE TO THE BOILER

1. Pull the flue through the side outlet plate and locate the 3 studs in the hole in the side of the boiler.
2. Secure the flue to the boiler using the three M5 nuts provided.
3. Insert the flue extension tube into the flue.
4. Fit the 90° flue elbow, supplied with the boiler, onto the fan in the direction required, after first removing the underside screw, which is not required. Secure in position with the screw attached to the fan.
5. Pull the flue extension tube and engage onto the fan elbow and secure with the screw attached to the elbow.

Note. *The sealing ring studs will locate in the back panel one way only. This will ensure that the terminal grille is correctly aligned.*

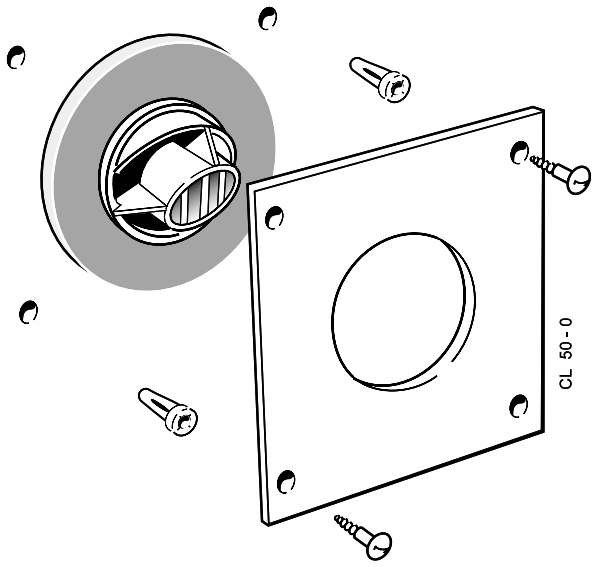


32 TERMINAL WALL PLATE

This plate allows neat concealment and full compression of the rubber seal. Its use is not essential if the flue hole and flue ducts have been accurately cut and the outside wall face is flat.

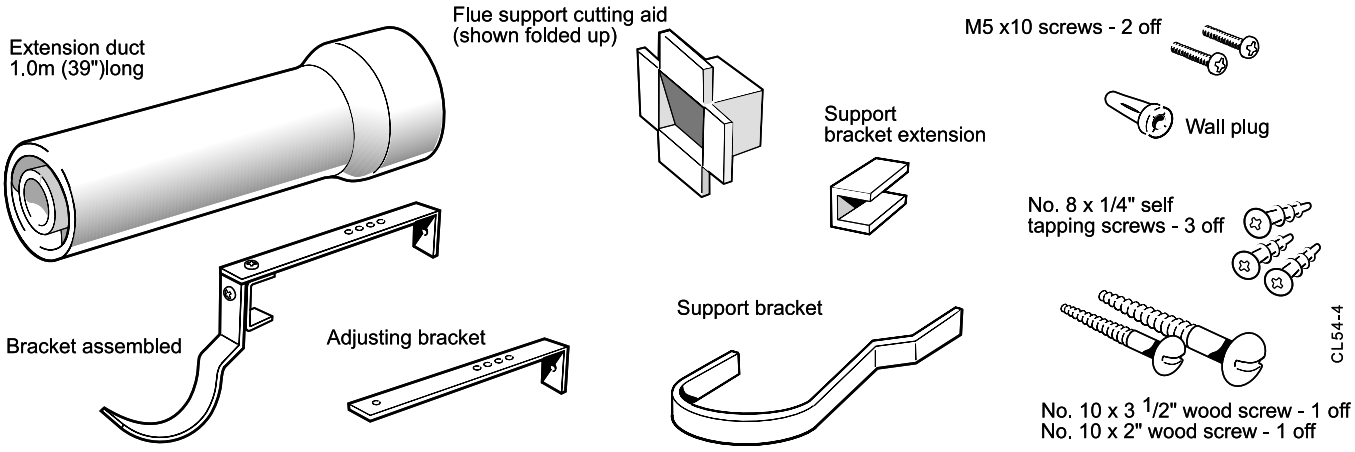
1. Position the terminal wall plate over the terminal.
2. Drill 4 fixing holes with a 7mm (9/32") masonry drill.
3. Insert the 4 plastic plugs provided.
4. Secure the plate with 4 of the No.10 x 2" screws provided.

Note. *If the terminal is less than 2m (6' 6") above ground level, an approved terminal guard should be fitted. Refer to the contents list on Page 2.*



33 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - For flue lengths greater than 600mm

PACK D Flue extension duct kit contents.

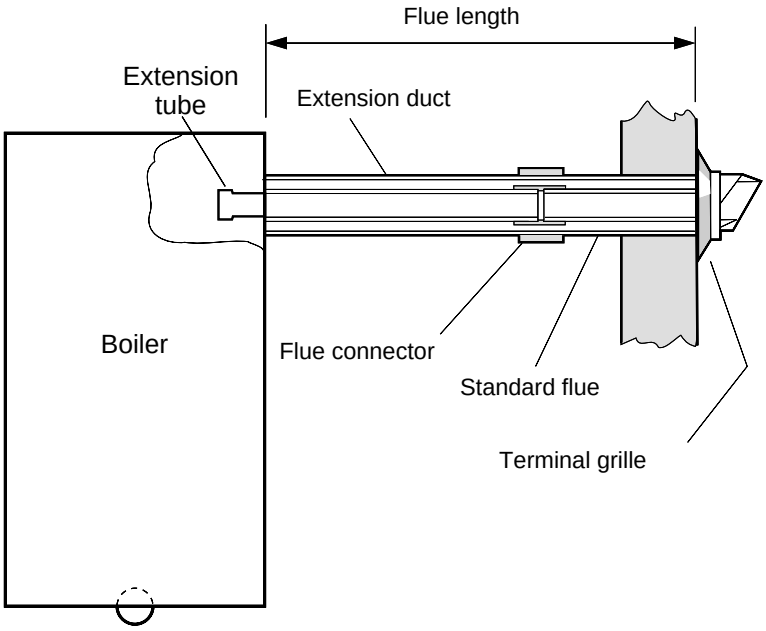


34 FLUE EXTENSION DUCTS - continued

General arrangement

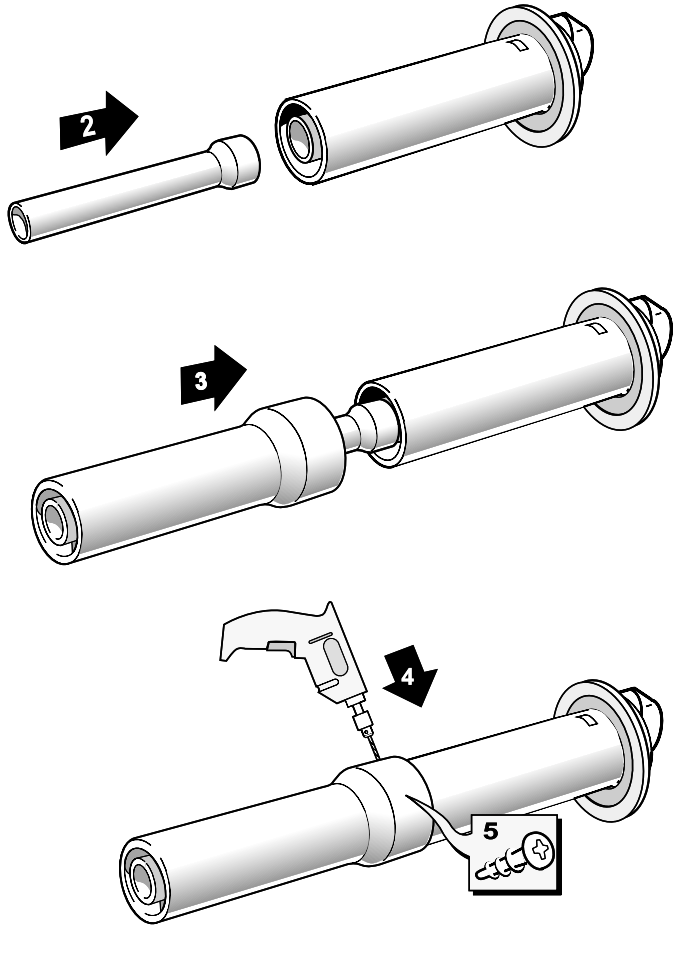
Note.
Side flue shown.

A *maximum* of 1 extension duct (plus the standard flue duct) may be used together.



Flue length	Accessories	Product No.
Up to 600	B Pack 1 off	see Frame 10
600 to 1000	B Pack 1 off + D Pack 1 off	see Frame 10

35 FITTING THE KIT



REP932 - 2

1. Remove the cardboard support aid from the flue and place safely to one side.
2. Fit the inner flue extension duct onto the inner flue duct.
3. Fit the outer flue extension duct onto the outer air duct.
4. Drill 3 - 3.2mm (1/8") dia. holes through the outer air duct. ***Do not drill the inner flue duct.***
5. Insert the self tapping screws provided to fix the air duct in position.

36 GAS CONNECTION

Refer to 'Gas Supply ', page 7.
Refer to Frame 2 for gas inlet service dimensions.

A **minimum** pressure of 20 mbar MUST be available at the boiler inlet with the boiler operating. The main gas cock is on the left hand side of the gas control valve, as shown. To facilitate connection the gas cock may be removed from the gas control valve.

37 WATER CONNECTIONS

1. Remove the plastic plugs from the flow and return pipes.
2. Make all water connections and check for water soundness.

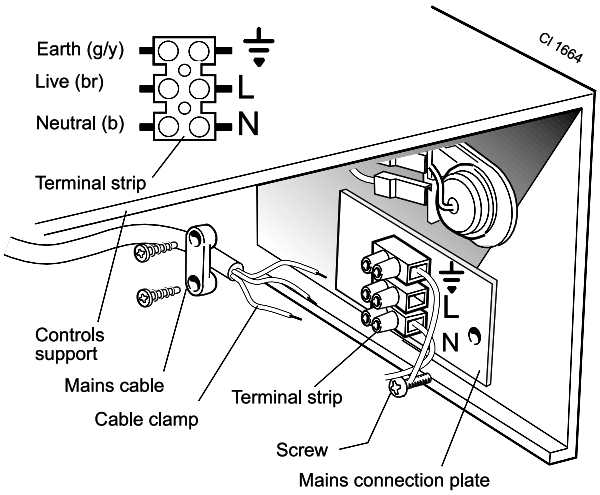
38 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

WARNING. The appliance must be efficiently earthed.

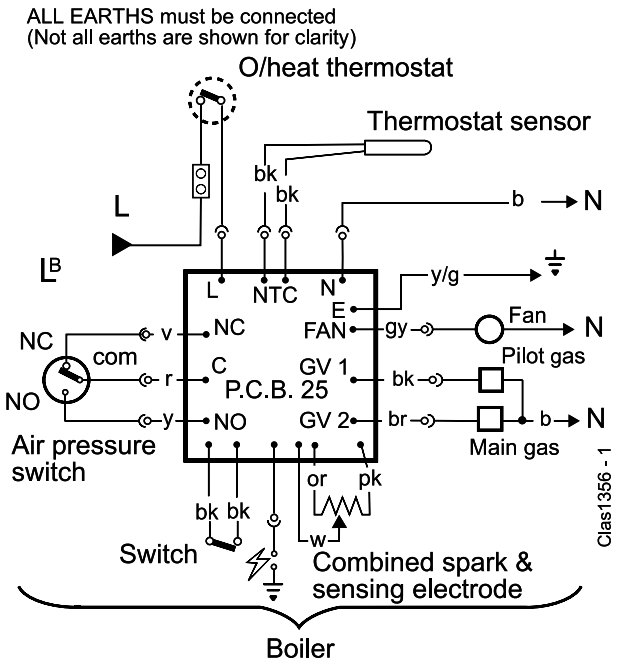
A mains supply of 230 V ~ 50 Hz is required.

All external controls and wiring must be suitable for mains voltage. Wiring should be in 3-core PVC insulated & sheathed cable, not less than 0.75mm² (24 x 0.2mm) to BS. 6500 Table 16 Wiring Regulations and local regulations.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply - such as a double pole switch, having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, serving only the boiler and system controls. The means of isolation must be accessible to the user after installation.



Flow wiring diagram



LEGEND	**br** brown	**w** white	**v** violet
b blue	**r** red	**gy** grey	**pk** pink
bk black	**y** yellow	**or** orange	**y/g** yellow/green

1. Remove the control box securing screw (M4 pozi). Pull the box forward to disengage. Refer to Frame 57.
2. Route the mains cable through the grommet in the plate of the control box.
3. Remove the screw and release the mains connection plate. Unscrew the cable clamp screws and remove the clamp.
4. Connect the mains cable wires to the terminal strip.
5. Assemble in reverse order.
6. Replace the control box and fasten to the controls support.

39 EXTERNAL CONTROLS

The wiring diagrams illustrated in Frames 41-43 cover the systems most likely to be fitted to this appliance.

For wiring external controls to the Classic FF boiler, reference should be made to the system wiring diagrams supplied by the relevant manufacturer, in conjunction with the wiring diagrams shown in Frames 41-43.

Difficulty in wiring should not arise, providing the following directions are observed:

1. Controls that switch the system on or off, e.g. a time switch, must be wired, in series, in the live mains lead to the boiler.
2. Controls that override an on/off control, e.g. frost thermostat, must be wired into the mains lead, in parallel, with the control(s) to be overridden. Refer to Frame 43.
3. If a proprietary system is used, follow the instructions supplied by the manufacturer.
4. System designs featuring controls or wiring arrangements which allow the boiler to fire when there is no pump circulation taking place should not be fitted.

Advice on required modifications to the wiring may be obtained from the component manufacturers.

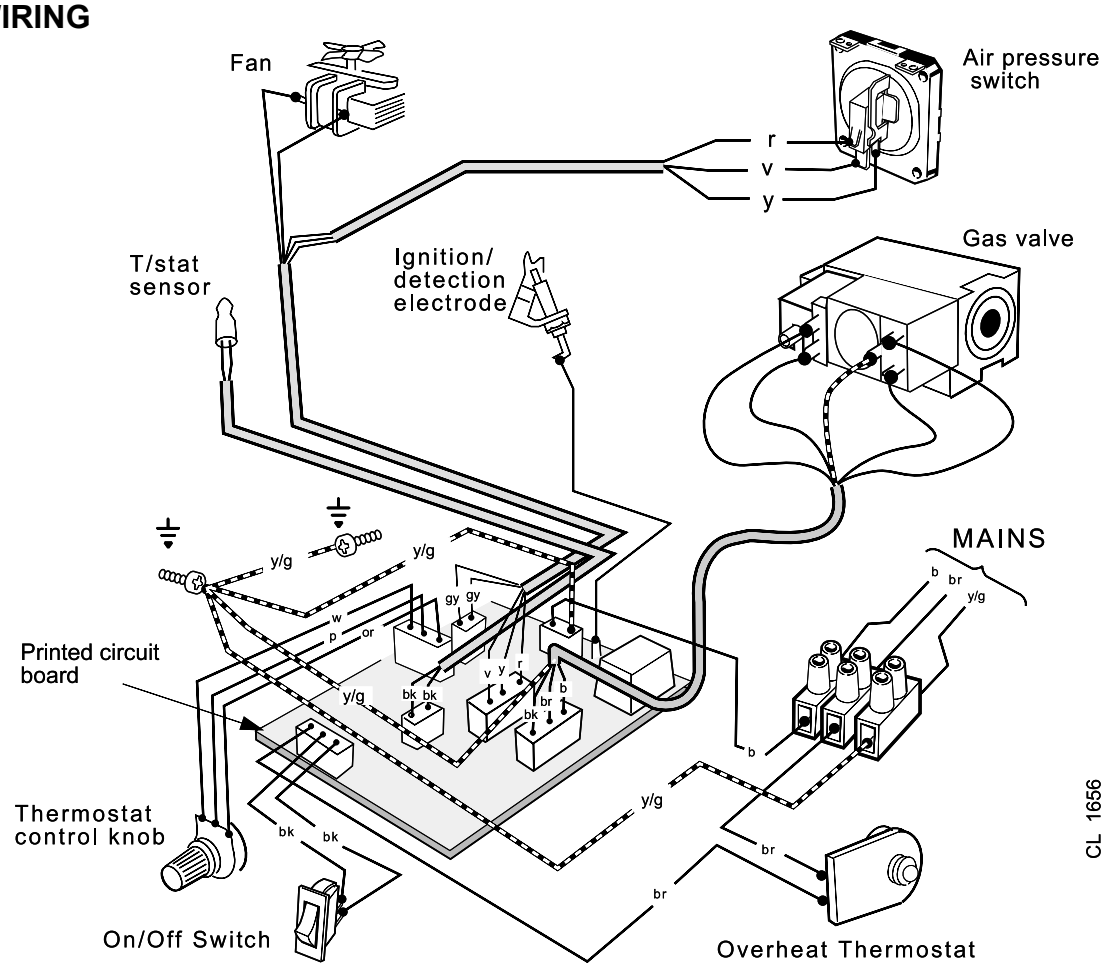
Notes.

1. *Connection between a frost thermostat and the time control should be made without disturbing other wiring.*
2. *A frost thermostat should be sited in a cool place in the house, but where it can sense heat from the system.*

40 PICTORIAL WIRING

LEGEND

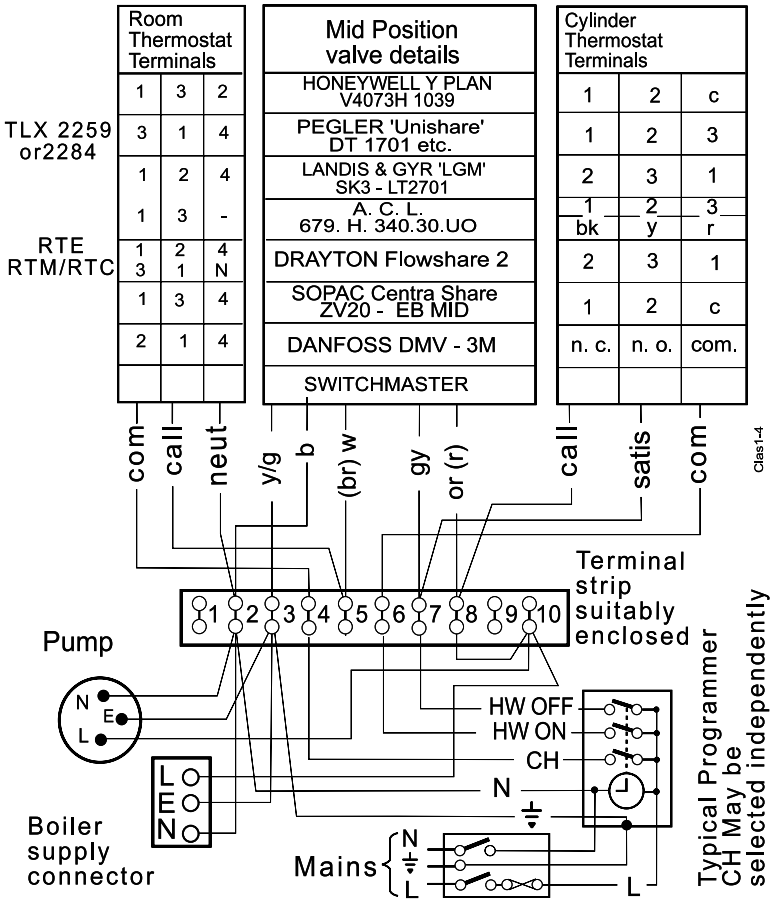
b	blue
bk	black
br	brown
r	red
y	yellow
w	white
or	orange
v	violet
p	pink
gy	grey
y/g	yellow/green



41 MID POSITION VALVE **Pumped only**

Notes.

1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster 'Midi' is similar in operation but the wiring differs slightly - see the manufacturer's literature.*



LEGEND

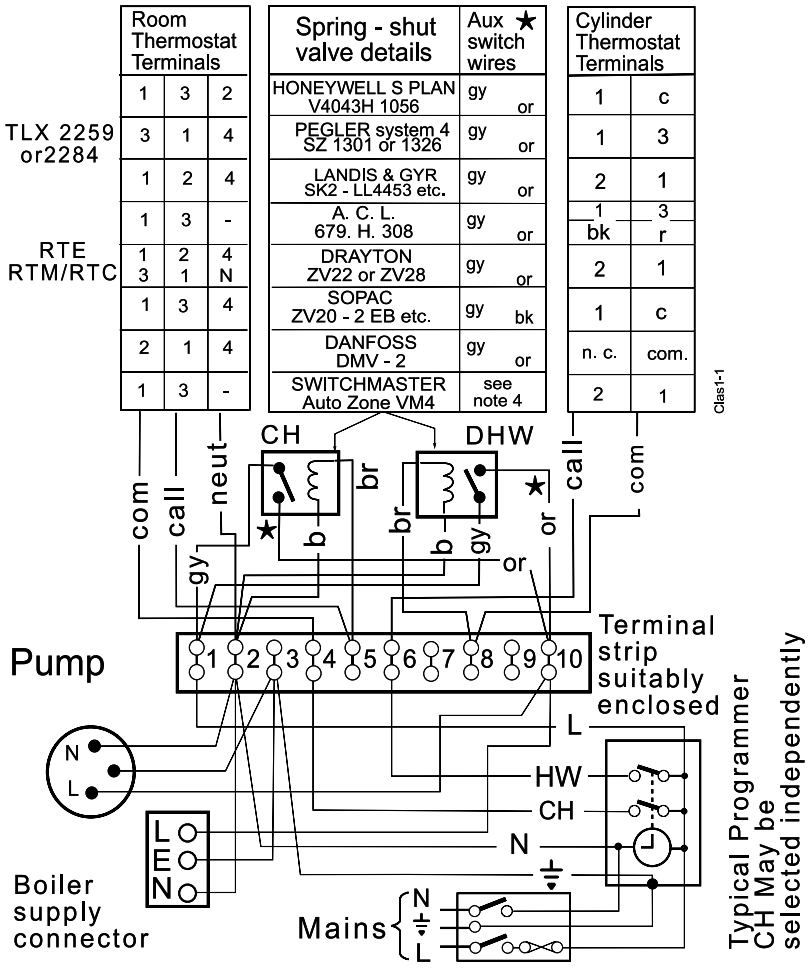
b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**y/g**	yellow/green
br	brown	**or**	orange
r	red	**gy**	grey

42 TWO SPRING CLOSED VALVE

Pumped only

Notes.

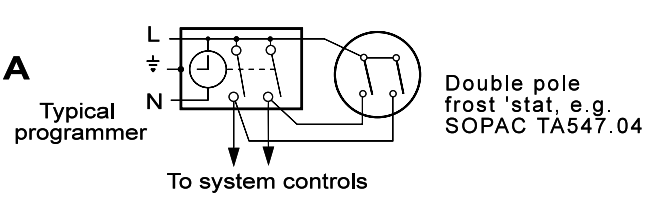
1. *Some earth wires are omitted for clarity. Ensure proper earth continuity when wiring.*
2. *Numbering of terminals on thermostats is specific to the manufacturer.*
3. *This is a fully controlled system - set the boiler thermostat to maximum.*
4. *Switchmaster valve has grey and orange auxiliary switch leads but the grey wire must be connected to the live supply.*

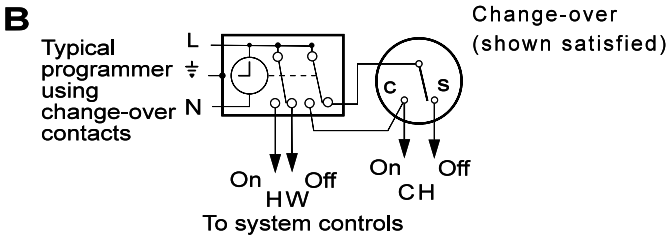


LEGEND

b	blue	**w**	white
bk	black	**gy**	grey
br	brown	**y/g**	yellow/green
or	orange		
r	red	**v**	violet
y	yellow	**pk**	pink

43 FROST PROTECTION





Central heating systems fitted wholly inside the house do not normally require frost protection as the house acts as a 'storage heater' and can normally be left at least 24 hrs. without frost damage. However, if parts of the pipework run outside the house or if the boiler will be left off for more than a day or so, then a frost thermostat should be wired into the system.

This is usually done at the programmer, in which case the programme selector switches are set to OFF and all other controls MUST be left in the running position.

The frost thermostat should be sited in a cold place but where it can sense heat from the system.

Wiring should be as shown, with minimal disturbance to other wiring of the programmer.

Designation of the terminals will vary but the programmer and thermostat manufacturer's leaflets will give full details.

If a boiler is installed in a garage it may be necessary to fit a pipe thermostat.

Diagram A shows a double pole frost thermostat, which should suffice for all systems which do not use the OFF terminals of the programmer.

Diagram B shows a 'change-over' frost 'stat, which will cover most systems which do use CH OFF. If, however, on such a system the HW pipework is in an isolated part of the house, a second frost 'stat may be used to protect it. If in doubt, ask your installer for advice.

44 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

(a) Electrical Installation

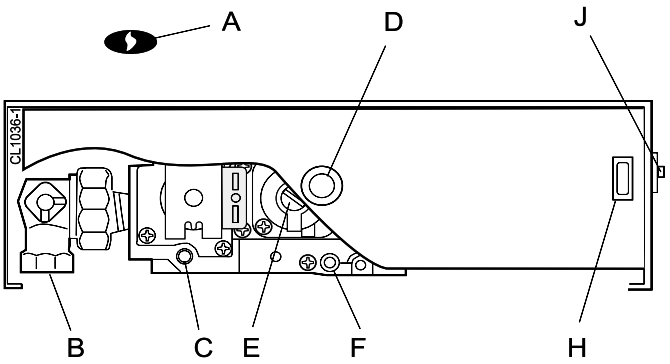
1. Checks to ensure electrical safety should be carried out by a competent person.
2. ALWAYS carry out preliminary electrical system checks, i.e. earth continuity, polarity, resistance to earth and short circuit using a suitable test meter.

(b) Gas Installation

1. The whole of the gas installation, including the meter, MUST be inspected and tested for soundness, and purged in accordance with the recommendations of BS. 6891.
2. Purging air from the gas installation may be expedited by loosening the union on the gas service cock on the boiler and purging until gas is detected.
3. Retighten the union and check for gas soundness.

WARNING. Whilst effecting the required gas soundness test and purging air from the gas installation open all windows and doors, extinguish naked lights and **DO NOT SMOKE.**

45 INITIAL LIGHTING



LEGEND

A Sightglass.
B Gas service cock.
C Inlet pressure test point.
D Thermostat knob
E Main burner pressure adjuster.
F Burner pressure test point.
H Boiler mains on/off switch.
J Overheat thermostat reset button.

TO LIGHT THE BOILER

1. Check that all the drain cocks are closed, and any valves in the flow and return are open.
2. Check that the gas service cock (B) is OPEN and the boiler mains On/Off switch is OFF.
3. If the boiler output is to be set to minimum or mid, affix the appropriate indicator label supplied in the hardware pack to the data badge, located on the controls support.
4. **Fitting the Boiler Casing**
   The boiler casing must be refitted with the controls support casing attached for alignment purposes. Lift the boiler casing up to the boiler assembly, with the casing top angled forward. Hook the top edge of the boiler casing into the channel on the top of the boiler assembly. Swing the bottom of the casing down and secure with the 2 captive screws.

   The casing must seat correctly and compress the sealing strip to make an airtight joint.
   Visually check the side seals but, if side clearances are limited, then check that the top and bottom edges of the casing are correctly located.

   To gain access to the gas valve:

   a. Remove the controls support casing. Release the controls support front fixing screws 3 turns only. Remove the pod by pulling it forward to disengage from the keyhole slots.

   b. Remove the control box securing screws and swing it down into the servicing position. See diagram B.
5. Slacken the screw in the burner pressure test point (F) and connect a gas pressure gauge via a flexible tube.
6. Swing the control box back into its working position.
7. Press the overheat thermostat reset button (J).
8. Switch the electricity supply ON and check that all external controls are calling for heat.
9. Set the boiler thermostat knob (D) to position 6 and the boiler Mains On/Off switch to ON. The fan will start. After the fan has run for a few seconds the pilot solenoid valve should open and the intermittent spark commence, continuing until the pilot is established. The main burner will then cross-light smoothly. If this sequence does not occur, refer to the Fault Finding section.
10. Test for gas soundness around ALL boiler gas components using leak detection fluid.
11. Operate the for 10 minutes to stabilise the burner temperature.
12. The boiler is pre-set at the factory to its highest nominal rating but can be range rated to suit the system design requirements. Refer to Table 2 (page 2):

    a. Set the mains On/Off switch to OFF.

    b. Switch the electricity supply OFF.

    c. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

    d. Remove the main burner adjuster cover.

    e. Turn the adjusting screw *clockwise* to INCREASE the pressure, or *anticlockwise* to DECREASE the pressure.

    f. Swing the control box back into its working position.

    g. Switch the electricity supply ON.

    h. Set the mains On/Off switch to ON and check the new setting pressure.
13. If necessary repeat steps 12a to h until the required pressure is achieved. Record this value in the Benchmark log book.
14. Set the main On/Off switch to OFF.
15. Switch the electricity supply OFF.
16. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
17. Refit the main burner pressure adjuster cover.
18. Remove the pressure gauge and tube. Retighten the sealing screw in the pressure test pint. Ensure a gas tight seal is made.

46 INITIAL LIGHTING - continued

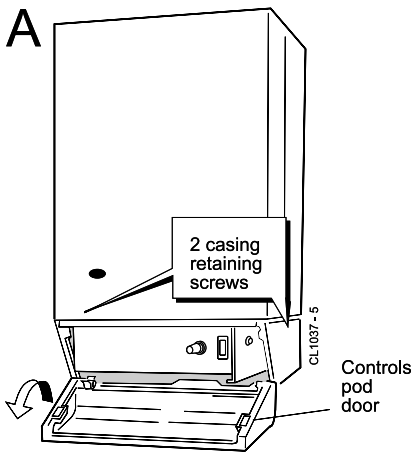
19. Swing the control box back into its working position and secure.

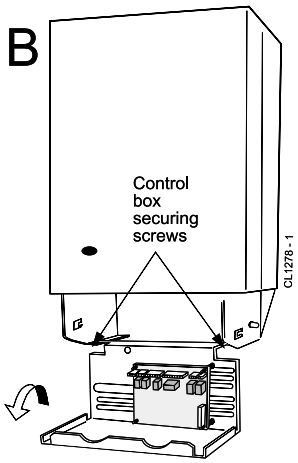
20. Remove the boiler casing.

21. Refit the controls support to the boiler casing and tighten the 2 front fixing screws.

22. Refit the complete casing to the boiler.

23. Close the pod door.





47 GENERAL CHECKS

Make the following checks for correct operation:

1. Set the boiler thermostat knob to position 6 and operate the mains on/off switch. Check that the main burner lights and extinguishes in response.

2. The correct operation of ANY programmer and all other system controls should be proved.

Operate each control separately and check that the main burner or circulating pump, as the case may be, responds.

3. Check that the casing is sealed correctly and compressing the sealing strip all around the casing.

4. Water Circulating System

a. With the system HOT, examine all water connections for soundness.

b. With the system still hot, turn off the gas, water and electricity supplies to the boiler and drain down, in order to complete the flushing process.

c. Refill and vent the system, clear all air locks and again check for water soundness.

d. Balance the system.

5. Finally, set the controls to the user's requirements.

The temperatures quoted below are approximate and vary between installations.

Knob Setting	Flow Temperature °C	°F
1	54	130
2	60	140
3	66	150
4	71	160
5	77	170
6	82	180

WARNING.

The boiler MUST NOT be operated with the casing removed.

48 HANDING OVER

After completing the installation and commissioning of the system the installer should hand over to the householder by the following actions:

1. Hand the User's Instructions to the Householder and explain his or her responsibilities under the current Gas Safety (Installation and Use) Regulations or rules in force.

2. Draw attention to the Lighting Instruction label affixed to the controls pod door.

3. Explain and demonstrate the lighting and shutting down procedures.

4. The operation of the boiler and the use and adjustment of ALL system controls should be fully explained to the Householder, to ensure the greatest possible fuel economy, consistent with household requirements of both heating and hot water consumption.
Advise the User of the precautions necessary to prevent damage to the system and to the building, in the event of the system remaining inoperative during frosty conditions.

5. Explain the function and the use of the boiler thermostat and external controls.

6. Explain the function of the boiler overheat thermostat and emphasise that if cutout persists, the boiler should be turned off and a registered CORGI installer consulted.

7. Explain and demonstrate the function of time and temperature controls, radiator valves etc., for the economic use of the system.

8. If any Programmer Kit is fitted draw attention to the Programmer Kit User's Instructions and hand them to the Householder.

9. After installation, commissioning and customer hand-over instructions please complete the benchmark appliance log book and leave this with the customer.

10. Stress the importance of regular servicing by a CORGI registered installer and that a comprehensive service should be carried out AT LEAST ONCE A YEAR.

11. As the installer you may wish to undertake the service contract yourself or alternatively offer to the customer the benefits of the Caradon Ideal Services, details of which are outlined in the household pack supplied with this boiler.

49 SCHEDULE

To ensure the continued safe and efficient operation of the appliance, it is recommended that it is checked at regular intervals and serviced as necessary.
The frequency of servicing will depend upon the installation condition and usage, but should be carried out at least annually. It is the law that any service work must be carried out by CORGI registered installer**.**

a. Light the boiler and carry out a pre-service check, noting any operational faults. Operate the boiler for at least 20 minutes. Check the gas consumption.

b. Connect a suitable gas analyser to the sampling point on the top RHS of the back panel. For correct boiler operation the CO/CO_2 content of the flue gas should not be greater than 0.004 ratio. If this is the case and the gas input is at least 90% of the nominal, then no further action need be taken. If not, proceed to paragraph **c**.

c. Clean the main burner. Refer to Frame 51.

d. Clean the heat exchanger. Refer to Frame 50.

e. Clean the main and pilot injectors. Refer to Frame 51.

f. Remove any debris from inside the base of the casing.

g. Check that the flue terminal is unobstructed and that the flue system is sealed correctly.

h. If the appliance has been installed in a compartment, check that the ventilation areas are clear.

The servicing procedures are covered more fully in Frames 48 to 52 and must be carried out in sequence.

WARNING.
Disconnect the electrical supply and turn off gas supply.

IMPORTANT. After completing the servicing or exchange of components always test for gas soundness and carry out functional checks as appropriate.

When work is complete the casing MUST be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

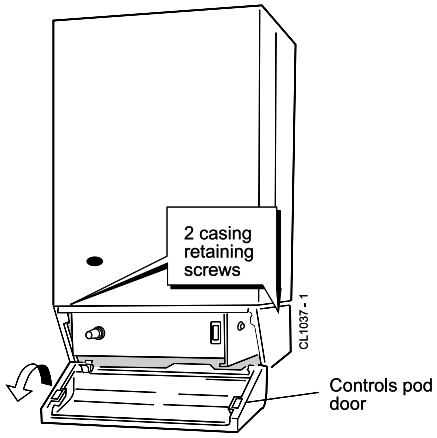
The boiler must NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

Note. *In order to carry out either servicing or replacement of components, the boiler casing must be removed. Refer to Frame 48.*

50 BOILER CASING REMOVAL

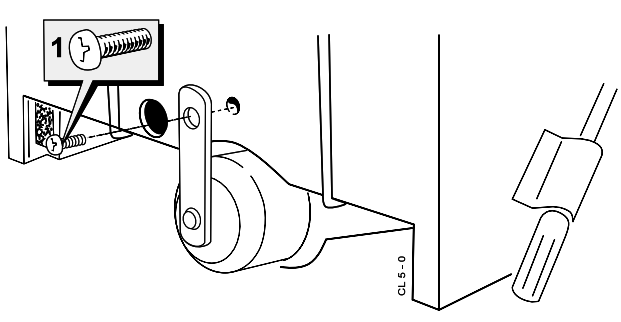
1. Open the controls pod door and release the 2 captive screws at the bottom of the casing. Swing the bottom of the boiler casing out until the controls pod casing has cleared the controls, then unhook the casing top from the pack panel. Retain the casing in a safe place. Where the removal of the casing is impaired by a pelmet, the instruction in Frame 2 should be followed.

2. Isolate the gas supply at the service cock fitted to the boiler.



51 BURNER AND AIR BOX REMOVAL

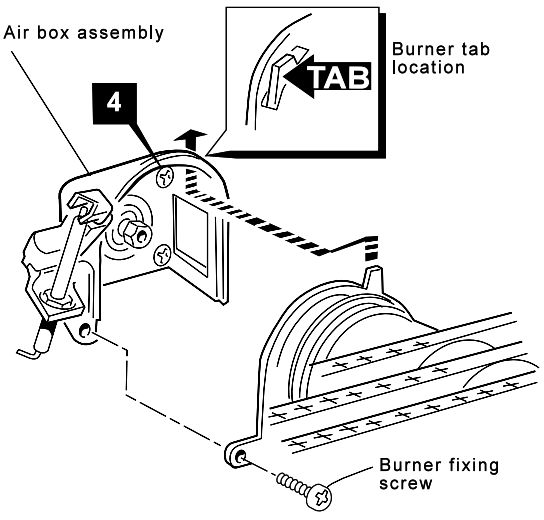
1. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber. Remove the M5 pozi situated at the LH bottom rear of the burner and pull the burner downwards to disengage the retention tab. Remove the burner to a safe place for inspection and cleaning.



2. Remove the control box fixing screw. Pull the box forward and downward to disengage.

3. Pull the HT lead connection off the printed circuit board and pull the lead upwards through the bottom panel grommet.

4. Remove the 4 screws retaining the air box/pilot assembly to the vertical manifold and carefully remove the assembly.



52 CLEANING THE FAN ASSEMBLY / THE FLUEWAYS

1. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.

2. Disconnect the fan leads.

3a. Rear flue
Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

3b. Side flue
Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

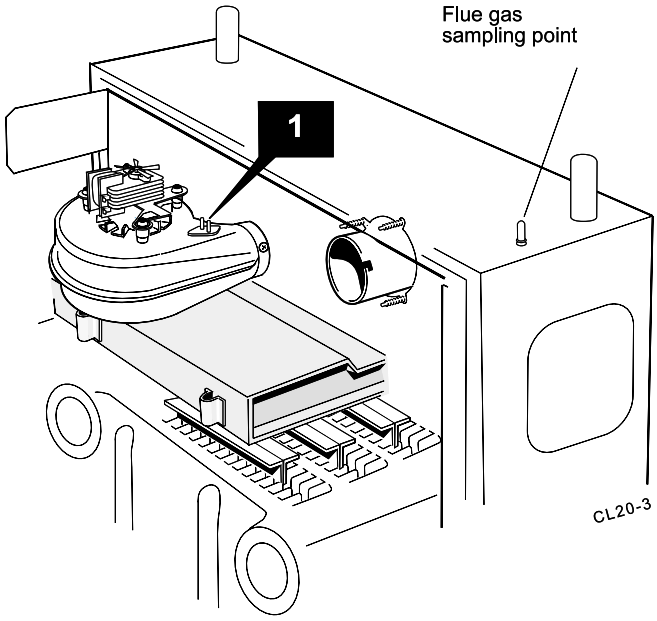
4. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.

5. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.

6. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood/fan assembly.

7. Check that the fan impeller runs freely. Remove any debris from the impeller with a soft brush.

8. Remove the flue baffles.



9. Remove all loose deposits from the heat exchanger, particularly between the fins, using a suitable brush.

10. Reassemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.

53 CLEANING THE BURNER AND PILOT ASSEMBLY

1. Brush off any deposits that may have fallen on to the burner head (ensuring the flame ports are unobstructed) and remove any debris that may have collected.
Note. *Brushes with metallic bristles must not be used.*

2. Remove the main burner injector and ensure there is no blockage or damage. Clean or renew as necessary.

3. Refit the injector, using an approved jointing compound sparingly.

4. Inspect the pilot burner and ignition / detection electrode. Ensure that they are clean and in good condition.

Check that:

a. The pilot burner injector is not blocked or damaged. Refer to Frame 59 for removal details.

b. The pilot burner is clean and unobstructed.

c. The ignition / detection electrode is clean and undamaged.

d. The ignition / detection lead is in good condition.

e. The spark gap is correct (Frame 59). Clean or renew as necessary.

Note. *The pilot shield is located around the pilot assembly bracket and is located by the electrode retaining nut.*

54 RE-ASSEMBLY

Reassemble the boiler in the following order.

1. Refit the flue baffles.

2. Inspect the collector hood rope gasket and replace, if necessary, ensuring that the self adhesive rope is fitted centrally on to the lip of the collector hood / fan assembly. The boiler efficiency will be adversely affected if incorrectly fitted. Refit the collector hood and retain with the 2 front tie rods and the rear central fixing screw. Tighten the nuts and screw. Ensure that the sealing gasket is compressed. Refit the pressure pipe.

3. Refit the positive pressure tubes on the top of the fan housing. Reconnect the electrical leads.

4. Refit the air box assembly and burner. Ensure that the burner front fixing is refitted.

5. Reconnect the gas supply and the electrical wiring. Refer to Frames 34 & 36.

6. Check the sightglass in the boiler casing. Clean or renew as necessary. Refer to Frame 55.

7. Check for gas soundness. Check the gas service cock and pressure test point.

8. Refit the boiler casing (Refer to Frame 43, item 4). Note that it is not necessary to disturb the controls casing pod.

9. Close the controls pod door.

55 GAS PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

PILOT

The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. If, after removing and checking the injector (as detailed in Frame 59) and ensuring that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available, the pilot does not light then contact **Caradon Plumbing Limited.**

Relight in accordance with 'Initial Lighting', Frame 45.

MAIN BURNER

After any servicing, reference should be made to Table 2 which quotes details of the rated output with the related burner setting pressure and the heat input. Any required adjustments should be made by using the pressure adjustment screw.

Refer to 'initial Lighting', Frame 45.

REPLACEMENT OF PARTS

56 GENERAL

When replacing any component:

1. Isolate the electricity supply.
2. Turn OFF the gas supply.
3. Remove the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 49.

IMPORTANT. When work is complete the casing must be correctly refitted, ensuring that a good seal is made.

Note. *In order to assist fault finding, the control box printed circuit board is fitted with 2 indicator lights which represent the following boiler conditions:*

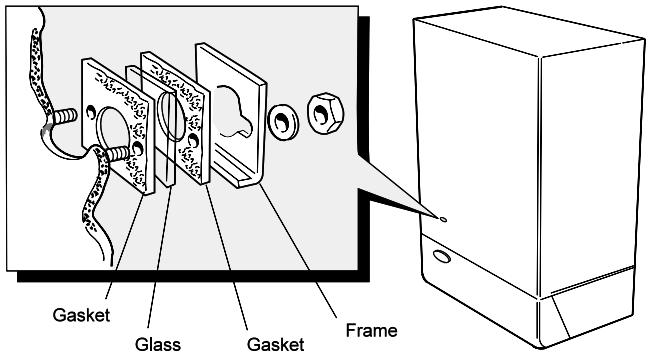
Neon I3. Mains electricity ON.

Neon SG1. Flashes to indicate ignition operation (stops after detection).

The boiler MUST NOT be operated if the casing is not fitted.

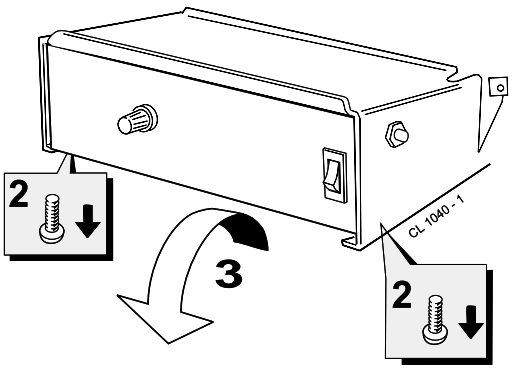
57 SIGHTGLASS REPLACEMENT

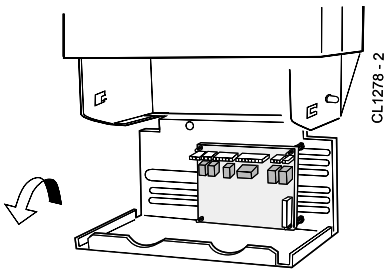
1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Unfasten the 2 nuts and washers holding the sightglass assembly to the casing front panel.
3. When fixing the new assembly ensure that the parts are in the correct order. The frame must have the return edge at the bottom.
4. Retighten the 2 nuts to ensure an airtight seal. Do NOT overtighten.
6. Replace the boiler casing. Refer to Frame 53.

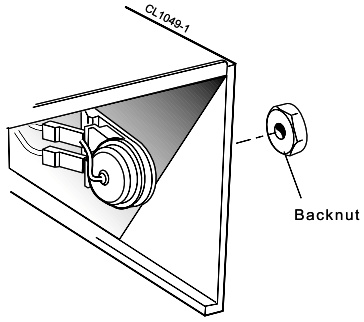


58 OVERHEAT THERMOSTAT REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the control box fixing screws.
3. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.
4. Pull off the electrical connections at the thermostat. Remove the backnut retaining the thermostat to the bracket. Withdraw the thermostat phial from the heat exchanger pocket.
5. Fit the new thermostat and reassemble in reverse order.
6. Check the operation of the boiler.







59 THERMOSTAT CONTROL, THERMISTOR SENSOR LEAD & ON/OFF SWITCH REPLACEMENT

Refer also to Frame 56.

A. Remove the fixing screws

B. Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

Thermostat control

1. Pull the knob off the shaft.

2. Remove the backnut securing the thermostat control to the control box.

3. Pull off the Molex connector from the printed circuit board.

4. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

Thermistor sensor lead

5. Pull the sensor lead connector off the printed circuit board.

6. Remove the sensor from the heat exchanger pocket and unclip from the back panel.

7. Remove the strain relief bush from the back panel base.

8. Remove the sensor lead through the grommet in the control box.

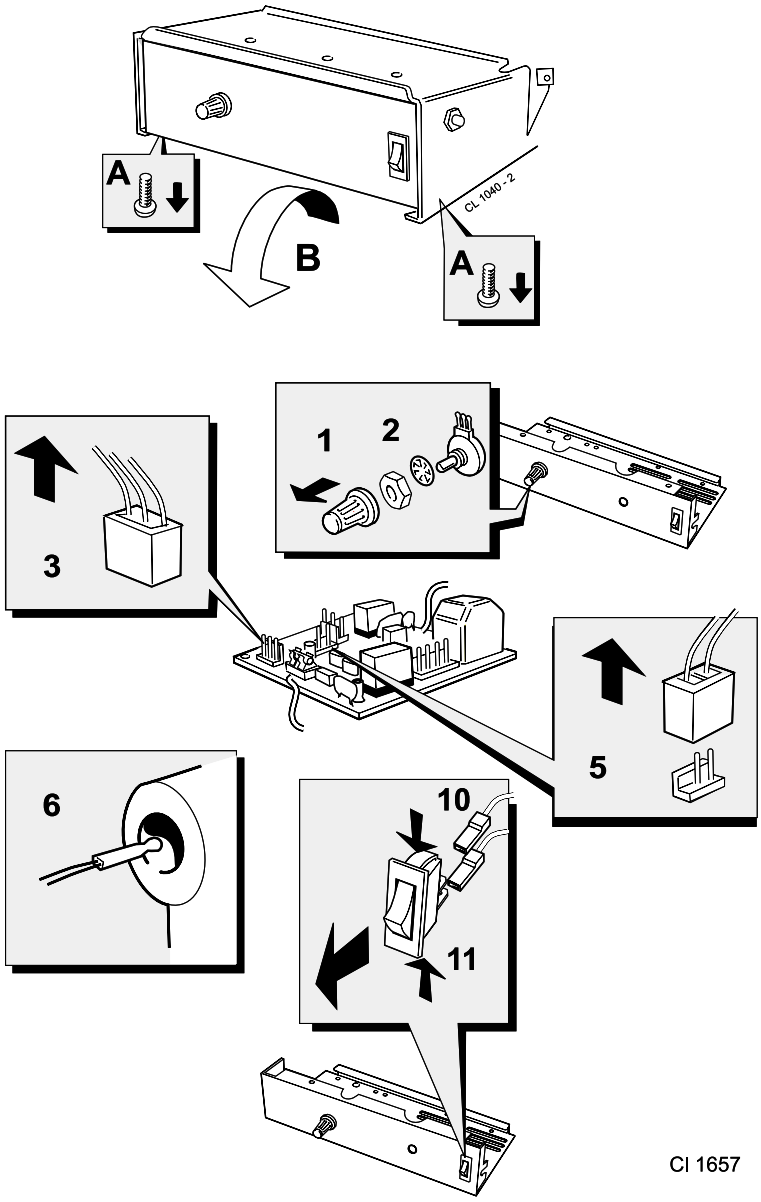
9. Replace and reassemble in reverse order.

On/off switch

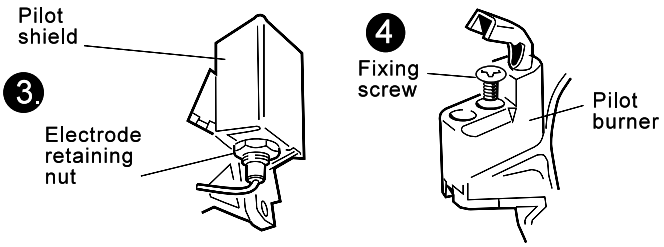
10. Disconnect the electrical connectors from the rear of the switch.

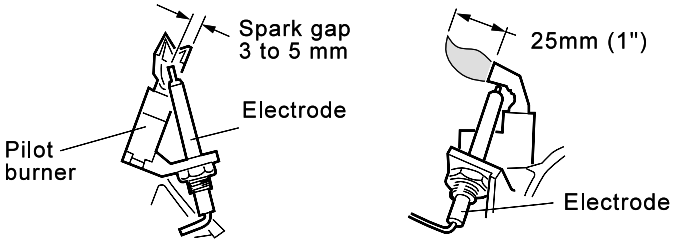
11. Press in the 2 side retaining clips and remove the switch.

12. Reassemble in reverse order.



60 PILOT BURNER REPLACEMENT





1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.

3. Remove the electrode retaining nut and remove the pilot shield and electrode.

4. Unscrew the central pilot fixing screw and lift the pilot clear of the pilot injector. The pilot injector may now be unscrewed if required.

5. Replace the pilot burner (injector if necessary) and retain with the M4 screw previously removed. Ensure that the copper sealing washer is replaced when refitting the pilot injector.

6. Replace the electrode and pilot shield, retaining both with the electrode nut. Check the spark gap.

7. Reassemble in reverse order.

8. Check the operation of the boiler.

9. The pilot is factory set to maximum and no further adjustment is possible. Ensure that there is an inlet pressure of 20 mbar available. Also check burner ignition and cross-lighting.

61 IGNITION ELECTRODE AND LEAD REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.

3. Remove the electrode retaining nut.

4. Remove the pilot shield.

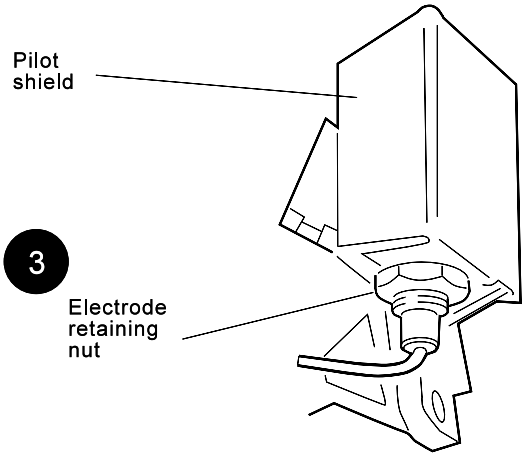
5. Remove the ignition electrode and integral lead.

6. Refit the new electrode and lead in reverse order. Ensure that the pilot shield is replaced.

7. Check the spark gap. Refer to Frame 58.

8. Reassemble in reverse order.

9. Check the operation of the boiler.



62 MAIN BURNER AND MAIN BURNER INJECTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.

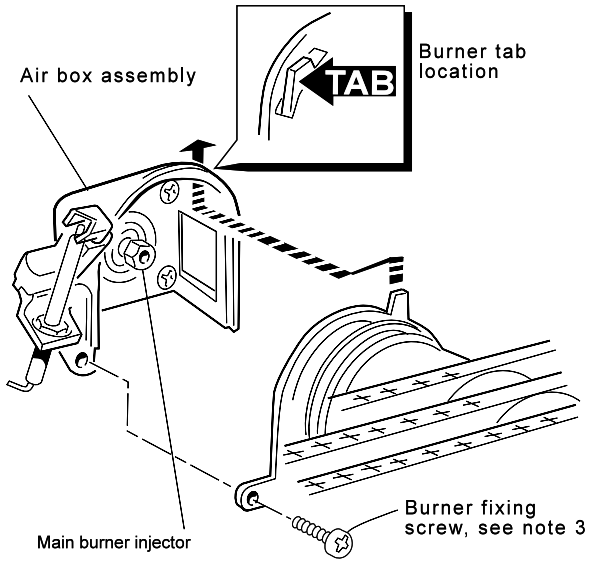
2. Remove the screw retaining the front burner support strap to the combustion chamber.

3. Remove the M5 pozi screw, situated at the left hand bottom rear of the burner. Pull the burner downward to disengage the retention tab and remove the burner.

4. At this stage the main burner injector can be removed, checked, cleaned or replaced as required. Ensure that a new copper sealing washer is used.

5. Fit the new burner, ensuring that the retention tab is correctly located in the air box slot and reassemble in reverse order.

6. Check the burner for cross-lighting and flame stability.



63 GAS CONTROL VALVE REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer also to Frame 69 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 49.

3. Remove the fixing screws.
Swing the control box down into the servicing position.

4. Disconnect the gas control valve electrical leads.

5. Undo the gas cock union .

6. Whilst supporting the gas control valve, remove the 2 screws retaining the manifold to the back panel.

7. Remove the gas control / manifold assembly.

8. Remove the 4 screws retaining the manifold to the gas control valve, and fit the manifold to the new valve. Ensure that the new control is fitted the correct way round (an arrow engraved on back indicates the direction of flow).

9. Transfer the gas cock union to the new gas control valve, using an approved jointing compound.

10. Reassemble in reverse order.

11. Check the operation of the boiler.

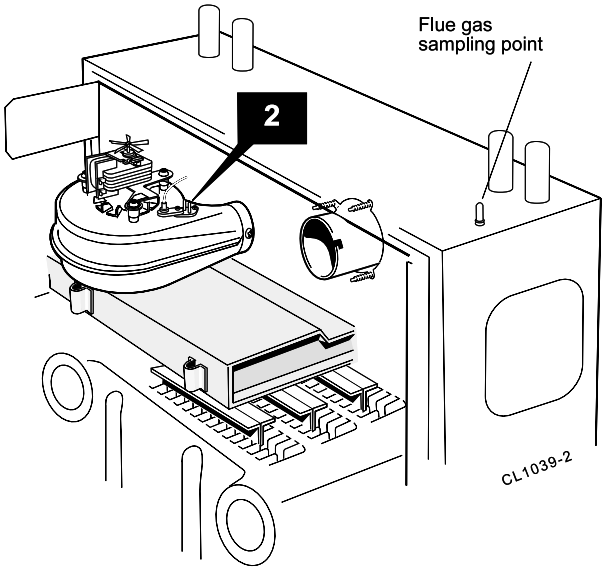
64 FAN REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the 2 silicon rubber tubes from the fan sensing points.
3. Disconnect the fan leads.

4a. **Rear flue.** Slacken the M4 screw securing the flue connector to the fan. Disconnect the connector from the fan and slide into the flue.

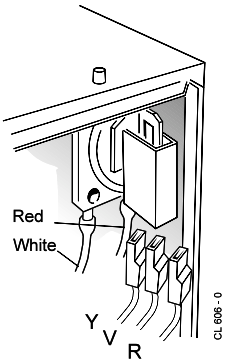
4b. **Side or top flue.** Slacken off two M4 screws securing the flue elbow and flue connector. Disconnect the flue connector from the elbow and slide into the flue. Remove the flue elbow.

5. Disconnect the silicon rubber tube from the rear of the collector hood.
6. Slacken the two M5 nuts on the front tie rods, releasing the tie rods from the combustion chamber.
7. Remove the M5 central fixing screw at the rear of the collector hood and remove collector hood / fan assembly.
8. Remove the three M4 screws retaining the fan to the collector hood.
9. Fit the new fan and reassemble in reverse order, ensuring the fan leads, and 3 sensing tubes are reconnected.
10. Check the operation of the boiler.



65 AIR PRESSURE SWITCH (APS) REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the APS fixing screw.
3. Remove both sensing tubes from the APS.
4. Remove the 3 electrical connections from the APS.
5. Fit the new APS and reassemble in reverse order.
6. Check the operation of the boiler.



66 PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (PCB) REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frames 70 of 'Exploded Views' for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

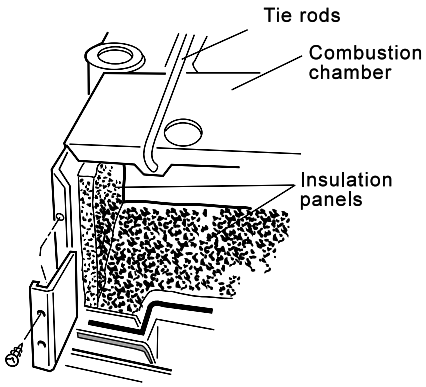
1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the fixing screws and swing the control box down into the servicing position.
3. Disconnect the detection lead from the PCB.
4. Unplug all the Molex connectors from the PCB.
5. Disengage the PCB from the mounting posts and withdraw from the control box.
6. Fit the new PCB and reassemble in reverse order.
7. Check the operation of the boiler.

Fuse.

To change the fuse, prise it out of the holder and disengage the fuse. Refer to Frame 70 for fuse location.

67 COMBUSTION CHAMBER INSULATION REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.
2. Remove the burner and air box assembly. Refer to Frame 50.
3. Remove the 4 tie rods.
4. Remove the combustion chamber.
5. Remove the 2 side panel retaining brackets.
6. Remove the side insulation panels.
7. Remove the front and rear insulation panels.
8. Fit the new front and rear insulation panels.
9. Fit the new side panels and retain with the brackets and screws previously removed.
10. Reassemble in reverse order.



68 HEAT EXCHANGER REPLACEMENT

Note. *Refer to Frame 8 (Boiler assembly - Exploded view) for illustration of the procedure detailed below.*

1. Refer to Frame 56.

2. Remove the burner / air box assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

3. Drain the system.

4. Disconnect the water connections. If compression fittings are used then cut the pipes both above and below the fittings in order to allow the heat exchanger assembly to be removed. Remove the heat exchanger drain plug and drain the residual water into a suitable receptacle.

5. Remove the fan / collector hood assembly. Refer to Frame 51.

6. Remove the combustion chamber by unscrewing the 4 tie rods.

7. Remove the thermostat sensors from the pockets on the heat exchanger by removing the M3 screws and plates.

8. Slacken 3 turns only the 4 heat exchanger / inter-panel retaining screws.

9. Lift the heat exchanger / inter-panel assembly upward and forward to disengage key hole fixings. Pull the assembly downwards to clear the water pipes from the back panel.

10. Remove the 2 rubber sealing grommets from the top of the back panel to facilitate fitting the new assembly.

11. Fit the new heat exchanger assembly, complete with water pipes, and hang it on the key hole slots and screws. Retighten the screws.

12. Replace the 2 rubber sealing grommets.

13. Reassemble in reverse order.

14. Remake all water connections, ensuring that the compression fittings (if used) are correctly refitted.

15. Fully test all functions, including water and gas soundness.

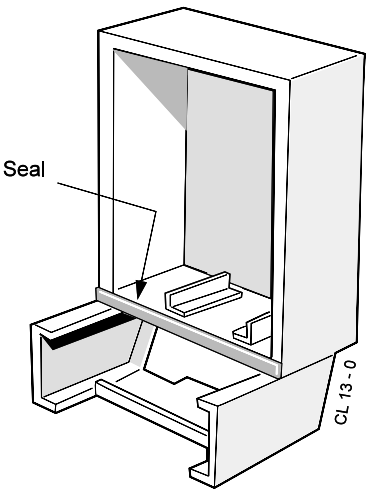
69 CASING SEAL REPLACEMENT

1. Refer to Frame 56.

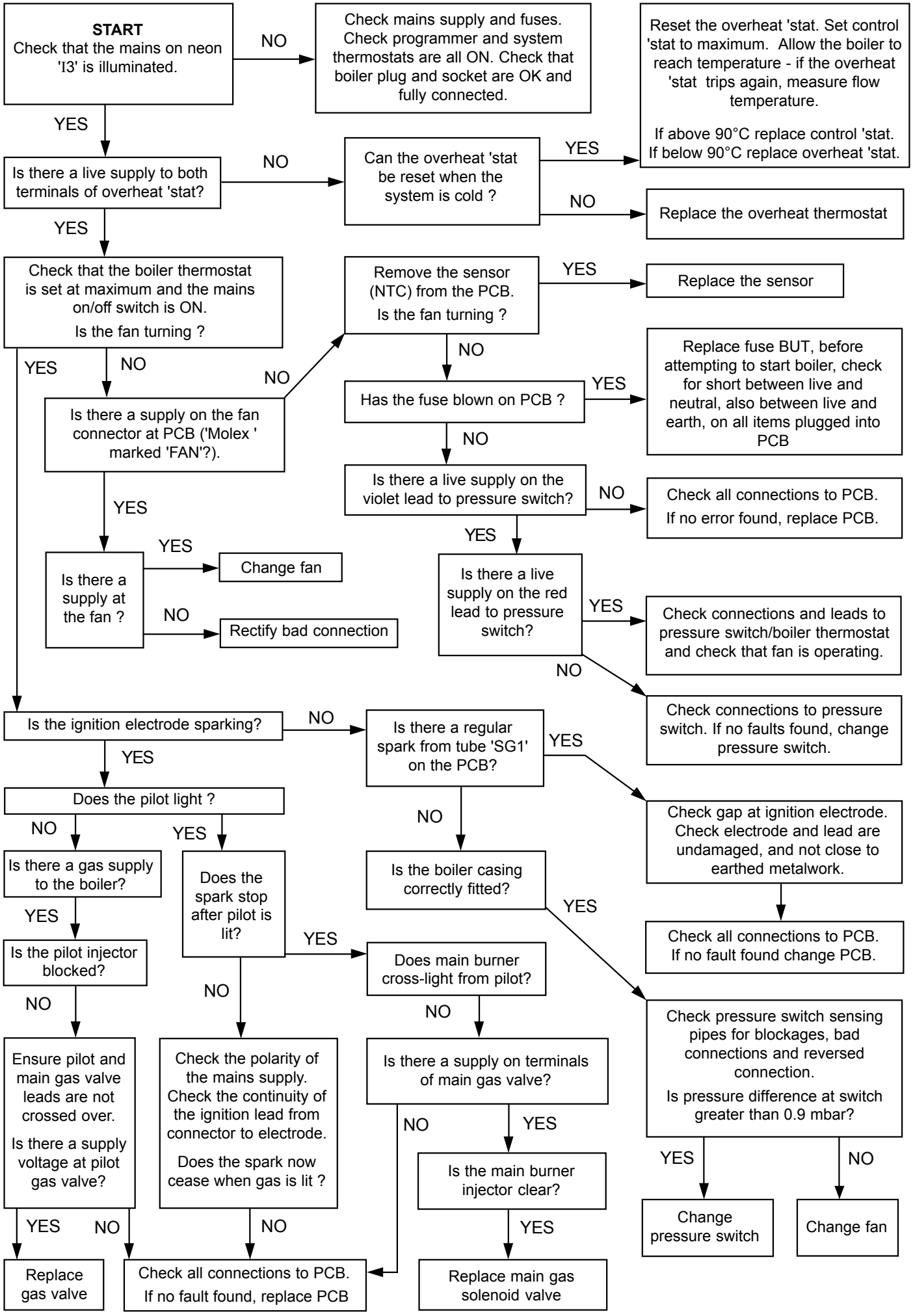
2. Remove the old seal from the casing surround and thoroughly clean the casing surfaces.

3. Fit the new self adhesive seals.

4. Replace the boiler casing.



FAULT FINDING



SHORT LIST OF PARTS

The following are parts commonly required due to damage or expendability. Their failure or absence is likely to affect safety or performance of this appliance.

The list is extracted from the British Gas List of Parts, which contains all available spare parts.

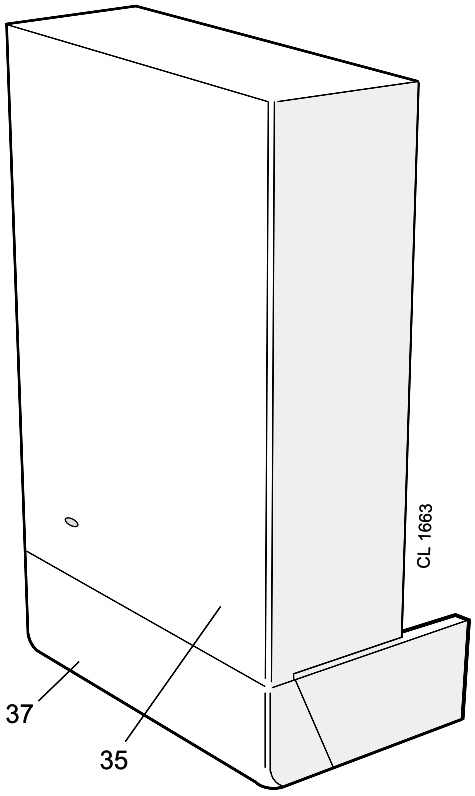
The full lists is held by British Gas, **Caradon Plumbing Limited** distributors and merchants.

When ordering spares please quote:

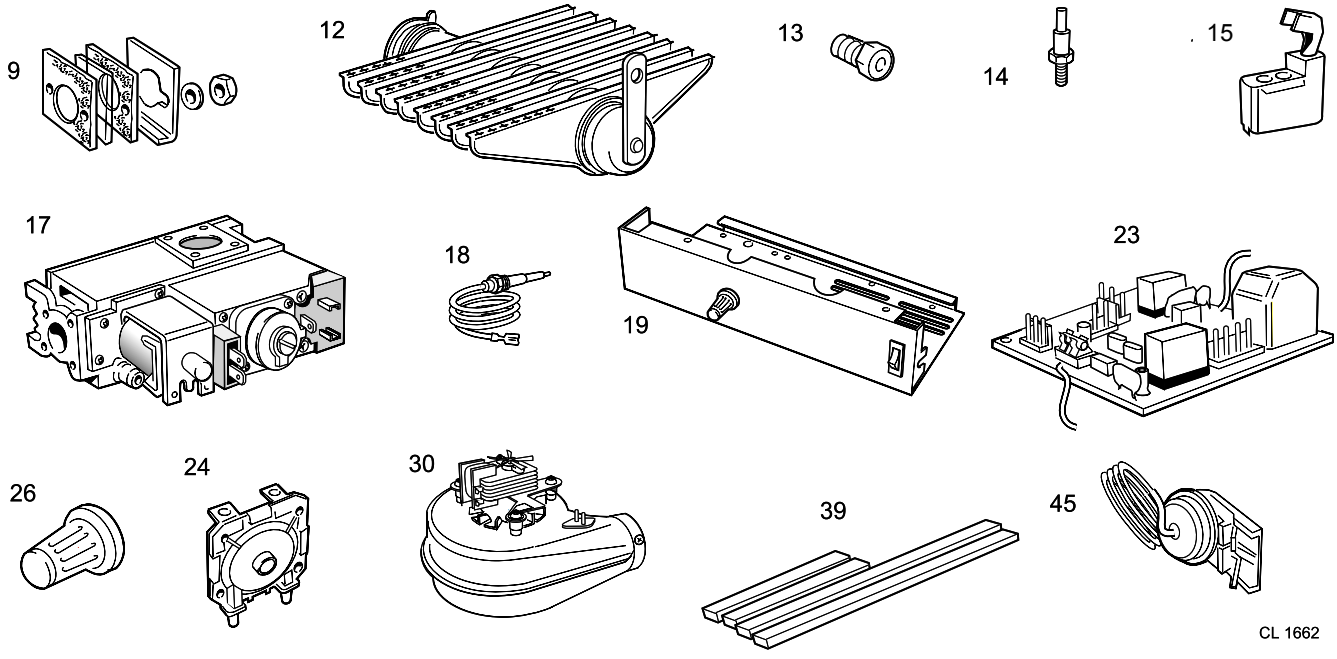
1. Boiler Model
2. Appliance G.C. Number
3. Description
4. Quantity
5. Product Number

Key No.	GC Part No.	Description	Qty.	Product No.
9	308 365	Sightglass assembly kit	1	079602
12		Main burner		
		AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 306; FF 230 & FF 240	1	155396
		AEROMATIC No. AC 19/123 305; FF 250 & FF 260	1	155397
13		Main burner injector		
		Injector Ø 2.56mm FF 230	1	155 398
		Injector Ø 3.00mm FF 240	1	155 399
		Injector Ø 3.30mm FF 250		155 400
		Injector Ø 3.59mm FF 260	1	155 401
13A		Copper washer, Aeromatic 91416 (for injector); FF230, FF240, FF250, FF260	1	152426
14	397 943	Pilot burner injector: HONEYWELL 4580 1075002 ; FF 230-260	1	004982
15	308 358	Pilot burner head Q359A with: Honeywell 4580 1075002 injector FF 230-260	1	079599
17		Gas valve kit VR 4601AA1036, 230 V	1	075698
18	308 549	Ignition electrode complete with lead and backnut 410 mm lg.	1	111881
19		Control box assembly, including thermostat, knob, PCB, potentiometer and on/off switch	1	156047
23	386 149	Automatic ignition printed circuit board : PACTROL PCB 25 B	1	079716
24	385 861	Pressure switch: HONEYWELL YAMATAKE C6065 F137312	1	155412
26	308 283	Thermostat knob	1	079601
30	E02-661	Fan assembly: SIFAN No. FFB 1701-037		155331
35		Boiler casing assembly complete with sightglass assy, insulation & M5 x 16 dogpoint pozi pan hd FF 230-260	1	155329
37	308 541	Controls casing door with Lighting Instructions	1	079941
39	E04-504	Casing seal pack complete with screws	1	075392
45	386 144	Overheat thermostat, RANCO LM7 P 8508	1	113200

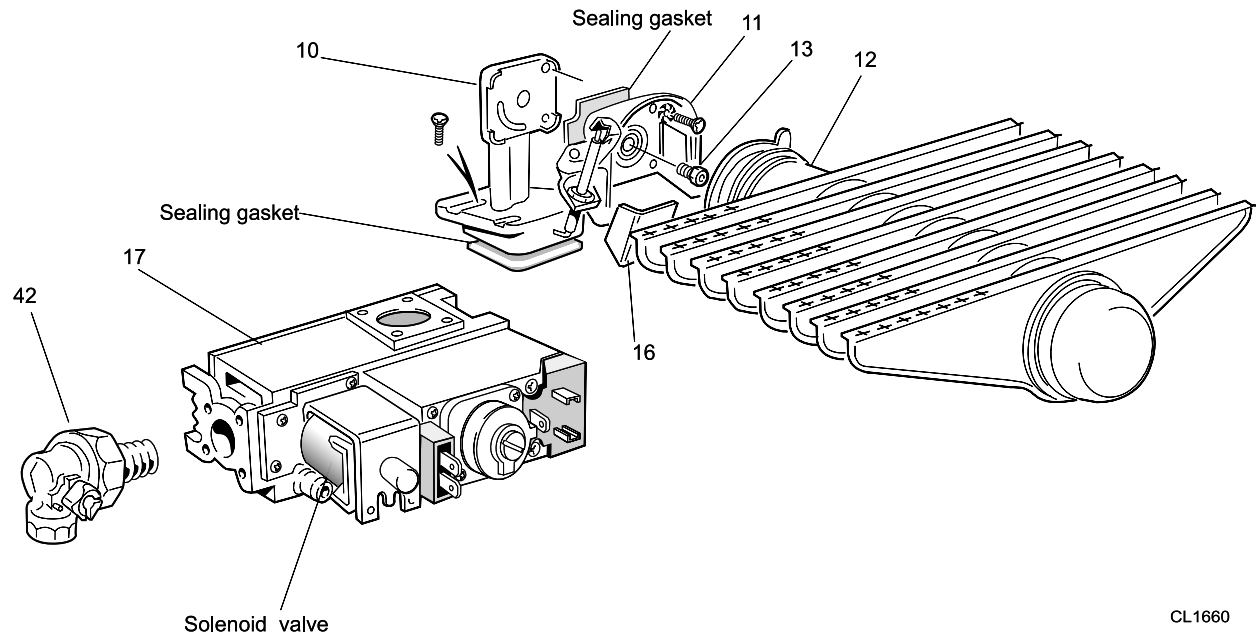
70 BOILER CASING ASSEMBLY



71 SHORT PARTS LIST



72 BURNER ASSEMBLY - Exploded View



LEGEND

10. Burner manifold

11. Air box and pilot assembly.

12. Main burner.

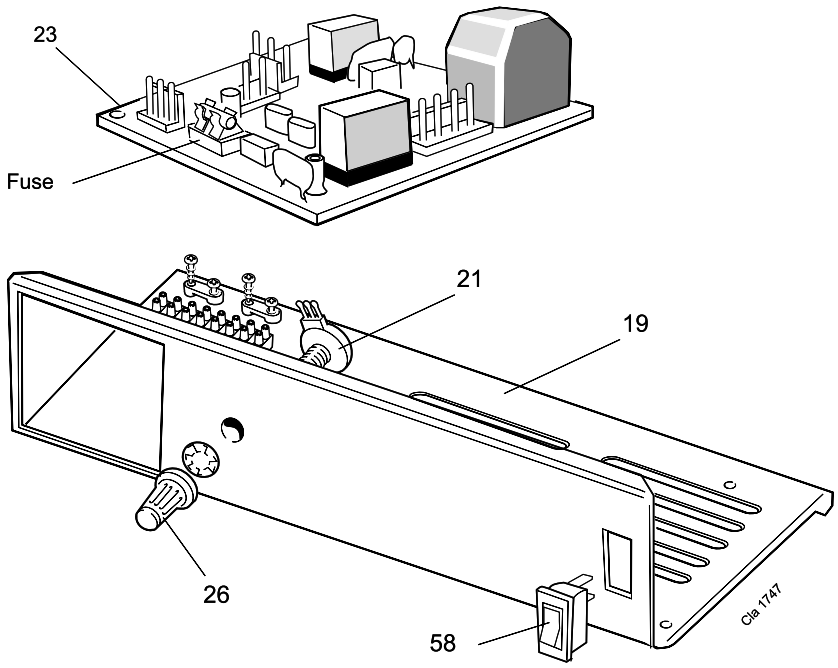
13. Main burner injector.

16. Pilot shield.

17. Gas control valve.

42. Gas service cock.

73 CONTROL BOX - Exploded View



LEGEND

19. Control box.

21. Thermostat potentiometer.

23. Printed circuit board.

26. Thermostat knob.

58. Mains on/off switch.

NOTES

NOTES

NOTES

benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Technical Training

The Caradon Plumbing Limited Technical Training Centre offers a series of first class training courses for domestic, commercial and industrial heating installers, engineers and system specifiers.

For details of courses please ring: *01482 498432*

CE 87/BL/43

Natural Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

Caradon Plumbing Limited pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

Caradon Plumbing Limited, P.O. Box 103, National Ave, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137.

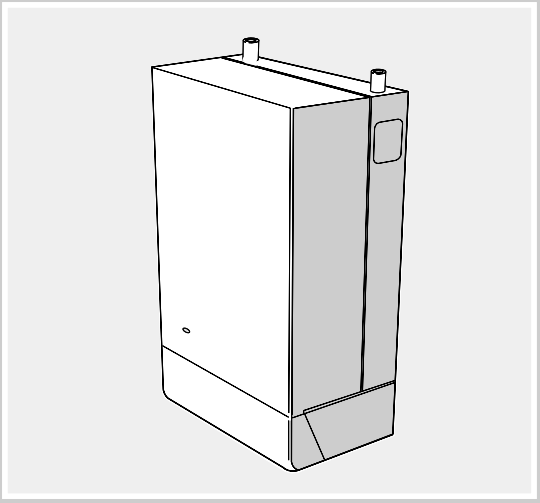
March 2001 156 647 A01

BOILERS Ideal

Ideal Installer/Technical Helpline: 01482 498663

www.idealboilers.com

THE IDEAL USERS GUIDE



classic

the wall hung boiler

Wall mounted, fanned, balanced flue gas boilers

Classic
LXFF 230 - 280
FF 230 - 2 100

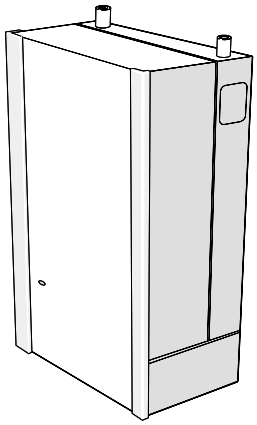
Ideal BOILERS

Householders guide to domestic central heating boilers

CLASSIC LX FF & FF (*Natural Gas Models Only)*

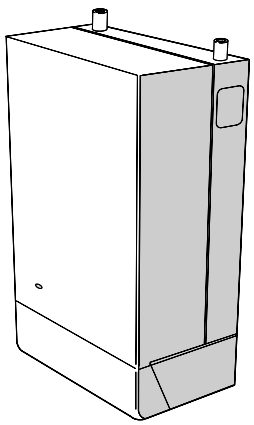
Deluxe

Classic LXFF 230 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 24
Classic LXFF 240 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 25
Classic LXFF 250 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 26
Classic LXFF 260 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 27
Classic LXFF 270 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 28
Classic LXFF 280 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 29



Standard

Classic FF 230 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 01
Classic FF 240 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 02
Classic FF 250 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 03
Classic FF 260 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 04
Classic FF 270 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 05
Classic FF 280 ..... G.C. No. 41 387 06
Classic FF 2 100 ..... G.C. No. 41 349 71



Introduction

It is essential that the instructions in this booklet are strictly followed, for safe and economic operation of the boiler.

Gas safety (Installation & Use) Regulations 1994, amendments 1996 or rules in force.

In your own interest, and that of safety, it is the law that this boiler must be installed by a registered installer, in accordance with all national and local regulations.

Electricity Supply

This appliance must be efficiently earthed.

Supply: 230 V ~ 50 Hz. The fusing should be 3A.

Connection must be made in a way that allows complete isolation of the electrical supply such as a double pole switch having a 3mm (1/8") contact separation in both poles, or a plug and socket, serving only the boiler and system controls. The means of isolation must be accessible to the user after installation.

Important notes

a. *This appliance must not be operated without the casing correctly fitted and forming an adequate seal.*

b. *If the boiler is installed in a compartment then the compartment MUST NOT be used for storage purposes.*

c. *The ventilation provided for the boiler during installation MUST NOT be blocked, and a check should be made periodically that the ventilation areas are free from any obstruction.*

d. *If it is known or suspected that a fault exists on the boiler then it MUST NOT be used until the fault has been corrected by a CORGI registered installer.*

e. *Inflammable materials must not be placed in close proximity to the appliance. Materials giving off flammable vapours must not be stored in the same room as the appliance.*

f. *Under NO circumstances should any of the sealed components on this appliance be used incorrectly or tampered with.*

Minimum clearances

A clearance of 533mm (21") MUST be available at the front of the boiler for servicing.

The minimum clearances given below MUST be complied with in order to maintain the safe running of the boiler and to facilitate servicing.

Above the boiler	100 mm	(4")
At each side of the boiler	5 mm	(1/4")
Underneath the boiler	100 mm	(4")
In front of the boiler	450 mm	(17 3/4 ")

CAUTION. To avoid the possibility of injury during the installation, servicing or cleaning of this appliance care should be taken when handling edges of sheet steel components

To light the boiler. Refer to Frame 1

1. CHECK THAT THE ELECTRICITY SUPPLY TO THE BOILER IS OFF.
2. **Deluxe Model (LX)** - Lift the glass fascia and support it with the sliding catch.

   Standard Model - Open the controls access door by hinging downwards.
3. Ensure that the gas inlet cock (B) is OPEN.
4. Press the overheat reset button (D), located as shown in Frame 1.
5. Ensure that the mains on/off switch (E) is in the OFF position.
6. Switch ON the electricity supply to the boiler. Check that all external controls, e.g. room thermostat etc., are ON.
7. Turn the boiler thermostat knob (C) to position 6 and the mains on/off switch (E) to ON. After about 15 seconds the boiler will light automatically - this can be viewed through the sight glass (A).
   Set the boiler thermostat to the desired position.
8. **Deluxe Model (LX)** - Lower the glass fascia after pushing in the sliding catch.

   Standard Model - Close the controls access door.

In **winter conditions**, i.e. central heating and domestic hot water, the thermostat should be set at position 5 or 6.

For **summer conditions**, i.e. domestic hot water only, the thermostat should be set at position 3.

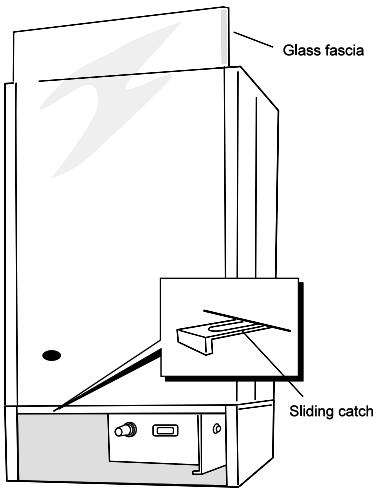
These settings, however, are offered for general guidance only and other settings may be found preferable, dependent upon the type of system installed or as recommended by the installer.

Approximate flow temperatures for the boiler thermostat settings are:

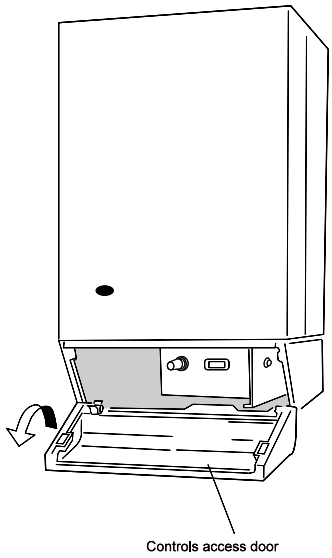
Knob Setting	Flow Temperature	
	°C	°F
1	56	133
2	61	142
3	66	152
4	72	161
5	77	170
6	82	180

1 BOILER CONTROLS

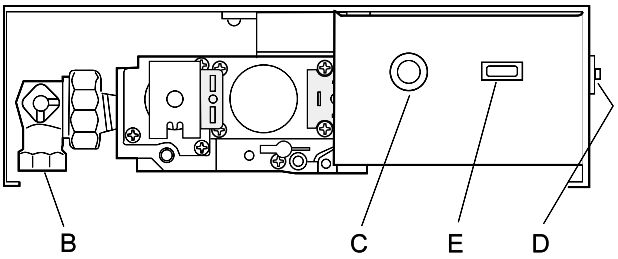
Deluxe Model (LX)



Standard Model



View inside boiler controls area



LEGEND

- **A** Sightglass
- **B** Gas inlet cock (shown in the OPEN position)
- **C** Thermostat knob
- **D** Overheat thermostat reset button
- **E** Mains on/off switch

NOTE TO THE INSTALLER: LEAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS ADJACENT TO THE GAS METER

To shut down the boiler

1. **For short periods**

   Turn the boiler on/off switch (E) to OFF.
   When heating is again required, restore the switch to ON.

2. **For longer periods**

   Turn the boiler ON/OFF switch (E) to OFF.
   Switch the electricity supply to OFF.

Frost protection

If no frost protection is provided and frost is likely during a short absence from home, leave the heating controls at a reduced temperature setting.

For longer periods, the entire system should be drained - including the domestic water supply. If the system includes a frost thermostat then, during cold weather, the boiler should be turned OFF at the time switch(es) ONLY. The mains supply should be left switched ON, with the boiler thermostat left in the normal running position.

Boiler Overheat Thermostat

(Fitted for sealed systems only)

The boiler is fitted with a safety 'cutout' thermostat. This will shut down the boiler in the event of overheating. Should this occur allow the boiler to cool, press the reset button (D) then relight as detailed in steps 1-8 in 'To light the boiler'.

If the cutout condition still persists turn off the boiler and consult a CORGI registered installer.

Control of water temperature

1. Adjust the boiler thermostat (C) to give the required temperature for central heating.
2. The boiler thermostat automatically switches the main burner OFF and ON to maintain the selected temperature.

To relight the boiler

Repeat the procedure 1 - 8, detailed in 'To light the boiler'.

Loss of system water pressure

Standard boilers fitted with Classic Sealed System Units only

If the red arrow on the unit pressure gauge is set above zero and the system pressure is seen to fall below this value over a period of time then a water leak is indicated. In this event a CORGI registered installer should be consulted.

DO NOT OPERATE THE BOILER IF THE PRESSURE HAS REDUCED TO ZERO FROM THE ORIGINAL SETTING.

Escape of gas

Should a gas leak be suspected, contact your local gas supplier without delay.

Do NOT search for gas leaks with a naked flame.

Cleaning

For normal cleaning simply dust with a dry cloth.
To remove stubborn marks and stains, wipe with a damp cloth and finish off with a dry cloth.

Do NOT use abrasive cleaning materials.

Maintenance

The appliance should be serviced at least once a year by a CORGI registered installer.

benchmark™

The code of practice for the installation, commissioning & servicing of central heating systems

Caradon Plumbing Limited is a member of the Benchmark initiative and fully supports the aims of the programme. Benchmark has been introduced to improve the standards of installation and commissioning of central heating systems in the UK and to encourage the regular servicing of all central heating systems to ensure safety and efficiency.

THIS SYMBOL IS YOUR ASSURANCE OF QUALITY

These appliances are designed for use with Natural Gas only. They have been tested and conform with the provisions of BS. 6332 and BS. 5258.

CERTIFIED PRODUCT
Manufactured under a BS EN ISO 9001:1994 Quality System accepted by BSI.

CE

LXFF.87/AQ/220
LXRS.87/AQ/221
FF.87/AP/107
RS.87/AP/108

Natural Gas appliances are service listed by British Gas

Caradon Plumbing Solutions pursues a policy of continuing improvement in the design and performance of its products. The right is therefore reserved to vary specification without notice.

September 1999 UIN 111 498 A06

Caradon Plumbing Solutions P.O. Box 103, National Ave, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492 251 Fax: 01482 448 858. Registration No. London 322 137. Registered Office: National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. *A subsidiary of Caradon p.l.c*

Ideal BOILERS

Ideal Consumer Helpline: 01482 498 660

YOUR FEEDBACK

and your chance to win a free boiler

At Ideal we've been leaders in the design and engineering of robust and reliable boilers for over 90 years. We want to continue as leaders by listening to your suggestions for how to improve our boilers and our service. We will be giving away a free boiler for the five best ideas every year (to be selected by our Technical Director). Please complete this form, using extra sheets if required, and post it or fax it to us on 01482 498699.

Boiler details

Model / Size *(e.g. Classic RS 230, Mexico CF 3/60 etc. Details on control panel door)*

Date of Installation

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

How I would improve this boiler:

My general comments for Ideal:

Caradon Plumbing Solutions

Ideal Care Helpline: 01482 498610

Further information

If you would like information about Ideal Boilers please complete this sheet and fax it to us on 01482 498699 or post it to Caradon Ideal Limited, PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN.

Installer details

Name

Address

Post Code

Telephone (*Please include STD code*)

General information required

- ☐ *Please send me details of Ideal Training Courses.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for a technical representative to contact me.*
- ☐ *Please arrange for me to join an Ideal factory tour.*

Range guides required

- ☐ *The Ideal Guide: a specifier's and installer's introduction to the Ideal domestic boiler range.*
- ☐ *The Ideal Householders Guide: to assist the installer when presenting to his/her customers.*

Technical manuals required

- ☐ *The Ideal Classic wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic System wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Classic LX Deluxe wall hung boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Mexico floor standing boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Minimiser heat-saving boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response combi. boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Response SE super efficiency combi boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Systemiser SE super efficiency system boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Concord high output boiler*
- ☐ *The Ideal Buccaneer oil fired boiler*

Caradon
Plumbing Solutions

PO Box 103, National Avenue, Kingston upon Hull, HU5 4JN. Telephone: 01482 492251 Fax: 01482 448858.

Ideal Care Helpline: 01482 498610

U.I.N. 111 498